OWNER HANDBOOK

ALFA 159

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dear Customer,

thank you for choosing Alfa Romeo.

*Your **Alfa 159** has been designed to guarantee the safety, comfort and driving pleasure typical of Alfa Romeo.*

This booklet will help you to get to know the characteristics and operation of your car.

*The following pages contain all the indications necessary for you to be able to maintain the high standards of performance, quality, safety and respect for the environment which characterize this **Alfa 159**.*

The enclosed Warranty Booklet also contains the regulations, the warranty certificate and a guide to the services offered by Alfa Romeo.

Services which are essential and precious because, when you purchase an Alfa Romeo you are not only acquiring a car, but the tranquillity that comes from knowing that an efficient, willing and widespread organization is at your service for any assistance problems you may have.

Have a good trip.

This booklet describes all the versions of the Alfa 159, so you should only consider the information concerning the trim level, engine and version purchased by you.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MUST BE READ!

REFUELLING

Petrol engines: only refuel with unleaded petrol with octane rating (RON) not less than 95.

Diesel engines: only refuel with diesel fuel conforming to the European specification EN590. The use of other products or mixtures may irreparably damage the engine with invalidation of the warranty due to the damage caused.

ENGINE STARTING

Petrol engines: ensure that the handbrake is up, fully press the clutch pedal, without pressing the accelerator, put the gear lever neutral, fit the electronic key into the ignition device to stop limit, briefly press the **START/STOP** button.

Diesel engines: ensure that the handbrake is up, fully press the clutch pedal, without pressing the accelerator, put the gear lever neutral, fit the electronic key down into the ignition device until it stops. The instrument panel warning light ➰ will turn on, wait for the warning light ➰ to turn off. The hotter the engine is, the quicker this will happen, briefly press the **START/STOP** button as soon as the warning light ➰ turns on.

PARKING ON FLAMMABLE MATERIAL

While working, the catalyst develops a very high temperature. Do not park the car over grass, dry leaves, pine needles or any other inflammable materials: risk of fire.

RESPECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

A system for continuously monitoring emission system components to ensure greater environmental protection is fitted in your car.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ELECTRICAL ACCESSORIES

If, after buying the car, you decide to add electrical accessories (that will gradually drain the battery), contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services. They can calculate the overall electrical requirement and check that the car's electric system can support the required load.

CODE CARD (for versions/markets, where provided)

Keep the code card in a safe place, not in the car.

SCHEDULED SERVICING

Correct maintenance of the car is essential for ensuring it stays in tip-top condition and safeguards its safety features, its environmental friendliness and low running costs for a long time to come.

THE OWNER'S MANUAL CONTAINS...

...information, tips and important warnings regarding the safe, correct driving of your car, and its maintenance. Pay particular attention to the symbols ⚠ (personal safety) ⚠ (environmental protection) ⚠ (car well-being).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Any queries concerning servicing should be forwarded to the showroom from which the car was purchased, the subsidiary company or to our branch offices or any point of the Alfa Romeo Network.

Warranty Booklet

The Warranty Booklet is delivered together with every new car and contains the regulations tied to the services given by Alfa Romeo Services and to the warranty conditions.

Correctly carrying out the scheduled services specified by the manufacturer is the best way to maintain the performance, safety characteristics and low running costs of your car. It is also necessary to maintain warranty cover.

"Service" guide

This contains the Alfa Romeo Authorized Services. The services can be recognized by the presence of the Alfa Romeo badge and logo.

The Alfa Romeo organization in Italy can be found in the telephone book under the letter "A" Alfa Romeo.

Not all the models described in this booklet are available in all countries. Only some of the fittings described in this booklet are fitted as standard to the car. The list of available accessories should be requested from the Alfa Romeo Dealers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

THE SYMBOLS USED IN THIS BOOKLET

The symbols illustrated in these pages show the subjects which should, in particular, be closely studied.

PERSONAL SAFETY

Warning: partially or fully ignoring these rules may lead to serious injury.

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

This indicates the correct procedures to be followed to prevent the car from damaging the environment.

CAR SAFETY

Warning: partially or fully ignoring these rules may lead to serious damage being caused to the car which, in some circumstances, may cause forfeiture of the warranty cover.

The texts, illustrations and specifications given in this booklet refer to the car at the time of going to press.
As part of our ongoing striving to improve our products, Alfa Romeo may introduce technical changes during production, therefore the specifications and fittings may be altered without prior notice.
For details on this subject, please apply to the manufacturer's sales network.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DASHBOARD AND CONTROLS

DASHBOARD 7
INSTRUMENT PANEL 8
SYMBOLS 9
ALFA ROMEO CODE SYSTEM 9
ELECTRONIC KEY 11
ALARM 17
IGNITION DEVICE 19
INSTRUMENTS 21
MULTIFUNCTION DISPLAY 25
RECONFIGURABLE MULTIFUNCTION DISPLAY 30
SEATS 45
HEAD RESTRAINTS 48
STEERING WHEEL 49
REARVIEW MIRRORS 50
CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM 53
MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM 55
AUTOMATIC TWO-/THREE-ZONE CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM 58
ADDITIONAL HEATER 69
EXTERNAL LIGHTS 70
WINDOW WASHING 73
CRUISE CONTROL 76
CEILING LIGHTS 78
CONTROLS 81
INTERIOR FITTINGS 83
SUNROOF 93
DOORS 96
POWER WINDOWS 99
BOOT 101
BONNET 105
ROOF RACK/SKI RACK 106
HEADLIGHTS 106
ABS SYSTEM 108
VDC SYSTEM 110
EOBD SYSTEM 115
SOUND SYSTEM PRESETTING 116
ACCESSORIES PURCHASED BY THE OWNER 116
INSTALLATION OF ELECTRIC/ELECTRONIC DEVICES 117
PARKING SENSORS 118
TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (T.P.M.S.) 122
AT THE FILLING STATION 125
PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT 127

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DASHBOARD

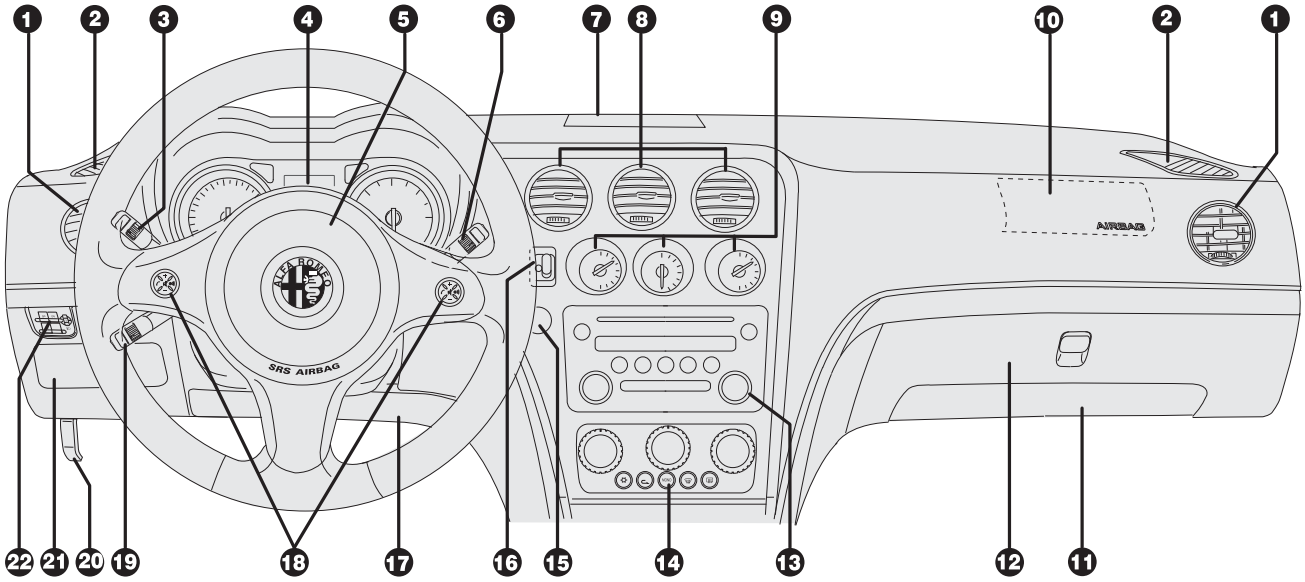


fig. 1 A0E0056m

1. Adjustable swivel side air vents - **2.** Front side window demisting/defrosting vents - **3.** External lights control lever - **4.** Instrument panel - **5.** Driver's air bag and horn - **6.** Windscreen wiper control lever - **7.** Upper central vent - **8.** Adjustable swivel centre air vents - **9.** Fuel level gauge/engine coolant temperature gauge/engine oil temperature gauge (petrol versions) or turbocharger pressure gauge (diesel versions) - **10.** Passenger's air bag - **11.** Passenger's knees air bag (for versions/markets, where provided) - **12.** Glove box - **13.** Sound system (for versions/markets, where provided) - **14.** Heating/ventilation/climate controls - **15.** Engine **START/STOP** button - **16.** Ignition device - **17.** Driver's knees air bag - **18.** Sound system controls on the steering wheel (where provided) - **19.** Cruise Control lever (for versions/markets, where provided) - **20.** Bonnet opening lever - **21.** Dashboard fusebox lid - **22.** Switches for external lights, trip meter reset and headlamp aiming device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INSTRUMENT PANEL

A. Speedometer (speed indicator) **B.** Warning lights - **C.** Rev counter - **D.** Multifunction display

Warning lights on diesel versions only

On diesel versions the rev counter end scale value is at 6000 rpm.

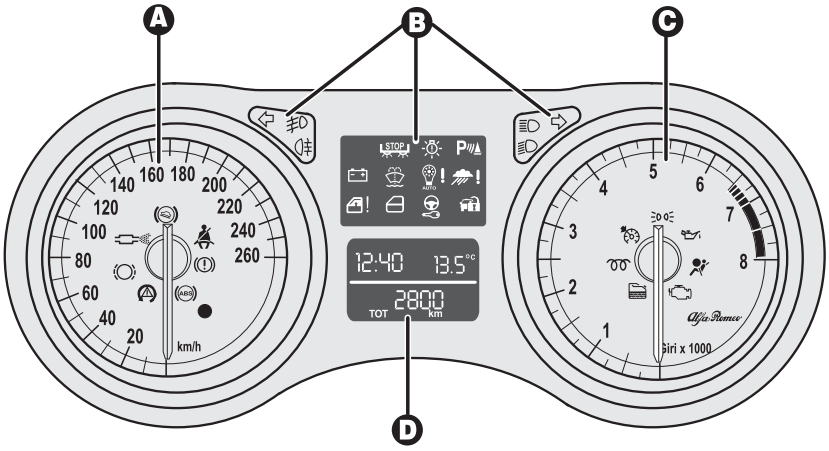


fig. 2 - Versions with multifunction display

A0E0312m

A. Speedometer (speed indicator) **B.** Warning lights - **C.** Rev counter - **D.** Reconfigurable multifunction display

Warning lights on diesel versions only

On diesel versions the rev counter end scale value is at 6000 rpm.

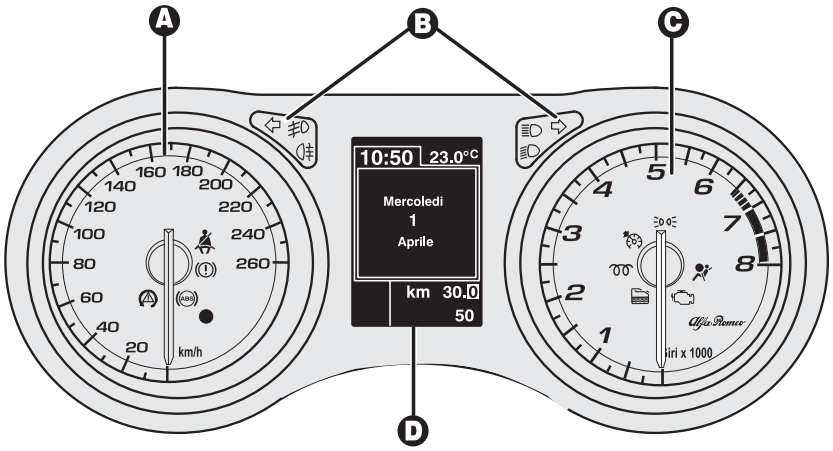


fig. 3 - Versions with reconfigurable multifunction display

A0E0422m

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A. Speedometer (speed indicator)
B. Warning lights - **C.** Rev counter -
D. Multifunction display

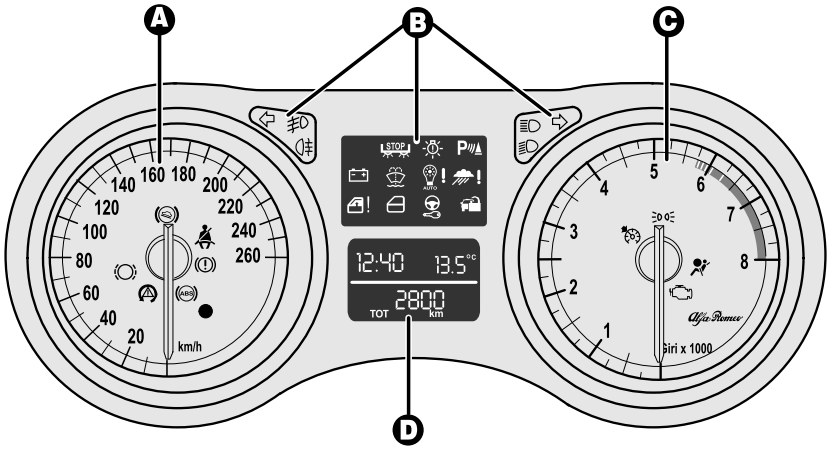


fig. 3/a - 1750 TURBO BENZINA versions with multifunction display

A. Speedometer (speed indicator)
B. Warning lights - **C.** Rev counter -
D. Reconfigurable multifunction display

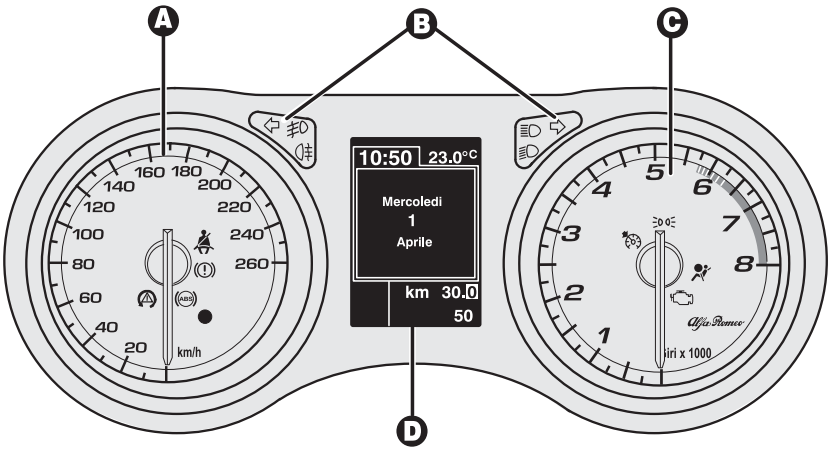


fig. 3/b - 1750 TURBO BENZINA versions with reconfigurable multifunction display

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SYMBOLS

Special coloured labels have been attached near or actually on some of the components of your car. These labels bear symbols that remind you of the precautions to be taken as regards that particular component.

The plate summarising the symbols used **fig. 4** can be found under the bonnet.

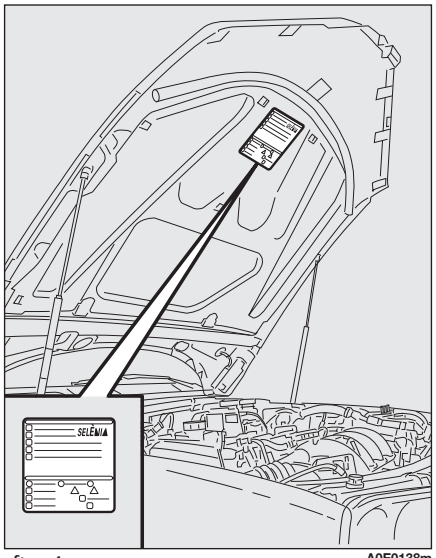


fig. 4

ALFA ROMEO CODE SYSTEM

To further protect you car from theft, it has been fitted with an engine immobilising system. This system is automatically activated when the electronic key is removed.

An electronic device, in fact, is fitted in each electronic key grip. The device transmits a radio-frequency signal when the engine is started through a special aerial built into the ignition switch on the dashboard. The modulated signal, which changes each time the engine is started, is the "password", by means of which the control unit recognises the electronic key and enables to start the engine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OPERATION

Each time the electronic key is fitted into the ignition switch, the Alfa Romeo CODE system control unit sends a recognition code to the engine control unit to deactivate the inhibitor.

The code is sent only if the Alfa Romeo CODE system control unit has recognised the code transmitted from the electronic key.

If the code has not been recognised correctly, the warning light turns on (on certain versions a dedicated message is displayed) (see section "Warning lights and messages").

In this case, the electronic key should be removed from the ignition device and then refitted; if the lock continues, possibly try again with the other keys provided with the car. If it is still not possible to start the car contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services

Warning light coming on when driving

If the warning light turns on this means that the system is running a self-test (for example for a voltage drop).

If the warning light stays on, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

IMPORTANT Every electronic key has its own code, which must be memorised by the system control unit. To memorise new keys, up to a maximum of eight, apply solely to Alfa Romeo Authorized Services taking with you all the keys in your possession, the CODE card, a personal identity document and the car's possession documents. The codes of the keys not provided during the new memorising procedure are erased from the memory. This is to ensure that any lost or stolen keys can no longer be used to start the car.

The electronic components inside the key may be damaged if the key is submitted to sharp knocks.

If 2 seconds after fitting the electronic key into the ignition switch, the warning light comes on again flashing (on certain versions a dedicated message is displayed), this means that the code of the keys has not been memorised, thus the car is not protected by the Alfa Romeo CODE system against attempted theft. In this case, contact an Alfa Romeo Authorized Service to have the key codes memorised.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ELECTRONIC KEY

CODE CARD

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The CODE card **fig. 5** delivered with the keys, contains the mechanical code **A** and the electronic one **B**.

The code numbers on the CODE card must be kept in a safe place, not in the car.

If the car changes owner, the new owner must be given the electronic key and the CODE card.

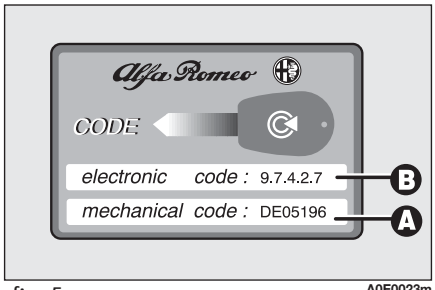


fig. 5

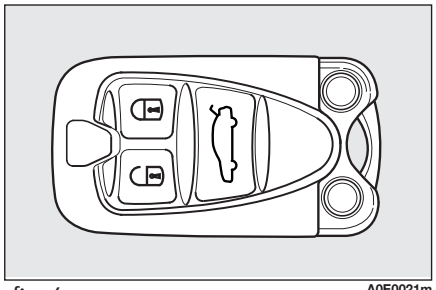


fig. 6

ELECTRONIC KEY fig. 6

The car is delivered with two copies of the key with remote control.

The electronic key operates the ignition switch.

Button 🔒 shall be used for central locking of doors, tailgate and fuel cap with alarm activation (for versions/markets, where provided).

Button 🔓 shall be used for central opening of doors and fuel cap with alarm deactivation (for versions/markets, where provided).

Button shall be used to open the tailgate.

When unlocking the doors by pressing button 🔓, if by 2.5 minutes no door or the boot is opened, the system will automatically lock the car again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The electronic key **fig. 7** is fitted with a metal insert **A**, that can be extracted by pressing button **B**.

The metal insert operates the following:

- ❒ central door locking/unlocking through the driver's door lock (with run-down car battery only the driver's door will open);
- ❒ windows opening/closing;
- ❒ switch (for versions/markets, where provided) for deactivating the passenger's air bag and knees air bag (for versions/markets, where provided);
- ❒ safe-lock device (for versions/markets, where provided);
- ❒ emergency unlocking of electronic key from ignition switch.

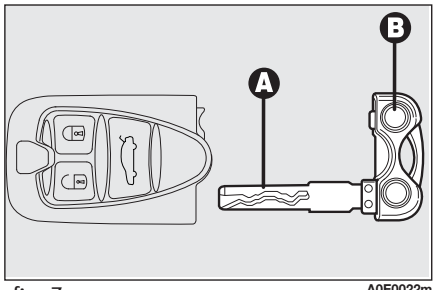


fig. 7 A0E0022m

IMPORTANT Never expose the electronic key to direct sunlight: risk of damages.

IMPORTANT Remote control frequency may be disturbed by radio transmissions outside the car (e.g. mobile phones, hams, etc...). In this event remote control may be failing.

WARNING

Never leave the electronic key unattended to prevent anyone, especially children, from holding it and pressing button B-fig. 7 inadvertently.

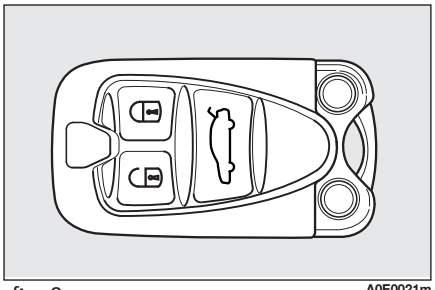


fig. 8 A0E0021m

Replacing the battery of the electronic key

If when pressing button 🔓, 🔒, or 🚗, control given is refused or failing, the battery should be replaced with an equivalent one that can be purchased at common stores.

To be sure that the battery is to be replaced, try again to press buttons 🔓, 🔒, or 🚗 with another electronic key.

When closing the tailgate again, protection sensors are restored and direction indicators will flash once.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

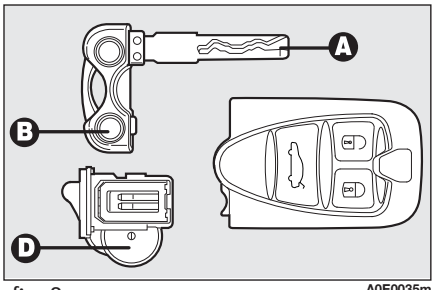


fig. 9

To change the battery **fig. 9** proceed as follows:

- ❒ take out the metal insert **A** by pressing button **B**;
- ❒ remove the snap-fitted case **B-fig. 10** (red) by levering with the metal insert **A** of the electronic key in the point shown in the figure;
- ❒ remove the battery **D-fig. 9** from the case taking note of the bias (in the figure the positive pole is facing downwards);
- ❒ put the new battery into the case with the correct bias;
- ❒ put the case down into its seat and refit the metal insert.

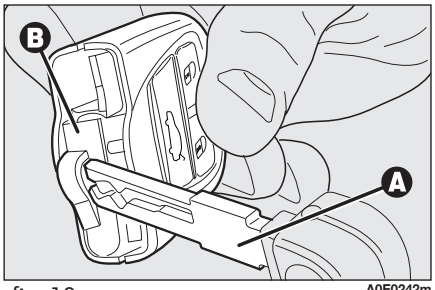


fig. 10

IMPORTANT Never touch the electric contacts of the key and prevent fluid or dust infiltration inside it.

Used batteries are harmful to the environment. They should be disposed of as specified by law in the special containers provided, or take them to Alfa Romeo Authorized Services which will deal with their disposal.

SAFE LOCK DEVICE

(for versions/markets, where provided)

This safety system inhibits the operation of the car door handles.

The safe lock device represents top protection against break in attempts. Activate it each time you park the car.

WARNING

Once the safe lock device has been actuated, doors cannot be opened from inside the car in any way whatsoever. For this reason, make sure there are no persons left inside the car.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

If the car battery is down, the safe lock device can be activated only using the metal insert of the electronic key on the driver's door revolving plug: in this case the safe lock device is active on front passenger's door and rear doors.

WARNING

If the key battery is flat, the safe lock device can only be deactivated by unlocking the doors by turning the metal insert of the key into the driver's door lock or by fitting the key into the ignition device.

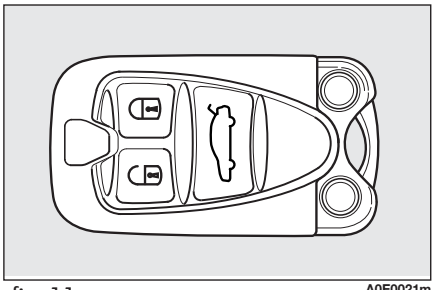


fig. 11 A0E0021m

Device activation

The device is automatically activated on every door in the following cases:

❒ turning twice the metal insert of the electronic key into the driver door to locking position;

❒ pressing twice the electronic key button 🔒.

Device activation is signalled by three flashes of the led on the driver's door panel and, only if activated by pressing the electronic key button 🔒, of direction indicators.

Should one of the doors be not perfectly closed, the safe lock device is not activated, thus preventing that a person getting into the car from the open door remains blocked inside the passenger's compartment when he/she closes the door.

Device deactivation

The device is deactivated automatically on every door in the following cases:

❒ when unlocking the doors;

❒ when unlocking only the driver's door (where possible);

❒ when fitting the electronic key into the ignition switch.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The main functions that can be activated with the electronic key or with the emergency metals insert are the following:

	Doors, tailgate and fuel cap unlocking	**Doors, tailgate and fuel cap locking**	**Window and sunroof opening (for versions/ markets, where provided)**	**Window and sunroof closing (for versions/ markets, where provided)**	**Safe lock (for versions/ markets, where provided)**	**Tailgate opening**
Electronic key	Brief press on button 🔓 (*)	Brief press on button 🔒	Prolonged pressing (over 2 seconds) on button 🔓	–	Double pressing (within 1 second) on button 🔒	Brief press on button 🚗
Emergency metal insert	Electronic key rotation clockwise (*)	Electronic key rotation counter-clockwise	Electronic key rotation for over 2 seconds clockwise	Electronic key rotation for over 2 seconds counter-clockwise	Double electronic key rotation within 1 second counter-clockwise	–
Direction indicators flashing	2 flashings	1 flashing	2 flashings	1 flashing	3 flashings	2 flashings
Led on driver's door	Deterrence led off	Turning on fixed for 3 seconds, followed by deterrence led flashing	Deterrence led off	Turning on fixed for about 3 seconds, followed by deterrence led flashing	Double flashing, followed by deterrence led flashing	–

(*) On certain versions it is possible to set the option "Unlocking front door only" through the "Setup Menu" (see paragraph "Reconfigurable multifunction display" in this section). In this case pressing button 🔒 and turning the metal insert of the electronic key counter-clockwise will unlock the driver's door only. To unlock all the doors, press twice button 🔓 within 1 second or turn twice the metal insert of the electronic key counter-clockwise.

IMPORTANT Window and sunroof opening operations are a consequence of a door unlocking control. Window and sunroof closing operations are a consequence of a door locking control.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ALARM
(for versions/markets, where provided)

WHEN THE ALARM IS TRIGGERED

The alarm comes into action in the following cases:

- ❒ unlawful opening of doors, bonnet and boot (perimetral protection);
- ❒ attempt to start the engine with unauthorised electronic key;
- ❒ battery cable cutting;
- ❒ presence of moving bodies in the passenger's compartment (volumetric protection);
- ❒ abnormal raising/sloping of the car (for versions/markets where applicable);

Volumetric and anti-raising protections can be cut off by operating the front ceiling light controls(see paragraph "Volumetric protection/Anti-raising sensor" on the following pages).

Depending on the markets, the triggering of the alarm will activate the siren and the hazard warning lights (for about 26 seconds). The methods of operation and the number of cycles may vary depending on the versions/markets.

A maximum number of sound/sight cycles is however envisaged. Once the alarm cycle is over, the system will restore its normal operation.

IMPORTANT Central door unlocking by the emergency electronic key will not deactivate the alarm, therefore with alarm on the siren will activate when opening one of the doors or the boot. To deactivate the siren see paragraph "How to deactivate the alarm".

IMPORTANT The engine immobiliser function is guaranteed by the Alfa Romeo CODE system, which is automatically activated when the electronic key is removed from the ignition device.

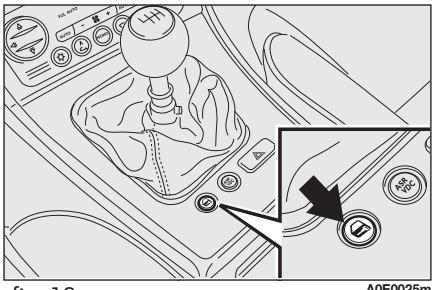


fig. 12

HOW TO ACTIVATE THE ALARM

With the doors, bonnet and boot shut and electronic key removed from ignition switch, point the electronic key in the direction of the car, then press and release the button 🔒.

With the exception of certain markets, the system sounds a "beep" and the doors are locked.

Engagement of the alarm is preceded by a self-diagnostic test characterised by a different flashing of the round led located around the door lock/unlock button (see **fig. 12**): if a fault is detected the system sounds a further warning "beep".

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Surveillance

When the system has been turned on, the led **A-fig. 12** will flash to indicate that the system is in the surveillance mode. The led will flash continuously while the system is under surveillance.

IMPORTANT Operation of the alarm is adapted at the origin to the regulations of the different countries.

Self-diagnosis and monitoring of doors/bonnet/boot

If, after the alarm has been activated, a second acoustic signal is heard, turn the system off by pressing button 🔓, check for proper locking of doors, bonnet and boot, then turn the system on again by pressing button 🔒.

Otherwise if a door or bonnet/boot lid is not correctly closed it will not be controlled by the system. If the control signal is repeated when the doors and bonnet/boot are closed properly this means that the self-diagnosis function has detected a system operating fault, in which case it is necessary to contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

HOW TO DEACTIVATE THE ALARM

Press button 🔓. The system will react as follows (with the exception of certain markets):

- ❒ two brief flashes of the direction indicators;
- ❒ two brief “beeps”;
- ❒ door unlocking.

The alarm can be deactivated by fitting the electronic key into the ignition switch.

IMPORTANT On certain versions any attempt to break in detected by the system will be indicated by a warning message on the instrument panel display when fitting the electronic key into the ignition switch.

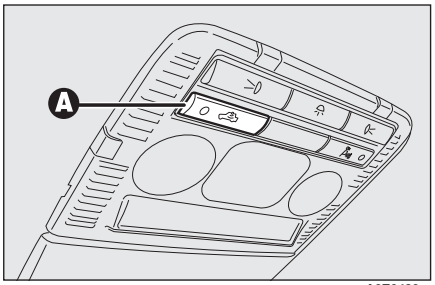


fig. 13

VOLUMETRIC PROTECTION/ ANTI-RAISING SENSORS

To make sure that the protection sensors are working properly, check that windows and sunroof (for versions/markets, where provided) are shut.

This function can be cut out (for example if you leave animals on the car) by pressing button **A-fig. 13** on the front ceiling light within 1 minute after instrument panel turning off.

When this function is off the button led will turn on. Volumetric protection/anti-raising sensors cut out shall be repeated at each instrument panel turning off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HOW TO CUT OFF THE ALARM SYSTEM

To deactivate the alarm system completely (for instance during prolonged inactivity of the car) simply lock the car by rotating the metal insert (provided inside the electronic key) into the driver's door lock.

MINISTERIAL HOMOLOGATION

In keeping with the laws in force in each country on the subject of radio frequency, for markets in which the transmitter needs to be marked the certification number is given on the component. For certain versions/markets, the code may also be marked on the transmitter and/or on the receiver.

IGNITION DEVICE

The ignition device is located on the dashboard and it consists of the following:

- ❒ electronic key reading device **A-fig. 14** (set near the steering wheel);
- ❒ button **START/STOP** (set under the electronic key reading device).

IMPORTANT To prevent running down the battery do not leave the electronic key into the ignition device when the engine is off.

WARNING

If the ignition device is tampered with (for example during an attempted break-in) have it checked over by Alfa Romeo Authorized Services before travelling again.

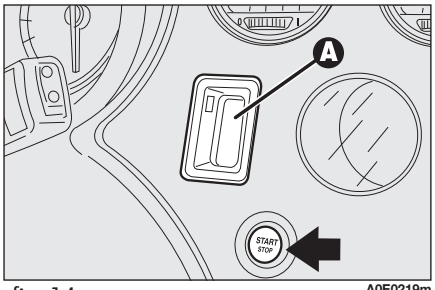


fig. 14

WARNING

When leaving the car always remove the electronic key from the ignition device to prevent any passenger in the car from inadvertently activating the controls. Remember to engage the handbrake and if the car is facing uphill, first gear and if the car is facing downhill, reverse. Never leave children unattended in the car.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

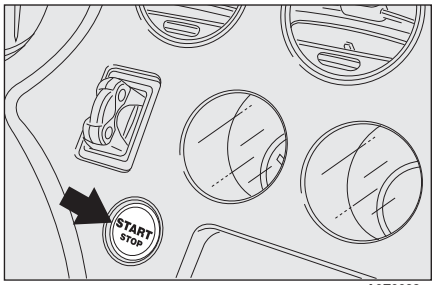


fig. 15

ENGINE STARTING

See paragraph "Engine starting" in section "Correct use of the car".

START/STOP BUTTON fig. 15

Button **START/STOP**, set on the dashboard, controls car electric systems and engine starting/stopping.

Button **START/STOP** is fitted with knurled ring and led. When the led and the instrument panel are on, the engine can be started.

TURNING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL ON

Proceed as follows:

- ❒ fit the electronic key into the ignition device;
- ❒ if the electronic key is fitted yet, press button **START/STOP** without pressing the clutch or brake pedal.

To safeguard the battery, when leaving the car with the instrument panel on, electric and electronic devices will be deactivated after approx. 1 hour.

IMPORTANT Fit completely the electronic key into the ignition device until it locks into place.

IMPORTANT Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services if the instrument panel fails to turn on.

IMPORTANT If when fitting the electronic key into the ignition device, the warning light on the instrument panel comes on (on certain versions together with a message on the display), check whether the electronic key is the proper one and then try to refit it into the ignition device. If the problem persists contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

TURNING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL OFF

With engine off and clutch and brake pedals released, press button **START/STOP** or remove the electronic key from the ignition device.

A few seconds after the instrument panel display will turn off gradually.

IMPORTANT Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services if the instrument panel fails to turn off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STEERING COLUMN LOCK

Engaging

The steering column lock will engage 5 seconds after removing the electronic key from the ignition device and if the following conditions are present:

- ❒ engine off;
- ❒ instrument panel off with car at a standstill;
- ❒ electronic key removed from ignition device.

Disengaging

The steering column lock will disengage after fitting the electronic key into the ignition device.

IMPORTANT Switching the engine off when the car is running will not engage the steering column lock till next switching off with car stopped. In this event warning light (where provided) on the instrument panel will come on (or as an alternative, on certain versions, a symbol and a message are displayed).

IMPORTANT Steering column lock failure is indicated by the instrument panel warning light (where provided) (or as an alternative, on certain versions, a symbol and a message are displayed). In this event contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

IMPORTANT If after trying to turn on the instrument panel and/or to start the engine, the instrument panel warning light (where provided) (or as an alternative, on certain versions the message "Vehicle protection system not available" is displayed), repeat the operation moving the steering wheel in order to release the steering lock. The displayed warning message will not impair steering lock operation.

WARNING

It is absolutely forbidden to carry out whatever after-market operation involving steering system or steering column modifications (e.g.: installation of anti-theft device) that could badly affect performance and safety, cause the lapse of warranty and also result in non-compliance of the car with homologation requirements.

INSTRUMENTS

REV. COUNTER

Rev counter shows engine rpm. The red zone at the scale bottom indicates that the engine is running at excessive rpm dangerous for mechanical components. Do not drive with the pointer in this area.

IMPORTANT The electronic injection control system gradually shuts off the flow of fuel when the engine is “over-revving” (rev counter pointer in the red area) resulting in a gradual loss of engine power, in order to bring engine rpm below to the safety limit.

The rev counter may, when the engine is idling, indicate gradual or sudden increase of engine revs as the case may be; such behaviour is normal and must not be interpreted as a faulty condition as it occurs during normal operation, for instance when climate control or electric fan are switched on. In particular, slow revs variation helps keep the battery charged.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

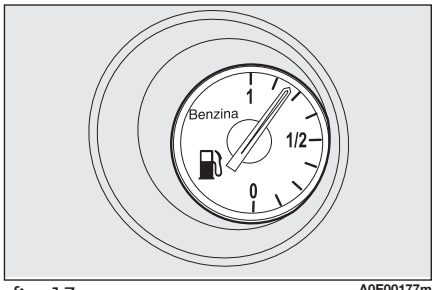


fig. 17 A0E00177m

FUEL GAUGE fig. 17

This shows the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

0 - tank empty.

1 - tank full (see the indications given in paragraph "At the filling station").

The warning light on the fuel level gauge turns on when about 10 litres fuel are left in the tank. On certain versions. the display will show a warning message when the cruising range is less than 50 km (or 31 mi).

If warning light starts flashing when travelling contact immediately Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

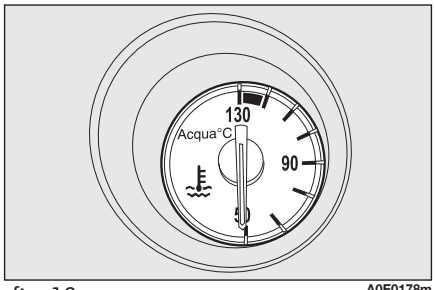


fig. 18 A0E0178m

IMPORTANT The pointer can reach the red area also for a sum of unfavourable conditions, i.e.: slow speed, uphill, fully laden or towing a trailer with hot outside temperature.

IMPORTANT Refuelling shall always be performed with engine off. Failing to observe this precaution could cause the gauge to provide wrong indications. Should this occur, to restore proper indication just have next refuelling with the engine off. Otherwise contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE fig. 18

This shows the temperature of the engine coolant fluid and begins working when the fluid temperature exceeds approx. 50°C.

The pointer should normally be towards the middle of the scale. If the pointer reaches the red sector, reduce your demand on the engine.

The turning on of the warning light (on certain versions together with a message on the display) indicates that the coolant fluid temperature is too high; in this case, stop the engine and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services .

IMPORTANT The pointer can reach the red area also for a sum of unfavourable conditions, i.e.: slow speed, uphill, fully laden or towing a trailer with hot outside temperature.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

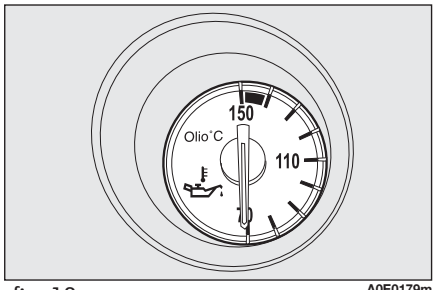


fig. 19

ENGINE OIL TEMPERATURE GAUGE (petrol versions excluded 1750 TURBO BENZINA) fig. 19

This shows the temperature of the engine oil and begins working when the oil temperature exceeds approx. 70°C.

If the pointer reaches the red sector, reduce your demand on the engine.

The turning on of the warning light when travelling (on certain versions together with a message on the display) indicates that the oil temperature is too high; in this case, stop the engine and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

IMPORTANT The pointer can reach the red area also for a sum of unfavourable conditions, i.e.: slow speed, uphill, fully laden or towing a trailer with hot outside temperature.

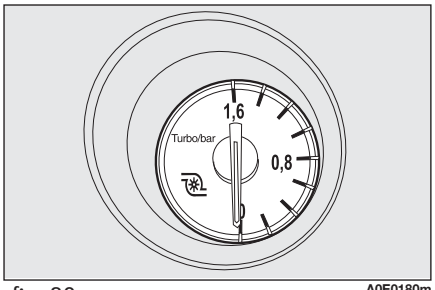


fig. 20

TURBOCHARGER PRESSURE GAUGE (1750 TURBO BENZINA and diesel versions) fig. 20

This shows the turbocharger pressure value.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

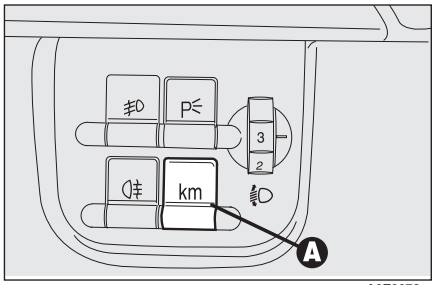


fig. 21

TRIP METER RESET fig. 21

To reset the trip meter, keep button **A** pressed for a few seconds.

MANUAL INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHT DIMMER

With this function it is possible to adjust on 8 levels the light intensity of the indications given on the instrument panel display, sound system display (for versions/markets, where provided), climate control system display, radionavigation system display (for versions/markets, where provided), and instrument panel gauges (fuel level gauge, engine oil temperature gauge (petrol versions) or supercharger pressure gauge (diesel versions) and engine coolant temperature gauge).

To increase light intensity press briefly button **+** on the left-hand stalk, to reduce it press button **–**: the display will show an indication and a figure corresponding to the current light intensity level. This screen will be displayed for a few seconds and then it will go off.

AUTOMATIC INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHT DIMMER

To give max. visibility and comfort under whatever driving conditions (e.g.: lights on in daylight, tunnels, etc...), the speedometer is fitted with a sensor for adjusting automatically, after fitting the electronic key into the ignition device and pressing button **START/STOP**, the light intensity of the indications given on the instrument panel display, sound system display (for versions/markets, where provided), climate control system display, radionavigation system display (for versions/markets, where provided), and instrument panel gauges (fuel level gauge, engine oil temperature gauge (petrol versions) or supercharger pressure gauge (diesel versions) and engine coolant temperature gauge).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MULTIFUNCTION DISPLAY

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The "Multifunction display" shows all the useful information necessary when driving, more particularly:

INFORMATION ON STANDARD SCREEN

❒ Clock **A-fig. 22**;

❒ External temperature **B**;

❒ Total km (or mi) or trip meter **C** (when total kilometres (or miles) are indicated the display will also show the wording **TOT**).

Fitting the electronic key into the ignition device will display the total km (or mi), press button **A-fig. 23** for trip meter (or mi).

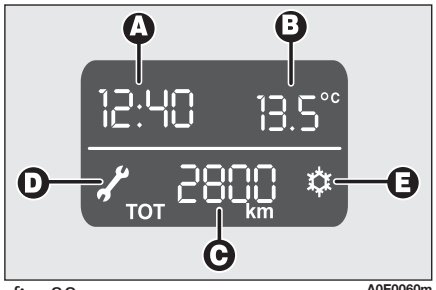


fig. 22

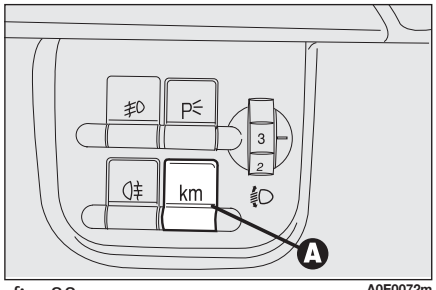


fig. 23

To reset the trip meter (or mi), press for long button **A-fig. 23** during displaying.

INFORMATION ABOUT CAR CONDITIONS (at event)

❒ Scheduled servicing (symbol **D-fig. 22**).

❒ Instrument panel light dimmer.

❒ Symbol of possible presence of ice on the road (symbol **E-fig. 22**).

❒ Speed limit exceeded.

❒ Engine oil level.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

"SETUP MENU"

There is also a "Setup Menu" enabling to perform the adjustments and/or settings described on the following pages by pressing button **MENU** and **+/–** (see **fig. 24**). The Setup can be activated by pressing briefly button **MENU**.

With the car stopped, the following settings are enabled:

❒ Speed limit on/off and speed limit value.

❒ Clock.

❒ Failure/warning buzzer volume.

❒ "Distance" unit.

With the car running, only the following setting is enabled:

❒ Speed limit on/off and speed limit value setting.

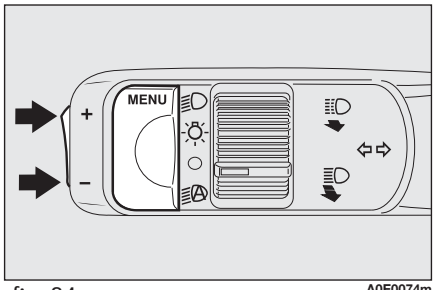


fig. 24

CONTROL BUTTONS (set on left stalk) fig. 24

MENU

Short push on button: to confirm the required option and/or to go to next screen;

Long push on button: to confirm the required option and to go back to standard screen;

+/– to scroll up/down the "Setup Menu" options or to increase/decrease the value displayed on the screen.

When the standard screen is displayed buttons **+/–** activate instrument panel light dimming.

Speed limit (SPEED BEEP)

With this function it is possible to set the car speed limit (km/h or mph) which, if exceeded, automatically sounds a buzzer and displays a specific message (see section "Warning lights and messages") to alert the driver. Once the warning cycle is over the display will resume the standard screen. The warning message will disappear only after the car speed slows 5 km/h (5 mph) below the set speed limit or after pressing briefly the **MENU** button. This procedure is carried out just once after exceeding the speed limit and it can be repeated only if the car speed slows at least 5 km/h (5 mph) below the set speed limit and then it increases until exceeding the speed limit again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To set the speed limit, proceed as follows:

❒ press button **MENU** until selecting **SPEED BEEP**: the display will show **SPEED BEEP** and setting condition (**ON** = speed limit on/ **OFF**= speed limit off);

❒ press again button **MENU**: **ON** (or **OFF**) will flash;

❒ press buttons **+/–** to select **ON** or **OFF**;

❒ selecting **ON** will make the last speed limit set flashing on the display;

❒ press buttons **+/–** to adjust the value.

IMPORTANT The possible setting is between 30 and 250 km/h (or between 20 and 150 mph) depending on the unit set previously (see paragraph "Units" described later). Every press (pulse) of the button **+/–** increases or decreases the value by 5 units. Keeping the button **+/–** pressed obtains automatic fast increase or decrease. When you are near the required setting complete adjustment with single presses.

Clock (TIME REG)

This function enables to adjust the clock.

To adjust the clock proceed as follows:

❒ press button **MENU** until selecting **TIME REG**;

❒ press again button **MENU**: **TIME** and clock will flash;

❒ press buttons **+/–** to adjust time.

Clock is always displayed in 24h mode (24 hours).

Failure/warning buzzer volume (BUZZ)

With this function the volume of the buzzer accompanying any failure/warning indications can be adjusted according to 4 levels. The buzzer can be adjusted and excluded.

Proceed as follows:

❒ press button **MENU** until selecting **BUZZ**: the display will show **BUZZ** and a figure corresponding to the buzzer volume level;

❒ press again button **MENU**: the figure will flash;

❒ press buttons **+/–** to adjust the buzzer volume.

To mute the buzzer set the volume level to "**0**" using buttons **+/–**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Distance unit (UNIT)

With this function it is possible to set the required distance unit (km or mi).

To set the distance unit, proceed as follows:

- ❒ press button **MENU** until selecting **UNIT**: the display will show **UNIT** and "**km**" or "**mi**";
- ❒ press again button **MENU**: "**km**" (or "**mi**") will flash;
- ❒ press buttons **+/–** to set the required distance unit.

Scheduled servicing

IMPORTANT The Service schedule includes car maintenance every 35,000 km (or 21,000 mi); this is shown automatically, with the electronic key into the ignition device starting from 2,000 km (or 1,240 mi) from this deadline and it will be displayed in km or miles according to the unit set. When a scheduled service interval ("coupon") is near to come, fitting the electronic key into the ignition device will display a message followed by the number of km/mi to go before car servicing. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to carry out any service operation provided by the Service schedule or by the Annual inspection plan, and to reset the display.

ENGINE OIL LEVEL INDICATION

Fitting the electronic key into the ignition device, the display will show for a few seconds the engine oil level. At this stage, to clear this indication and to go to next screen, press button **MENU**.

Low oil level will be indicated by a dedicated warning message on the display.

IMPORTANT Check the proper engine oil level on the dipstick (see paragraph "Checking levels" in section "Car maintenance").

IMPORTANT Proper engine oil level shall be checked with the car on level ground.

IMPORTANT To read the correct oil level after fitting the electronic key, wait for about 2 seconds before starting the engine.

IMPORTANT Engine oil level could increase after a long stop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MESSAGES DISPLAYED AT STARTING

After the engine oil level, the display will show for a few seconds a message indicating the procedure to follow to start the engine (**PRESS PEDAL AND START**: press brake or clutch pedal and then press button **START/STOP** to start the engine).

ILLUMINATION OF REV COUNTER/INSTRUMENTS (NIGHT PAN)

This function enables to turn on/off (**ON/OFF**) the lights of the rev counter and instruments.

This function can be activated (only with electronic key fitted into ignition device, external lights on, and speedometer built-in sensor in poor outside light setting), by pressing for long button **–**. When this function is on, the display will show "**NIGHT PAN ON**".

Once on, the **NIGHT PAN** function can be deactivated as follows:

- ❒ by long press on button **+** (also with external lights off);
- ❒ removing the electronic key from the ignition device.

When this function is off the display shows "**NIGHT PAN OFF**".

Messages "**NIGHT PAN ON**" or "**NIGHT PAN OFF**" stay on the display for a few seconds, then they will go off. To stop displaying before time, briefly press button **MENU**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RECONFIGURABLE MULTIFUNCTION DISPLAY

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The "Reconfigurable multifunction display" shows all the useful information necessary when driving, more particularly:

INFORMATION ON STANDARD SCREEN

❒ Clock **A-fig. 24/a**;

❒ External temperature **B**;

❒ Date **C**;

❒ Partial km (or mi) covered **D**;

❒ Total km (or mi) covered **E**;

❒ Indications on car conditions **F** (e.g.: doors open, or possible ice on road, etc. ...).

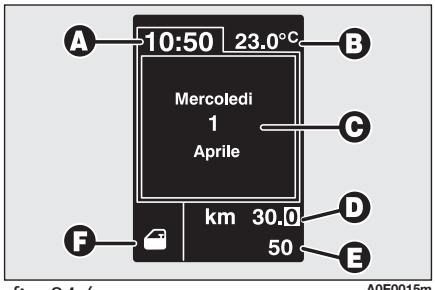


fig. 24/a

The date **C** in the middle of the display will stay on until another display info is activated (e.g. "Light dimmer") or other information on car conditions.

With key removed (when opening when of the front doors) the display will turn on and show for a few seconds the time, covered km (or miles) and outside temperature.

INFORMATION ABOUT CAR CONDITIONS (at event)

❒ Scheduled servicing;

❒ Trip computer;

❒ Instrument panel light dimmer;

❒ Engine oil level;

IMPORTANT When opening one of the front doors, the display will show for a few seconds the time, the km covered and the external temperature.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CONTROL BUTTONS

MENU

Short push on button: to confirm the required option and/or to go to next screen;

Long push on button: to confirm the required option and/or to go to previous screen;

+/– to scroll up/down the "Setup Menu" options or to increase/decrease the value displayed on the screen.

When the standard screen is displayed buttons **+/–** activate instrument panel light dimming.

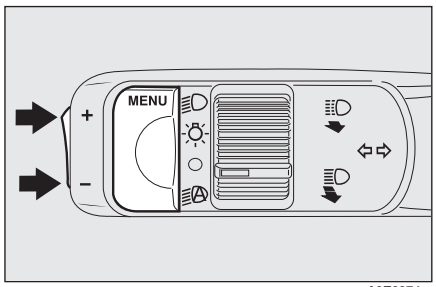


fig. 25

"SETUP MENU"

There is also a "Setup Menu" enabling to perform the adjustments and/or settings described on the following pages by pressing button **MENU** and **+/–** (see **fig. 25**).The Setup can be activated by pressing briefly button **MENU**.

The menu comprises a series of functions arranged in a "circular fashion" **fig. 26**.

Selecting an option of the main menu without submenu:

- ❒ briefly press button **MENU** to select the main menu option to set;
- ❒ operate buttons **+** or **–** (by single press) to select the new setting;
- ❒ briefly press button **MENU** to store new setting and go back to the previously selected option of the main menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Selecting an option of the main menu with submenu:

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to display the first submenu option;

❒ operate buttons **+** or **–** (by single press) to scroll all submenu options;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to select the displayed submenu option and to enter the corresponding setup menu;

❒ operate buttons **+** or **–** (by single press) to select the new setting of this submenu option;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to store the new setting and go back to the previously selected submenu option.

Selecting "Date" and "Clock":

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to select the first value to change (e.g. hours/minutes or year/month/day);

❒ operate buttons **+** or **–** (by single press) to select the new setting;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to store the new setting and to go to the next setup menu option, if this is the last one you will go back to the previously selected option of the main menu.

ENGINE OIL LEVEL INDICATION

Fitting the electronic key into the ignition device, the display will show for a few seconds the engine oil level. At this stage, to clear this indication and to go to next screen, press button **MENU**.

Low oil level will be indicated by a dedicated warning message on the display.

IMPORTANT Check the proper engine oil level on the dipstick (see paragraph "Checking levels" in section "Car maintenance").

IMPORTANT Proper engine oil level shall be checked with the car on level ground.

IMPORTANT To read the correct oil level after fitting the electronic key, wait for about 2 seconds before starting the engine.

IMPORTANT Engine oil level could increase after a long stop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Briefly press button **MENU** to access navigation from the standard screen. To surf the menu press buttons **+** or **–**. For safety reasons, when the car is running, it is possible to access only the reduced menu (for setting "Speed limit"). When the car is stationary access to the whole menu is enabled. With the Radionavigation system it is only possible to adjust/set the following functions: "Speed Limit", "Light sensor sensitivity " (for versions/markets, where provided) and "S.B.R. buzzer reactivation" (for versions/markets, where provided). The other functions are shown on the Radionavigation system display, that shall be use to adjust/set them as required.

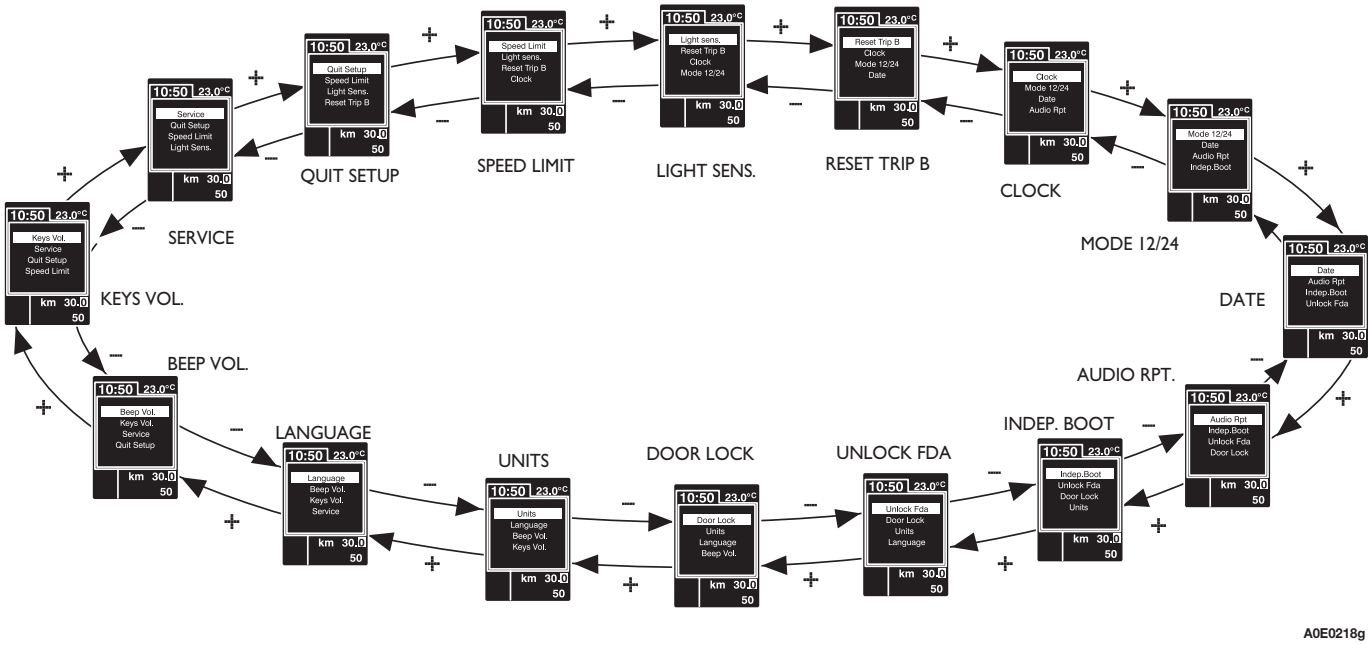


fig. 26

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Speed limit

With this function it is possible to set the car speed limit (km/h or mph) which, if exceeded, automatically sounds a buzzer and displays a special message (see section "Warning lights and messages") to alert the driver.

To set the speed limit, proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press button **MENU**: the display will show **OFF**;

❒ press button **+**: the display will show **ON**;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** then, use buttons **+/–** to set the required speed (during setting the value will flash).

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

IMPORTANT The possible setting is between 30 and 250 km/h (or between 20 and 150 mph) depending on the unit set previously (see paragraph "Units" described later). Every press (pulse) of the button **+/–** increases or decreases the value by 5 units. Keeping the button **+/–** pressed obtains automatic fast increase or decrease. When you are near the required setting complete adjustment with single presses.

To abort the setting:

❒ briefly press button **MENU**: the display will show **ON**;

❒ press button **–**: the display will show **OFF**;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

Automatic headlight daylight sensor (Light Sens.)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

With this function it is possible to adjust the light sensor sensitivity according to 3 levels.

To adjust the volume proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press button **MENU** : the previously set level will flash on the display;

❒ press button **+** or **–** to select the required volume;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

Reset Trip B

This function enables to select Trip B reset mode (Automatic or Manual).

For further information see paragraph "Trip computer".

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting the clock (Clock)

This function enables to set the clock.

Proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press button **MENU**: "hours" will show on the display;

❒ press button **+** or **–** to select the required volume;

❒ briefly press button **MENU**: "minutes" will flash on the display;

❒ press button **+** or **–** to adjust;

IMPORTANT Every press (pulse) on the button **+/–** increases/decreases by one unit. Keeping button **+/–** pressed obtains fast increase/decrease. When you are near the required setting complete adjustment with single presses.

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

Clock mode (Mode 12/24)

This function is used to set the clock in the 12h or 24h mode.

To adjust proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press button **MENU**: 12h or 24h (according to previous setting) will show on the display;

❒ press button **+** or **–** to select the required language;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting the date (Date)

This function enables to update the date (year - month - day).

Proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press button **MENU**: "year" will flash on the display;

❒ press button **+** or **–** to select the required volume;

❒ briefly press button **MENU**: "month" will flash on the display;

❒ press button **+** or **–** to select the required volume;

❒ briefly press button **MENU**: "day" will flash on the display;

❒ press button **+** or **–** to adjust;

IMPORTANT Every press (pulse) on the button **+/–** increases/decreases by one unit. Keeping button **+/–** pressed obtains fast increase/decrease. When you are near the required setting complete adjustment with single presses.

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

Audio Info Repetition (Audio Rpt.)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

This function enables to display sound system information.

❒ Radio: selected radio station frequency or RDS message, automatic tuning activation or AutoSTore;

❒ Audio CD, MP3 CD: selected track number;

❒ CD Changer: CD number and track number;

To activate/deactivate (**ON**/**OFF**) info displaying proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press button **MENU**: the display will show **ON** or **OFF** (according to previous setting);

❒ press button **+** or **–** to select the required source;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

According to the audio source selected, below the time will be displayed the symbol of the current source.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Independent boot unlocking (Indep. Boot)

With this function it is possible to unlock the boot independently from doors.

When the function is enabled, the trunk opens by pressing on the electronic key, or by acting on the lever located under the left back seat (refer to "Boot" paragraph in this chapter).

To activate independent boot function (**ON**) or deactivate it (**OFF**), proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press button **MENU** : **ON** or **OFF** (according to previous setting) will flash on the display;

❒ press button **+** or **–** to select the required language;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

Driver's door unlocking (Unlock Fda)

With this function it is possible to unlock only the driver's door by pressing the electronic key button .

With this function active (**ON**), it is however possible to unlock the other doors by pressing the door unlock button on central console.

To activate/deactivate (**ON**/**OFF**) this function proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press button **MENU**: **ON** or **OFF** (according to previous setting) will flash on the display;

❒ press button **+** or **–** to select the required language;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

Automatic central door locking (Door lock)

When activated (**ON**), this function locks automatically the doors when the car speed exceeds 20 km/h.

To activate/deactivate (**ON**/**OFF**) this function proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press button **MENU**: **ON** or **OFF** (according to previous setting) will flash on the display;

❒ press button **+** or **–** to select the required language;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

Function activation is indicated by the circular led around the button .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Units

With this function it is possible to set the units for distance covered (km or mi), fuel consumption (l/100 km, km/l or mpg) and temperature (°C or °F).

Distance

To set the required unit proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press button **MENU**: "km" or "mi" (according to previous setting) will show on the display;

❒ press button **+** or **–** to select the required language;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

Consumption

If the distance unit set is km (see previous paragraph) the display will enable to set the fuel consumption unit (l/100 km, km/l or mpg).

If the distance unit set is "mi" (see previous paragraph) fuel consumption will be displayed "mpg".

In this case the option "Cons.Unit" of the "Setup Menu" can be selected but it is locked on "mpg".

To set the required unit proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press button **MENU**: "km/l" or "l/100 km" (according to previous setting) will show on the display;

❒ press button **+** or **–** to select the required language;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

Temperature

This function enables to set the temperature unit (°C or °F).

To set the required unit proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press button **MENU**: °C or °F (according to previous setting) will show on the display;

❒ press button **+** or **–** to select the required language;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Selecting the language (Language)

Display messages can be shown in the following languages: Italian, English, German, Portuguese, Spanish, French, Dutch and Brazilian.

To set the required language proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press button **MENU** , the previously set "language" will show on the display;

❒ press button **+** or **–** to select the required language;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

Adjusting the failure/warning buzzer volume (Beep Vol.)

With this function the volume of the buzzer accompanying any failure/warning indication can be adjusted according to 8 levels.

To adjust the volume proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press button **MENU**, the previously set "level" will show on the display;

❒ press button **+** or **–** to select the required volume;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

Adjusting the button volume (Keys Vol.)

With this function the volume of the roger-beep accompanying the activation of certain buttons can be adjusted according to 8 levels.

To adjust the volume proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press button **MENU**, the previously set "level" will show on the display;

❒ press button **+** or **–** to select the required volume;

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Scheduled Servicing (Service)

Through this function it is possible to display information connected to proper car servicing.

Proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press button **MENU** : service in km or mi, according to previous setting, will be displayed (see paragraph "Units");

❒ briefly press button **MENU** to go back to the menu screen or press the button for long to go back to the standard screen.

IMPORTANT The Service schedule includes car maintenance every 35,000 km (or 21,000 mi); this is shown automatically, with the electronic key into the ignition device starting from 2,000 km (or 1,240 mi) from this deadline and it will be displayed in km or miles according to the unit set. When a scheduled service interval ("coupon") is near to come, fitting the electronic key into the ignition device will display a message followed by the number of km/mi to go before car servicing. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to carry out any service operation provided by the Service schedule or by the Annual inspection plan, and to reset the display.

Reactivating the S.B.R. (Seat Belt Reminder) buzzer (Beep Seatb.)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

This function is displayed only after the system has been deactivated by Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

Exit Menu (Quit setup)

Selecting this option will bring back to standard screen.

ILLUMINATION OF REV COUNTER/INSTRUMENTS (NIGHT PANEL)

This function enables to turn on/off (**ON/OFF**) the lights of the rev counter and instruments. This function can be activated (only with electronic key fitted into ignition device, external lights on, and speedometer built-in sensor in poor outside light setting), by pressing for long button **–**. When this function is on, the display will show a warning message. Once on, the **NIGHT PANEL** function can be deactivated as follows:

❒ by long press on button **+** (also with external lights off);

❒ removing the electronic key from the ignition device.

When function is off the display will show a warning message.

Messages stay on the display for a few seconds, then they will go off. To stop displaying before time, briefly press button **MENU**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TRIP COMPUTER

General features

The "Trip computer" displays information (with electronic key fitted into ignition device) relating to the operating status of the car. This function comprises the "Trip A" concerning the "complete mission" of the car (journey) and "Trip B" concerning the partial mission of the car; this latter function (as shown in **fig. 27**) is "contained" within the complete mission.

Both functions are resettable (reset - start of new mission).

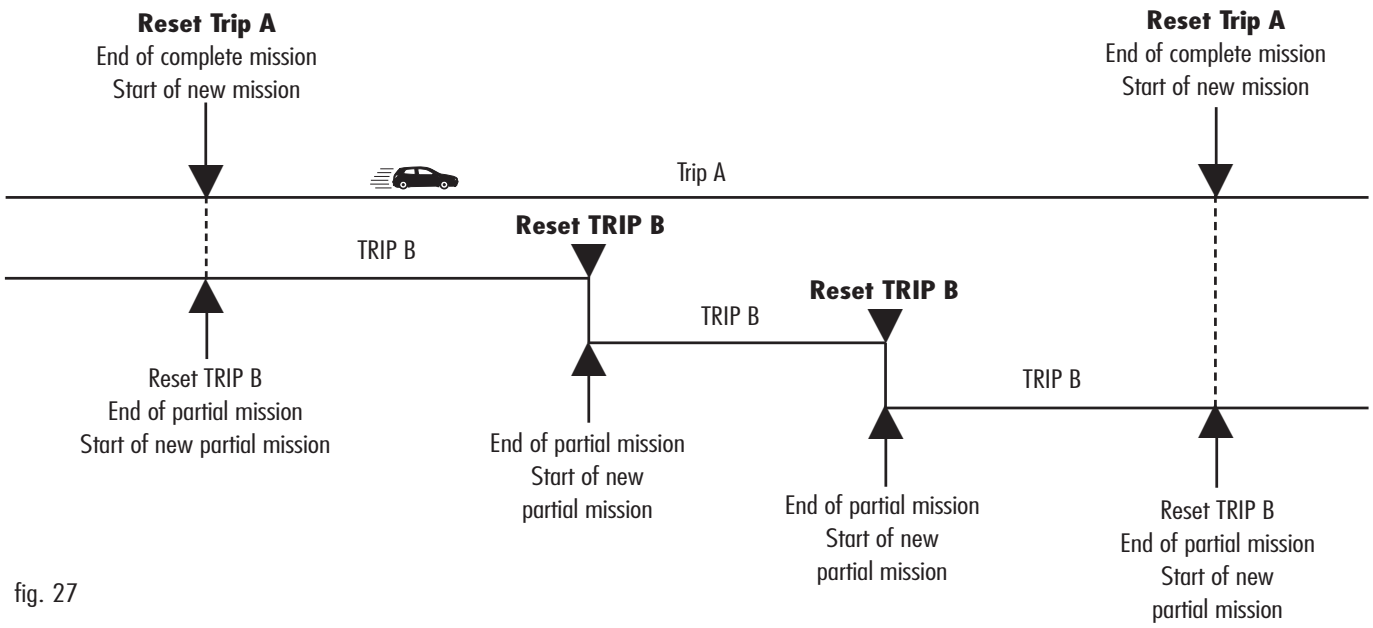


fig. 27

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The "Trip A" displays the figures relating to:

❒ Average consumption

❒ Current consumption

❒ Average speed

❒ Travel time

❒ Range

❒ Travel Distance

"Trip B" displays information concerning:

❒ Travel Distance B

❒ Average consumption B

❒ Average speed B

❒ Travel time B.

Values displayed

Average consumption

Represents the indicative average of consumptions from the beginning of the new mission.

Current consumption

This value shows instant fuel consumption (this value is updated second by second). If parking the car with engine on, the display will show "- - - -".

Average speed

This value shows the car average speed as a function of the overall time elapsed since the start of the new mission.

Travel time

This value shows the time elapsed since the start of the new mission (driving time).

Range

This value shows the distance in km (or mi) that the car can still cover before needing fuel, assuming that driving conditions are kept unvaried.

The display will show "- - - -" in the following cases:

❒ value lower than 50 km (30mi);

❒ car left parked with engine running for long.

IMPORTANT The variation of the autonomy value can be influenced by different factors: driving style (see what is described in paragraph "Driving style" in the chapter "Correct use of the car"), type of route (highways, urban, mountain, etc...), use conditions of the car (load transported, tire pressure, etc...). What was described previously must be taken in consideration when planning a trip.

Travel Distance

This value shows the distance covered from the start of the new mission.

Each time the battery is connected and each time a new mission is started (reset), the display will show "0.0".

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

New mission (reset)

Reset can be:

❒ "manual" reset is performed by the driver by pressing button **TRIP**;

❒ "automatic" reset is performed when the trip distance reaches 9999.9 km (or mi), when travel time reaches 99.59 (99 hours and 59 minutes) or after disconnecting and then reconnecting the battery.

TRIP BUTTON

Button **TRIP fig. 28**, set on the right steering column stalk shall be used (with electronic key into ignition device) to enter the "Trip A" and "Trip B" function. To scroll the values of each option use buttons set aside the stalk.

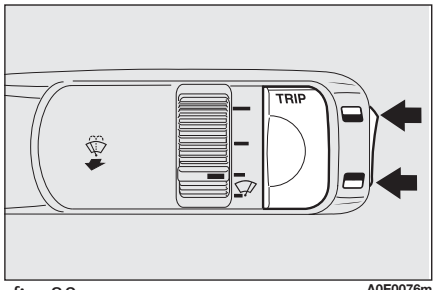


fig. 28 A0E0076m

Button **TRIP** shall also be used to reset the "Trip A" and "Trip B" functions to start a new mission:

❒ **short push**: to display the different values;

❒ **long push**: to reset and then start a new mission.

To scroll the Trip Computer options, briefly press buttons ▭ and ▭.

IMPORTANT "Trip A" reset will also reset the "Trip B" function, whereas "Trip B" reset will only reset the information associated with this function.

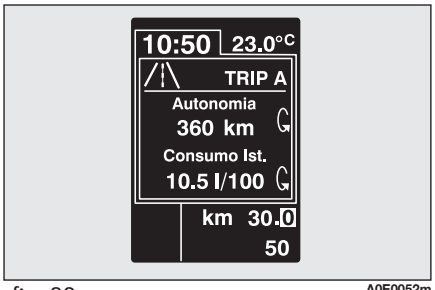


fig. 29 A0E0052m

Every Trip computer screen displays two options of the active Trip (Trip A or Trip B); one option is displayed at the top of the screen, the other one at the bottom (see **fig. 29**).

In the same screen it is not possible to have displayed at the same time the same option at the top and at the bottom of the screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Briefly press button **TRIP** to select the two Trip computer modes; use button ▭ to scroll the options at the top of the display, use button ▭. to scroll the options at the bottom of the display.

Press briefly button **TRIP** to go from Trip A to Trip B.

Start of journey procedure (reset)

Trip A and Trip B reset are independent.

Reset Trip A

With electronic key into ignition device, to reset the "Trip A" press and keep pressed button **TRIP** for over 2 seconds.

IMPORTANT Reset can be automatic only in the following cases:

❒ when the "Travel Distance" reaches 9999.9 km or the "Travel Time" reaches 99.59 (99 hours and 59 minutes);

❒ after disconnecting/reconnecting the battery.

At Trip A reset a warning message will be displayed.

IMPORTANT Trip A reset will not reset "Range" and "Current Consumption".

Reset Trip B

As concerns the Trip B values, it is possible to select through the "Setup Menu" the reset mode (Manual or Automatic) (see paragraph "Setup Menu" on previous pages):

❒ manual reset: press and keep pressed button **TRIP** for over 2 seconds.

❒ automatic reset: it takes place each time the electronic key is fitted into the ignition device.

At Trip B reset a warning message will be displayed.

IMPORTANT Trip B reset will not reset "Range" and "Current Consumption".

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

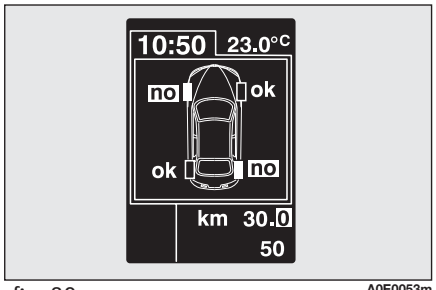


fig. 30 A0E0053m

On versions fitted with T.P.M.S. system (Tyre pressure Monitoring System) (see paragraph "T.P.M.S. system" in this section), after Trip A and Trip B info, the screen with tyre pressure condition is displayed (see **fig. 30**).

NOTE When starting the engine and for a short time, if you have recalled the plan view by pressing the TRIP button, dashes will be displayed instead of "OK/NO". This is normal since the system is checking tyre inflation pressure values.

SEATS

MANUALLY ADJUSTABLE FRONT SEATS fig. 31

WARNING
Only make adjustments when the car is stationary.

Upholstery of your car has been designed to withstand wear deriving from common use of the car. You are however recommended to avoid strong and/or continuous scratching with clothing accessories such as metallic buckles, studs, Velcro fastenings and the like, since these items cause circumscribed stress of the cover fabric that could lead to yarn breaking, and damage the cover as a consequence.

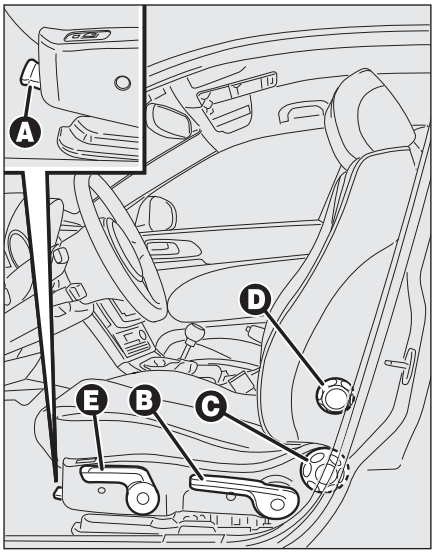


fig. 31 A0E0020m

Moving the seat backwards or forwards

Lift the lever **A** (on the inner side of the seat) and push the seat forwards or backwards: in the driving position the arms should rest on the rim of the steering wheel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Once you have released the lever, check that the seat is firmly locked in the runners by trying to move it back and forth. Failure to lock the seat in place could result in the seat moving suddenly and the driver losing control of the car.

Height adjustment

Move repeatedly lever **B** upwards or downwards to achieve the required height.

IMPORTANT Adjustment must be carried out only seated at the driver's seat.

Back rest angle adjustment

Turn the knob **C** until obtaining the required position.

Lumbar adjustment
(for versions/markets, where provided)

Turn the knob **D** until obtaining the required position.

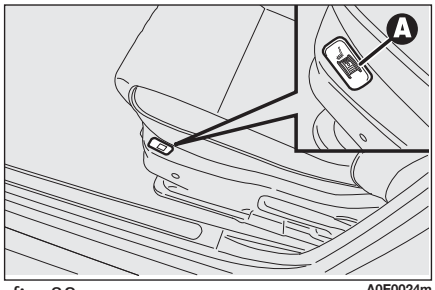


fig. 32 A0E0024m

Back rest angle adjustment
(for versions/markets, where provided)

Use lever **E**. Pulling the lever upwards the seat will bend back by one position. Pushing the lever downwards the seat will bend forward.

Seat warming
(for versions/markets, where provided)

With electronic key fitted into ignition device, turn ring nut **A-fig. 32** to turn this function on/off.

Seat warming can be adjusted to 3 different levels (**0** = seat warming off).

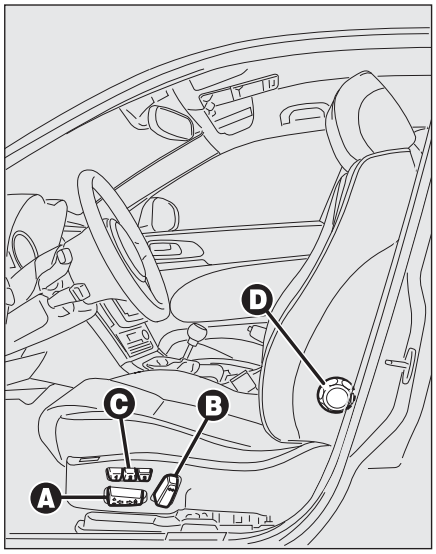


fig. 33 A0E0189m

ELECTRICALLY ADJUSTABLE FRONT SEATS fig. 33

WARNING

Only make adjustments when the car is stationary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seat controls are the following:

Multifunction control **A**:

– front seat height adjustment;

– rear seat height adjustment;

– vertical seat movement;

– longitudinal seat movement;

B: Back rest angle adjustment;

C: Driver's seat positions store buttons;

D: Lombar adjustment.

IMPORTANT Seat can only be adjusted when the electronic key is fitted into the ignition device and for about 1 minute from removing it or after pressing button **START/STOP**. After opening the door the seat can be adjusted for about 3 minutes or until closing the door.

Storing driver's seat/door mirror positions

Buttons **C** allows to store and recall three different driver's seat and door mirror positions. Storing and recalling are only possible with electronic key fitted into ignition device.

Stored position can only be recalled for about 3 minutes after opening the doors and for about 1 minute after removing the electronic key from the ignition device.

To store the required seat position, adjust it as required then press the button corresponding to position to store for a few seconds.

To recall the stored position, press briefly the corresponding button.

Storing a new position will automatically clear the one stored previously using the same button.

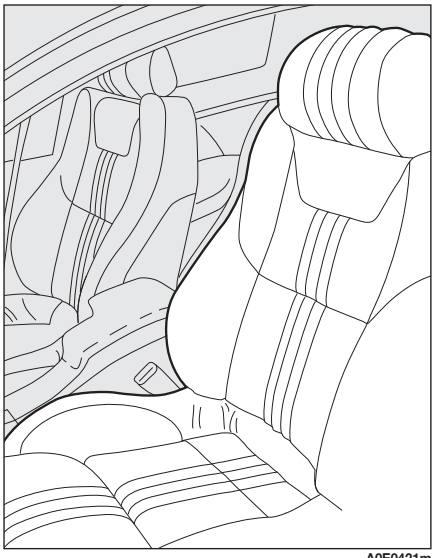


fig. 33/a

FRONT SEATS SPORTS

fig. 33/a (for versions/markets, where provided)

Certain versions are fitted with manually or electrically adjustable front seats with sports configuration.

To adjust these seats see the indications contained in previous paragraphs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HEAD RESTRAINTS

FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

Head restraints are adjustable in height and they lock automatically in the required position.

To adjust height proceed as follows:

❒ to raise: raise the head restraint until hearing the locking click.

❒ to lower: press button **A** and lower the head restraint.

If required, head restraints can be removed as follows:

❒ raise head restraints to max. height;

❒ press buttons **A** and **B-fig. 34** (set aside the two head restraint supports) then remove the head restraints by pulling them upwards.

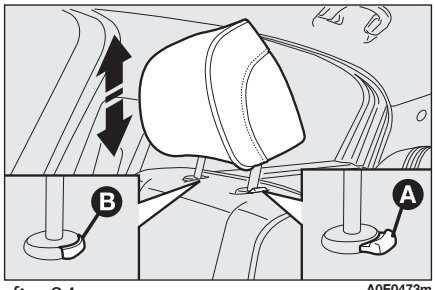


fig. 34

WARNING

Remember that the head restraints should be adjusted to support the back of your head and not your neck. Only in this position do they exert their protective action. To optimise head restraint protective action, adjust the seat back upright and keep your head as close as possible to the head restraint.

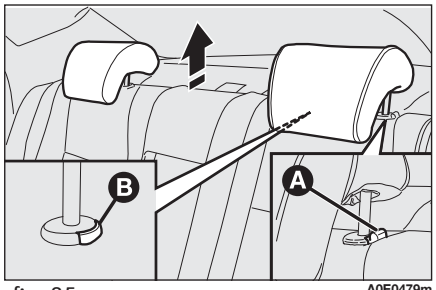


fig. 35

REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

Rear seats are fitted with two head restraints.

Certain versions are fitted with height-adjustable head restraint also for the central seat (see previous paragraph for height adjustment).

If required, head restraints can be removed as follows:

❒ raise head restraints to max. height;

❒ press buttons **A** and **B-fig. 35** (set aside the two head restraint supports) then remove the head restraints by pulling them upwards.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STEERING WHEEL

The steering wheel can be adjusted both axially and in height.

Release the lever **A-fig. 36** pushing it downwards, then adjust the steering wheel as required. To lock the steering wheel, push lever **A** upwards.

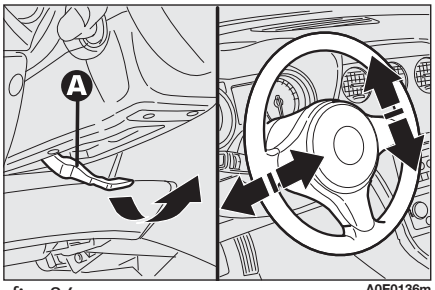


fig. 36

WARNING

It is absolutely forbidden to carry out whatever after-market operation involving steering system or steering column modifications (e.g.: installation of anti-theft device) that could badly affect performance and safety, cause the lapse of warranty and also result in non-compliance of the car with homologation requirements.

WARNING

Any adjustment of the steering wheel position must be carried out only with the car stationary and the engine turned off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REARVIEW MIRRORS

DRIVING MIRROR

The mirror is fitted with a safety device that causes it to be released in the event of a violent crash.

Using lever **A-fig. 37** the mirror can be adjusted to two different positions: normal or antiglare.

Certain versions are fitted with electrochromic mirror **fig. 38**. The electrochromic function is turned on/off by pressing button **ON/OFF** in the lower section of the mirror. When engaging reverse, the mirror will always set to daylight colouring.

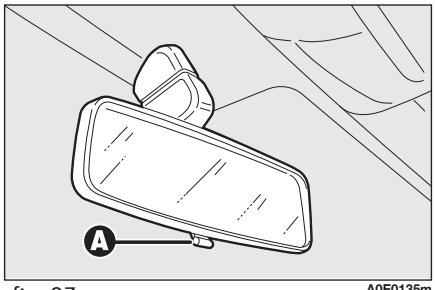


fig. 37 A0E0135m

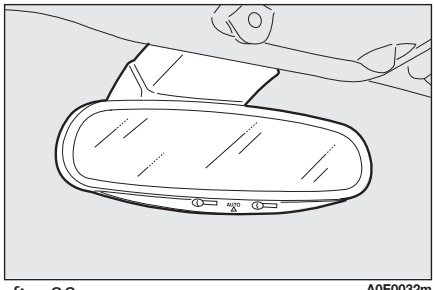


fig. 38 A0E0032m

DOOR MIRRORS

Door mirror can only be adjusted and folded when the electronic key is fitted into the ignition device.

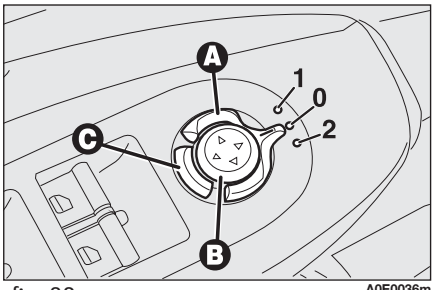


fig. 39 A0E0036m

Adjusting the mirror

Use device **A-fig. 39** to select the required mirror:

❒ turn selector **A** to **1** to select the left door mirror;

❒ turn selector **A** to **2** to select the right door mirror.

To adjust the mirror selected press button **B** in the four directions shown by the arrows.

IMPORTANT After adjusting the mirror, turn selector **A** to **0** to prevent accidental movements.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

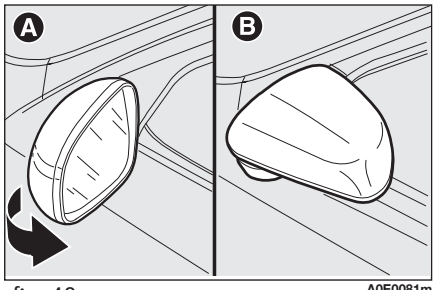


fig. 40

Manually folding of the mirror

When required (for example when the mirror causes difficulty in narrow spaces) it is possible to fold the mirror moving it from position **A-fig. 40** to position **B**.

Electrically folding of the mirror (only versions with 4 power windows)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

When required (for example when the mirror causes difficulty in narrow spaces) it is possible to fold the mirrors by pressing button **C-fig. 39**.

To bring the mirrors back to driving position press again button **C-fig. 39**.

As the driver's door mirror is curved, it may slightly alter the perception of distance.

WARNING

When driving the mirrors shall always be in open position.

Storing the "parking" position of the door mirror on the passenger side

On versions equipped with electric seats, when engaging reverse for parking to improve visibility the driver can adjust (and store) the passenger's door mirror to a position different than that used commonly.

To store mirror position proceed as follows:

- ❒ To perform storing, proceed as follows: engage reverse with car stopped and electronic key fitted into the ignition device;
- ❒ move device **A-fig. 39** to position **2** (passenger door mirror selection);
- ❒ adjust the passenger door mirror to obtain the best position for parking manoeuvres;
- ❒ keep one of the buttons **C-fig. 33** pressed for at least 3 seconds (see paragraph "Seats" in this section).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Together with the passenger door mirror "parking" position, also the driver seat position and the driver door mirror will be stored. The sound of a buzzer will confirm that the mirror position has been stored.

Recalling the passenger door mirror "parking" position

Proceed as follows: fit the electronic key into the ignition device, engage reverse, move device **A-fig. 39** to position **2** (passenger door mirror selection).

The mirror will set automatically to the previously stored position.

If no parking position has been stored, when engaging reverse the passenger door mirror will slightly lower to favour the parking manoeuvre.

The passenger door mirror will return automatically to its original position about 10 seconds after disengaging reverse, immediately after exceeding 10 km/h with forward gear or when moving device **A-fig. 39** to **0**.

Automatic door mirror realignment

Each time the electronic key is fitted into the ignition device the door mirrors return automatically to the last position reached and/or recalled before removing the electronic key from the ignition device.

This enables mirror alignment if, when the car is parked, one of the door mirrors has been moved manually and/or accidentally.

Defrosting/demisting

The electric mirrors are fitted with heating coils which come into operation when turning on the heated rear window (pressing button).

IMPORTANT This function is timed and is deactivated after a few minutes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM

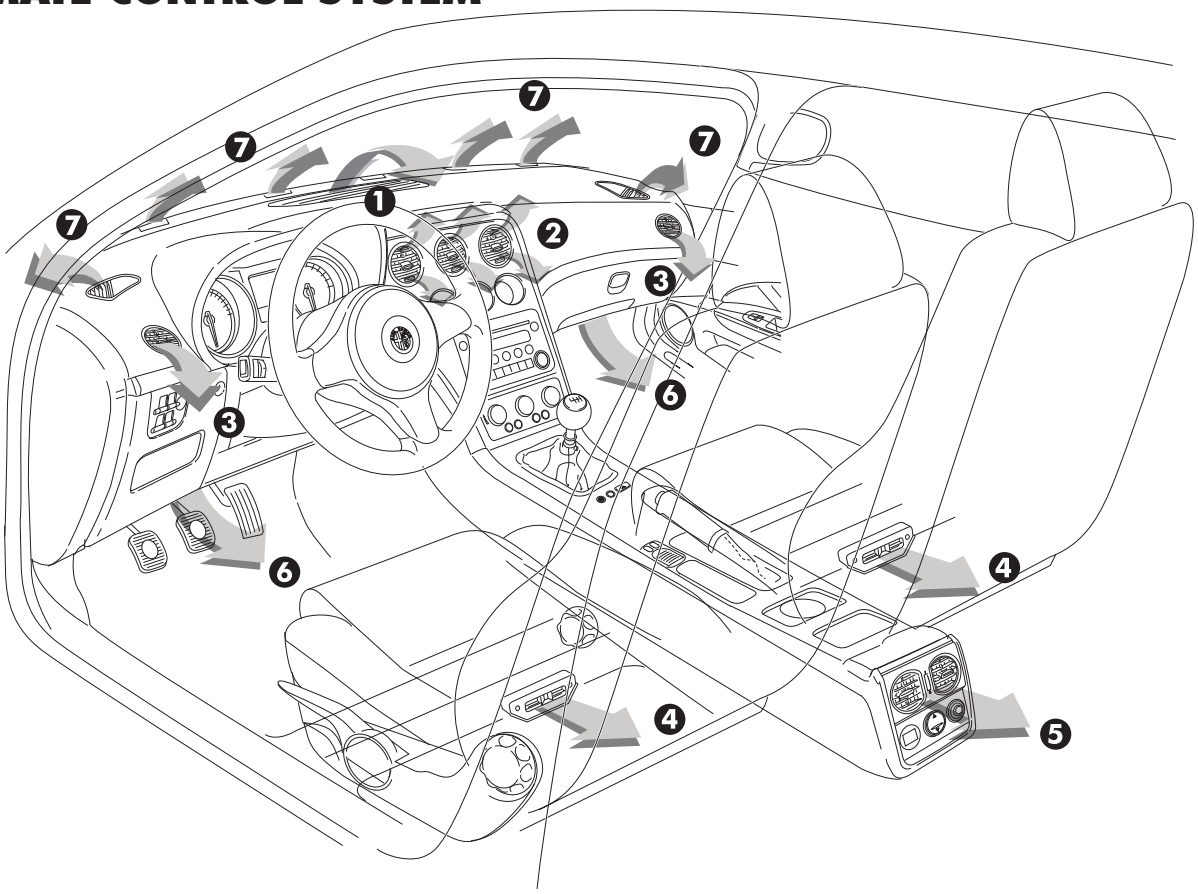


fig. 41

1 Upper vent - **2** Adjustable and swivel central vents - **3** Adjustable and swivel side vents - **4** Lower vents for rear seats - **5** Adjustable and swivel air vents for rear seats (for versions/markets, where provided) - **6** Lower vents for front seats - **7** Windscreen and front windows demisting/defrosting vents.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

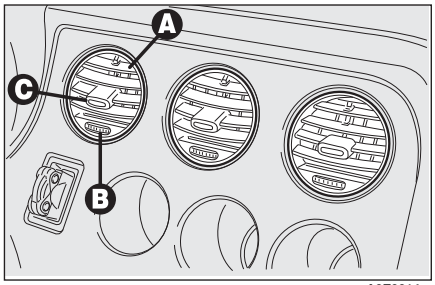


fig. 42 A0E0014m

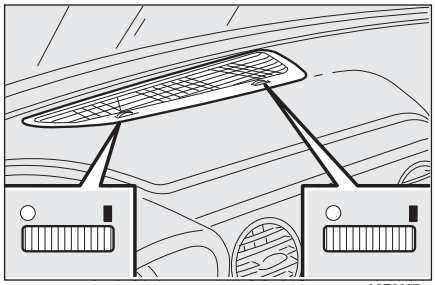


fig. 44 A0E0057m

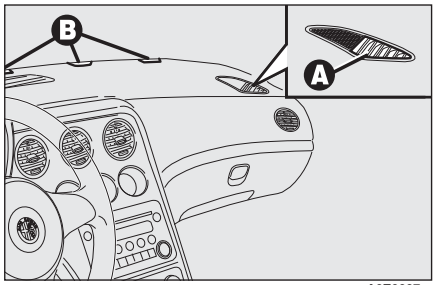


fig. 45 A0E0067m

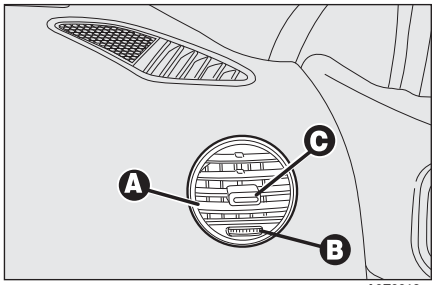


fig. 43 A0E0012m

CENTRAL AND SIDE VENTS fig. 42-43

These vents are aligned on the dashboard. Each vent **A** features a wheel **B** to adjust air flow and a device **C** to direct air flow horizontally or vertically.

O = Completely closed

I = Completely open

UPPER VENT fig. 44

The vent has an opening/closing control.

O = Completely closed

I = Completely open

WINDSCREEN AND FRONT SIDE WINDOW DEMISTING/ DEFROSTING VENTS

These vents are located at the ends (**A-fig. 45**) and on the front part **B** of the dashboard.

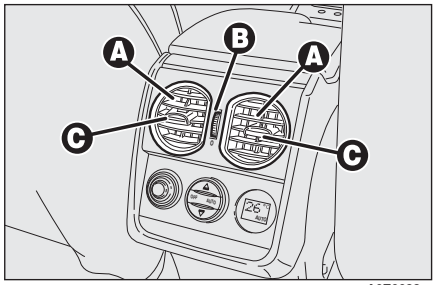


fig. 46 A0E0088m

REAR VENTS fig. 46

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Each vent **A** features a wheel **B** to adjust air flow and a device **C** to direct it.

O = Completely closed

I = Completely open

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM

(for versions/markets, where provided)

CONTROLS fig. 47

A - Air temperature knob (mixing warm and cold air);

B - Air distribution knob;

C - Fan speed knob;

D - Heated rear window and door mirrors defrosting on/off button;

E - Windscreen, front side windows and door mirrors max. demisting/defrosting on/off button;

F - Air recirculation on/off button;

G - Compressor on/off button.

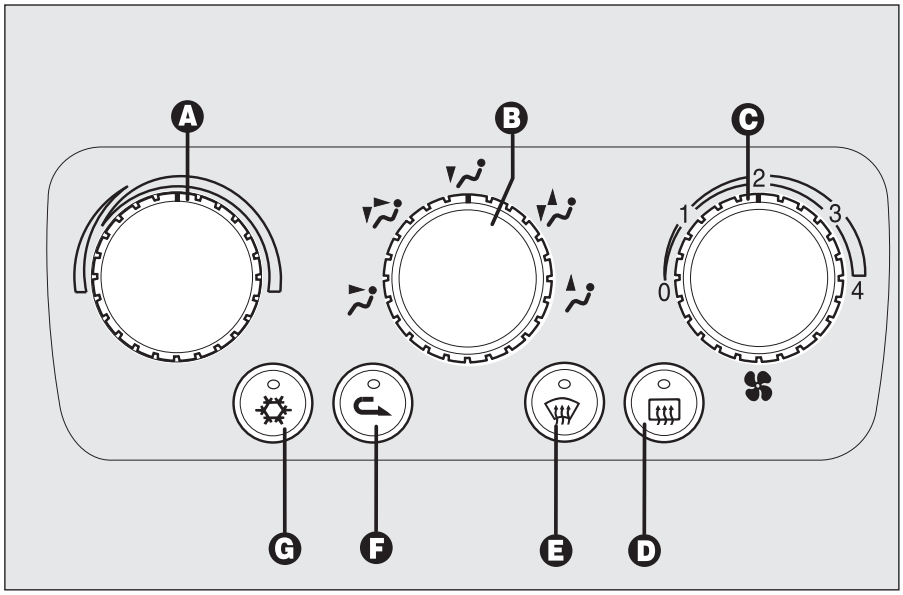


fig. 47

AIR DISTRIBUTION SELECTION

: air flow to driver's/passenger's body;

: air flow to driver's/passenger's body and lower part of the passenger compartment;

: air flow towards the front and rear lower part of the passenger compartment;

: air flow towards the lower part of the passenger compartment and windscreen;

: air flow towards the windscreen

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARMING THE PASSENGER COMPARTMENT

Proceed as follows:

❒ turn knob **A** to the required temperature;

❒ turn knob **C** to the required speed;

❒ turn knob **B** to the required distribution:

: to warm the feet of front and rear passengers;

: to warm the feet and keep the face cool (bilevel function);

: to warm the feet and at the same time demist the windscreen;

❒ turn air recirculation off (if on).

QUICK WINDSCREEN AND FRONT SIDE WINDOW DEMISTING/DEFROSTING (MAX-DEF function)

Press button : the button leds , and will turn on. To turn this function off, press again button the button led will turn off. After defrosting, turn the function off to keep top comfort conditions.

Window demisting

Climate control system is very useful to speed up window demisting and it is therefore to be turned on in the event of considerable moisture. In any case it is recommended to perform the following preventive demisting procedure:

❒ turn air recirculation off (if on);

❒ turn knob **C** to second speed;

❒ turn knob **B** to .

HEATED REAR WINDOW AND DOOR MIRROR DEMISTING/DEFROSTING

Press button to activate the demisting/defrosting function: when this function is on, the circular led around the button will turn on.

On certain versions, turning this function on will also activate windscreen defrosting in the windscreen wiper area.

This function is timed and switches off automatically after few minutes, or by pressing again the button or by turning the engine off. It will not be switched on automatically when restarting the engine.

IMPORTANT Do not apply stickers on the inside of the heated rear window over the heating filaments to avoid damage that might cause it to stop working properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RECIRCULATION

To turn this function on press button ⮌: the button led will turn on.

This function is particularly useful when the outside air is heavily polluted (in a traffic jam, tunnel, etc.) However, it is better not to use it for long periods, especially if there are several people in the car to prevent window misting up.

Do not use the air recirculation function on rainy/cold days as it would considerably increase the possibility of the windows misting inside.

IMPORTANT The inside air recirculation system makes it possible to reach the required ("heating" or "cooling") conditions faster.

CLIMATE CONTROL (fast cooling)

IMPORTANT The compressor ✲ can be enabled only if the ventilation is enabled.

Proceed as follows:

❒ turn knob **A** completely leftwards;

❒ turn knob **C** to top speed;

❒ turn knob **B** to ⇨/;

❒ press buttons ✲ and ⮌ (buttons leds on).

How to keep the required cooling

Proceed as follows:

❒ turn air recirculation off (if on).

❒ turn knob **A** to the required temperature;

❒ turn the knurled ring **C** to the required fan speed.

LOOKING AFTER THE SYSTEM

During the winter, the climate control system ✲ must be turned on at least once a month for about ten minutes.

Before summer, have the system checked at Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

After connecting/disconnecting the battery, wait for 3 minutes at least before fitting the electronic key into the ignition device in order to allow the climate control system control unit to reset the positions of the electric actuators that adjust air temperature and distribution.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AUTOMATIC TWO-/ THREE-ZONE CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM

(for versions/markets, where provided)

DESCRIPTION

The car is fitted with a two-/three-zone climate control system which makes it possible to separately adjust the air temperature in the two/three passenger's compartment areas to reach the required comfort.

For top quality temperature control in the two/three areas of the passenger's compartment, the system is fitted with external temperature sensor, passenger's compartment temperature sensor and two-side sun radiation sensor.

The climate control system automatically controls and adjusts the following parameters and functions:

❒ air temperature at driver/passengers vents;

❒ fan speed;

❒ air distribution at driver/passenger vents;

❒ compressor activation;

❒ air recirculation.

The following parameters and functions can be set or changed manually:

❒ required temperature;

❒ fan speed;

❒ air distribution on seven levels ;

❒ compressor on/off;

❒ window demisting/defrosting;

❒ air recirculation.

The system is fitted with AQS (Air Quality System) sensor (where provided), that turns on air recirculation automatically when it detects the presence of outside polluted air (for example in queues and tunnels).

Where provided, the system is integrated with an anti-misting sensor **A-fig. 48** set behind the driving mirror, capable of "monitoring" a preset internal area of the windscreen and of intervening automatically to prevent or to reduce window misting up through a proper strategy.

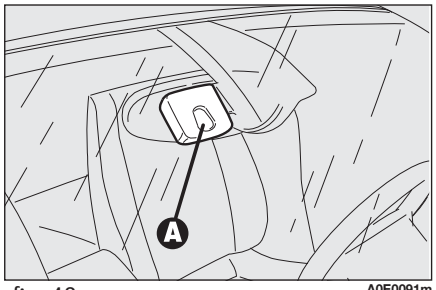


fig. 48

This sensor can be deactivated through any manual system control when the strategy is operating. The sensor is enabled at each start-up and in any case when the user presses one of the AUTO buttons.

To guarantee perfect and regular sensor operation do not apply stickers in the "monitoring" area between sensor and windscreen. Keep windscreen and sensor clean and avoid to accumulate dust or other substances.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TWO-ZONE controls fig. 49

A - air distribution buttons (on driver and passenger side);

B - temperature adjustment knob on driver side;

C - automatic operation button (AUTO);

D - climate control data display;

E - temperature adjustment knob on passenger side;

F - heated rear window/door mirrors on/off button;

G - MAX-DEF function button (fast defrosting/demisting function for windscreen, heated rear window and door mirrors with heating function);

H - buttons for adjusting the fan speed;

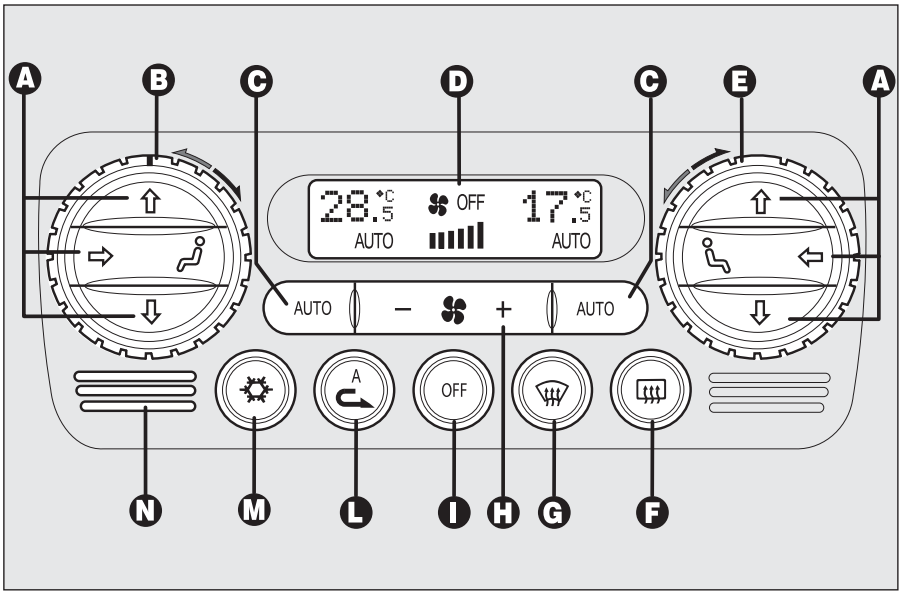


fig. 49 - TWO-ZONE configuration

I - OFF button to disable climate control;

L - air recirculation on/off button;

M - climate control compressor on/off button;

N - passenger's compartment temperature sensor

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

THREE-ZONE controls fig. 50

Front controls

A - air distribution buttons (driver and passenger side);

B - temperature adjustment knob on driver side;

C - automatic operation button (AUTO);

D - climate control data display;

E - temperature adjustment knob on passenger side;

F - heated rear window/door mirrors on/off button;

G - MAX-DEF function button (fast defrosting/demisting function for windscreen, heated rear window and door mirrors with heating function);

H - buttons for adjusting the fan speed;

I - OFF button to disable climate control;

L - air recirculation on/off button;

M - climate control compressor on/off button;

N - passenger's compartment temperature sensor

Rear controls

P - knob for adjusting temperature on rear passenger side;

Q - button for turning on automatic operation (AUTO) and for turning off air flow to rear seats (OFF);

R - air distribution buttons;

S - rear temperature display.

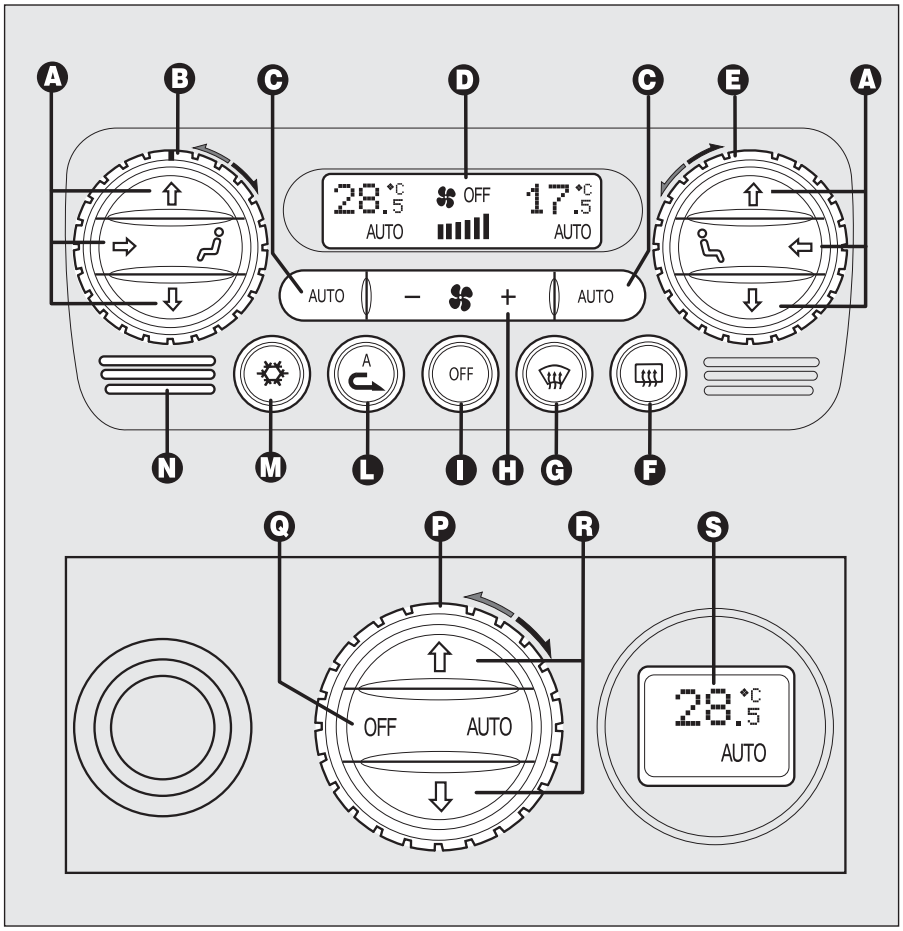


fig. 50 - THREE-ZONE configuration - Front and rear controls

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SWITCHING THE CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM ON

The system can be turned on by pressing any button (excluding , and OFF); it is however advisable to set the required temperatures on the display and then to press the AUTO button.

The climate control system allows to personalise required temperatures (driver and passengers).

AIR TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT KNOBS

Turning the knob knurled rings (**B**/**E**/**P**), clockwise or counter-clockwise, respectively raises or lowers the temperature of the air required respectively in the left front zone (knob **B**) or right front zone (knob **E**) or rear zone (knob **P**) of the passenger compartment. The temperatures set are shown on the display **D**/**S**.

Turning the knob knurled rings fully clockwise or counter-clockwise until they reach the extreme selections **HI** or **LO**, the maximum heating or cooling functions are respectively engaged.

HI function (HIGH) (maximum heating power)

It is switched on by setting a temperature of more than 32°C on the display, and can be switched on independently from the driver's or passengers' side, or both of them; this setting brings the system to the "one-zone" mode and it is shown by both displays.

This functions can be switched on when you wish to heat the passenger compartment as quickly as possible, by taking the greatest advantage from the system potential.

The function uses the maximum temperature of the heating fluid, whereas air distribution and fan speed are controlled automatically by the system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This function should not be activated when the engine is cold, to prevent air not warm enough from entering the passenger compartment.

With the function switched on, however, all the manual settings can be made. To switch the function off, you only need to turn the ring of knob (**B** or **E/P**) of the temperature set to a value lower than 32°C; the opposite display and the rear display (for versions/markets, where provided) will show 32°C.

Pressing button AUTO, the display will show a temperature of 32°C and returns to an operating condition with automatic temperature adjustment.

LO (LOW) function (highest cooling power)

It is switched on by setting a temperature lower than 16°C on the display; this setting is shown on the display. This function can be switched on when you wish to cool the passenger compartment as quickly as possible, by taking the greatest advantage from the system potential.

The function cuts off air heating, switches on both internal air recirculation (to prevent hot air from entering the compartment) and the climate control compressor, brings air distribution to ◀/▶ and the fan speed is controlled automatically by the system.

With the function switched on, however, all the manual settings can be made. To switch the function off, you only need to turn the ring of knob **B/E/P** of the temperature set to a value higher than 16°C; the opposite display and the rear display (where provided) will show 16°C.

Pressing button AUTO, the display will show a temperature of 16°C and returns to an operating condition with automatic temperature adjustment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AUTOMATIC OPERATION (AUTO BUTTON)

Pressing button AUTO (front and rear controls) the displays will show AUTO and the system will automatically adjust:

❒ fan speed;

❒ air distribution in passenger compartment;

❒ air recirculation;

❒ compressor;

and it will cancel all the previous manual adjustments.

Wording AUTO will disappear from the display of the involved area (driver or front passenger side or rear passenger side) when performing whatever operation (excluding temperature change).

AUTO will also go off if the system (specially when compressor is turned off manually) cannot reach or cannot keep the required temperature.

WARNING

It is inadvisable to use air recirculation on rainy/cold days as it would considerably increase the possibility of windows misting up inside.

FAN SPEED ADJUSTMENT

Press buttons **+/–** to increase or to decrease the fan speed.

The fan speed is shown by the lit bars on the display:

❒ min fan speed = one bar lit;

❒ max fan speed = 6 bars lit;

At starting, if climate control system is operating in automatic mode, the fan speed is kept at minimum until the engine has started.

With compressor on and engine running, the fan speed cannot fall below the min. speed.

The fan can be cut off (all bars off) only if the climate control compressor has been switched off by pressing button ✲.

To restore automatic fan speed control after a manual adjustment, press buttons AUTO.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

QUICK FRONT WINDOW DEMISTING/DEFROSTING (MAX-DEF function)

Pressing button the climate control automatically activates timed operation of all the functions required to quicken demisting/defrosting of the windscreen and front side windows and, on certain versions, electric windscreen demisting in the windscreen wiper area.

The MAX-DEF can be turned on also with engine off. When this function is on the circular led around the button will turn on.

The MAX-DEF function activates the following operations:

- ❒ rear panel turning off (for versions/markets, where provided);
- ❒ air flow increase;
- ❒ air distribution at DEF;
- ❒ outside air intake;
- ❒ compressor activation;
- ❒ AQS function deactivation (where provided)
- ❒ rear window heating activation.

When the MAX-DEF function is on, the only manual operations possible are manual adjustment of the fan speed and switching heated rear window off.

IMPORTANT If the engine is not warm enough, the function will not engage the predefined fan speed immediately, to limit the flow to the passenger compartment of air that is not warm enough to demist the windows.

Pressing again one of the following buttons: , , AUTO, or the system switches off the MAX-DEF function, resuming the system operating conditions prior to turning it on, in addition to activating the last function required, if any.

IMPORTANT Don't turn the MAX-DEF function on with engine off to prevent draining the battery.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HEATED REAR WINDOW AND DOOR MIRROR DEMISTING/DEFROSTING

Press button to activate the demisting/defrosting function: when this function is on, the circular led around the button will turn on.

On certain versions, turning this function on will also activate windscreen defrosting in the windscreen wiper area.

This function is timed and switches off automatically after few minutes, or by pressing again the button or by turning the engine off. It will not be switched on automatically when restarting the engine.

IMPORTANT Do not apply stickers on the inside of the rear window over the heating filaments to avoid damage that might cause it to stop working properly.

CLIMATE CONTROL COMPRESSOR ON/OFF

Press button to turn the compressor on: when climate control compressor is on the circular led around the button will turn on. Compressor will stay on also after turning the engine off.

To turn the compressor off press again button .

With compressor off, the system will check whether outside temperature is higher or lower/same as the set one:

- ❒ if outside temperature is lower than the set one, the system will operate regularly also with compressor off;
- ❒ if outside temperature is higher than the set one, the system will not be able to keep the required condition, the set temperature values will then start to flash on the display.

Temperature detection (compressor off and outside temperature higher than set temperature) is activated each time the electronic key is fitted into the ignition device.

WARNING

Operation of the climate control compressor is necessary for cooling and dehumidifying the air; it is advisable to keep this function always on, to prevent window misting problems.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AIR DISTRIBUTION SELECTION

Front seat Two-zone/ Three-zone configuration

Pressing buttons (front controls) ⇧/⇩/⇨ you can manually choose one of the 7 possible modes for air distribution inside the compartment:

⇨ Flow of air to the dashboard centre and side outlets (passenger's body).

⇨⇩ Splitting of the air flow between the vents to the lower part of the passenger compartment (warmest air) and the dashboard centre and side outlets and the rear outlet (coolest air).

⇩ Air flow towards the front and rear lower part of the passenger compartment. This type of distribution allows heating of the passenger compartment in the shortest time by proper setting of the temperature.

⇧⇩ Splitting of the air flow between windscreen and front side window demisting/defrosting vents and the lower part of the passenger compartment. This type of air distribution allows satisfactory heating of the passenger compartment while preventing possible misting of the windows.

⇧ Air flow to the windscreen and front side window vents to demist or defrost them.

⇧⇨ Splitting of the air flow between the central/side dashboard vents, rear vents and windscreen and side window defrosting / demisting vents. This type of air distribution allows satisfactory ventilation of the passenger compartment while preventing possible misting of the windows.

⇧⇨⇩ Splitting of the air flow between all vents.

Rear seat Three-zone configuration controls

Pressing buttons ⇧/⇩ (rear controls) you can manually choose one of the 3 possible modes for air distribution to the rear side of passenger's compartment

⇧ Air flow to the vents on the central console (passengers' body).

⇩ Air flow towards the rear lower part of the passenger compartment. This type of distribution allows heating of the passenger compartment in the shortest time by proper setting of the temperature.

⇧⇩ Splitting of the air flow between the vents to the lower part of the passenger compartment (warmest air) and the rear vents (coolest air).

To restore automatic air distribution control after a manual selection, press buttons AUTO (front controls) or AUTO (rear controls).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AIR RECIRCULATION AND AQS FUNCTION (AIR QUALITY SYSTEM)

ON/OFF (for versions/markets, where provided)

Inside air recirculation is controlled according to the following operating logics:

- automatic control, indicated by button led "A";
- forced switching on (inside air recirculation always on), indicated by the turning on of the circular led around the button;
- forced switching off (air recirculation always off with air inlet from the outside), indicated by the turning off of the circular led around the button.

With A.Q.S. (air quality sensor - where provided), the operating logics becomes sequential by pressing button .

IMPORTANT The inside air recirculation system makes it possible to reach the required heating or cooling conditions faster. It is however inadvisable to use it on rainy/cold days as it would considerably increase the possibility of the windows misting inside, especially if the climate control compressor is off. It is advisable to turn on the inside air recirculation system in queues or tunnels to avoid admitting polluted air from outside. The prolonged use of this function should however be avoided, especially with several persons on board, to avoid the possibility of the windows misting inside and to guarantee the required fresh air inlet.

In certain weather conditions (e.g. outside temperature around 0°C) and with automatic air recirculation control on, mist may form on the windows. In this case press button to switch off recirculation and if necessary press button + to increase the flow of air to the windscreen.

With the outside temperature below -1°C the climate control compressor is unable to work. It is therefore inadvisable to use the inside air recirculation function with low outside temperature as windows may mist over quickly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AQS function (Air Quality System) (for versions/markets, where provided)

The AQS function turns on automatically air recirculation when it detects the presence of polluted air (e.g. in queues and tunnels).

IMPORTANT With AQS function on, after a preset time with recirculation on, the compressor will enable outside air inlet (for about 1 minute) to change air inside the passenger compartment, regardless of outside air pollution level.

IMPORTANT The AQS function is disabled when the outside temperature is cold to prevent window misting up. To reactivate this function, press button . Led "A" on button will turn on to indicate that the function is on.

POLLEN FILTER/ ACTIVATED CARBON POLLEN FILTER

According to versions, the car can be fitted with pollen filter or activated carbon pollen filter (where provided). The filter has the specific capability of admitting to the passenger compartment purified air, free from particles such as dust, pollen, etc. The filtering action takes place under all air inlet conditions and it is clearly most effective with the windows shut.

Have the conditions of the filter checked by Alfa Romeo Authorized Services at least once a year, preferably at the onset of summer.

If the car is used mainly in polluted or dusty areas it should be checked and if necessary replaced at shorter intervals than specified in the Service Schedule (see section "Car Maintenance").

Failure to replace the filter may considerably reduce the effectiveness of the climate control system up to blocking the air flow from the outlets and vents.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SWITCHING THE CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM OFF

Press OFF button. The circular led around the button turns on, signalling the OFF state.

With climate control system off:

- ❒ the system stores performed operations;
- ❒ the display is off;
- ❒ air recirculation is active (button led on);
- ❒ compressor is active;
- ❒ ventilation is off.

To turn the climate control system on again press button AUTO or any other button (excluding and).

Turning the climate control system on again, air recirculation will be again controlled automatically.

Pressing button OFF on the rear control will display the wording OFF on the rear display and will stop air flow to rear seats.

After connecting/disconnecting the battery, wait for 3 minutes at least before fitting the electronic key into the ignition device in order to allow the climate control system control unit to reset the positions of the electric actuators that adjust air temperature and distribution.

ADDITIONAL HEATER (diesel versions only)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The car is fitted with an additional heater that supports the engine during cold or winter weather to quickly reach a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.

The additional heater works with the engine running when the outside temperature is below 20°C and the engine has not yet reached normal operating temperature.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EXTERNAL LIGHTS

LEFT-HAND STALK fig. 51

The left-hand stalk control almost all external lights.

The external lights can only be switched on with electronic key fitted into ignition device.

Lights switched off

Knurled ring at **O**.

Sidelights

Turn the knurled ring **A** to ☼. The warning light ≡O≡ on the instrument panel will turn on.

Dipped beam headlamps

Turn the knurled ring **A** to ≡D. The warning light ≡D on the instrument panel will turn on.

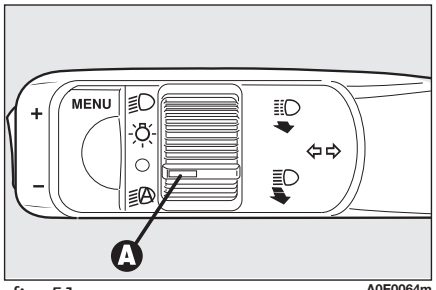


fig. 51

Main beam headlamps

With knurled ring **A** at ≡D pull the stalk towards the steering wheel (2nd unstable position). Warning light ≡D on the instrument panel will turn on.

To turn the main beams off, pull again the stalk towards the steering wheel (2nd unstable position).

Flashing the main beams

Pull the stalk towards the steering wheel (1st unstable position) regardless of the position of the knurled ring **A**. Warning light ≡D on the instrument panel will turn on.

Direction indicators

Push the stalk to (stable) position:

- ❒ **up**: to turn the right-hand direction indicator on;
- ❒ **down**: to turn the left-hand direction indicator on.

Warning light ⇦ or ⇨ will come on flashing on the instrument cluster at the same time.

Indicators are switched off automatically when the steering wheel is straightened.

If you want to show that you are about to change lane, move the left-hand stalk to unstable position. The required direction indicator will flash 3 times and then it will turn off automatically.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

"FOLLOW ME HOME" DEVICE

This function allows the illumination of the space in front of the car for a preset period of time.

Activation

Pull the stalk towards the steering wheel within 2 minutes from when the engine is turned off.

At each single movement of the stalk, the staying on of the lights is extended by 30 seconds up to a maximum of 3.5 minutes; then the lights are switched off automatically.

Each time the stalk is operated, the warning light turns on together with the message on the display (see section "Warning lights and messages").

Deactivation

Keep the stalk pulled towards the steering wheel for more than 2 seconds.

AUTOMATIC HEADLIGHTS SENSOR (daylight sensor)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

It detects the changes of the external light intensity of the car according to the light sensitivity set: the greater the sensitivity is, the smaller the amount of external light necessary to control the switching-on of the external headlights will be.

On certain versions, the daylight sensor sensitivity can be adjusted through the "Setup Menu" of the display (see section "Reconfigurable multifunction display" in this section).

Activation

Turn the knurled ring **A-fig. 51** to : in this way, the automatic activation of the side/taillights and dipped beam headlights is simultaneously enabled according to outside brightness.

With lights switched on automatically and in the presence of a switching off control by the sensor, the main beams will be switched off first and a few seconds after also the sidelights.

Deactivation

As a result of the sensor control, the dipped beam headlights will switch off and, after a few seconds, sidelights will switch off too. The sensor is not able to detect the fog presence, under this condition lights shall therefore be switched on manually.

Failure warnings

On certain versions headlight sensor failure is shown by the instrument panel warning light AUTO !, whereas on other versions a dedicated message is shown on the display (see section "Warning lights and messages").

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

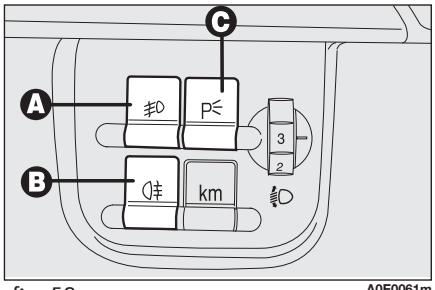


fig. 52

DASHBOARD BUTTONS fig. 52

Front fog lights (where provided)

To turn front fog lights on, press button **A**; to activate these lights it is necessary to have the side/taillights switched on. The instrument panel warning light will turn on. Press the button again or turn side/taillights off to turn the lights off.

Rear fog lights

To turn rear fog lights on, press button **B** to activate these lights it is necessary to have the dipped beams or front fog lights switched on. The instrument panel warning light will turn on. They turn off by pressing the button again, turning the front or rear fog lights off or by turning the engine off.

Parking lights

With instrument panel off they turn on by pressing button **C**. When pressing the button a buzzer will sound and the instrument panel warning light will turn on.

Press the button again to turn the lights off.

With parking lights on, move the external lights left-hand stalk upwards or downwards to select on which side (right or left) the lights must stay on. In this event warning light will turn off.

With left stalk at central position the four parking lights and the number plate light will turn on.

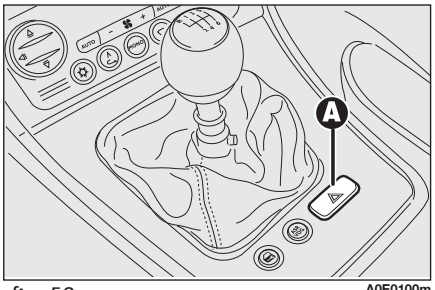


fig. 53

Hazard lights

These lights are turned on by pressing button **A-fig. 53**.

When these lights are on, the switch flashes and warning lights ⇦ and ⇨ on the instrument panel will turn on at the same time.

Press switch **A** again to turn the lights off.

WARNING

Use of the hazard warning lights is ruled by the Highway Code of the country in which the car is used. Observe regulations.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WINDOW WASHING

RIGHT-HAND STALK

Right-hand stalk **fig. 54** controls windscreen washer/wiper operation.

With external lights on, activating the windscreen washer will also activate the headlight washer, if provided.

Windscreen washer/wiper

The stalk can be moved to five different positions:

0: windscreen wiper off;

1: intermittent.

With the stalk in position **1**, turning the knurled ring **A** four possible intermittent speeds are obtained:

■ = slow intermittent

■ = intermittent medium

■ = intermittent medium-fast

■ = fast intermittent

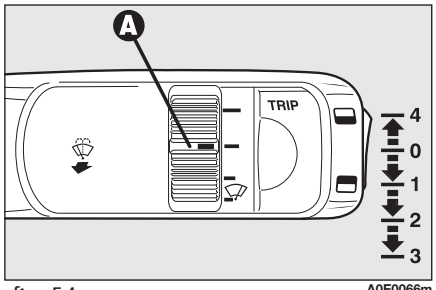


fig. 54

2: continuous slow

3: continuous fast

4: fast temporary (unstable position)

Operation in position **4** is limited to the time the stalk is held in this position. When the stalk is released, it returns to position **0** automatically stopping the wiper.

Never use the window wiper to remove ice or snow from the windscreen. In these conditions, the wiper is submitted to excessive effort that results in motor protection cutting in and wiper operation inhibition for few seconds as a consequence. If operation is not restored contact Fiat Dealership.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

"Smart washing" function

Pulling the lever towards the steering wheel (unstable position) operates the windscreen washer.

Keeping the stalk pulled with just one movement it is possible to operate the washer jet and the wiper at the same time; the wiper actually comes into operation automatically when the stalk is pulled for more than half a second.

The wiper stops working 3 strokes after releasing the stalk; a further stroke after about 6 seconds will complete the wiping operation.

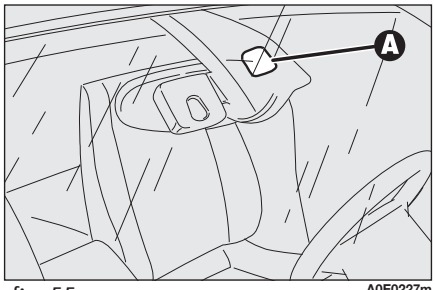


fig. 55

RAIN SENSOR

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The rain sensor **A-fig. 55**, located behind the driving mirror, is an electronic device combined with the windscreen wiper which has the purpose of automatically adjusting the number of wipes to intensity of the rain. All the other functions controlled by the right-hand stalk remain unchanged.

The rain sensor is activated automatically moving the right-hand stalk to position **1-fig. 54** and it has a range of adjustment that gradually varies between wiper stationary (no wiping) when the windscreen is dry, to wiper at second speed (continuous, medium wiping) with heavy rain.

Turning the knurled ring **A-fig. 54** it is possible to increase the sensitivity of the rain sensor, obtaining a quicker change from stationary (no wiping) when the windscreen is dry, to first continuous speed (continuous, slow). A further stroke will confirm operation.

Operating the windscreen washer with the rain sensor activated (stalk at position **1-fig. 54**) the normal washing cycle is performed at the end of which the rain sensor resumes its normal automatic function.

Removing the electronic key from the ignition device, the rain sensor is deactivated and the next time the engine is started it will not be reactivated even if the stalk has remained in position **1-fig. 54**. In this case to activate the rain sensor, simply move the stalk to **0** or **2** and then back to **1**.

When the rain sensor is reactivated in this way, the wiper performs one stroke, even if the windscreen is dry, to indicate that reactivation has occurred.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IMPORTANT In the event of rain sensor failure, windscreen wiper operation with right-hand stalk at **1-fig. 54** shall be intermittent. If failure occurs during automatic operation, the system will keep the last wiper operating condition. Operation is however guaranteed although moving the stalk to other positions.

The rain sensor is able to recognize and automatically adjust itself in the presence of the following particular conditions:

❒ impurities on the controlled surface (salt, dirt, etc.);

❒ difference between day and night.

Failure warnings

On certain versions rain sensor failure is shown by the instrument panel warning light ☔!, whereas on other versions a dedicated message is shown on the display (see section "Warning lights and messages").

Rain sensor shall be deactivated when washing the car at automatic carwash.

Make sure the rain sensor is deactivated if there is ice on the windscreen.

Streaks of water could cause unrequired blade movements.

WARNING

Make sure the device is off when cleaning the windscreen.

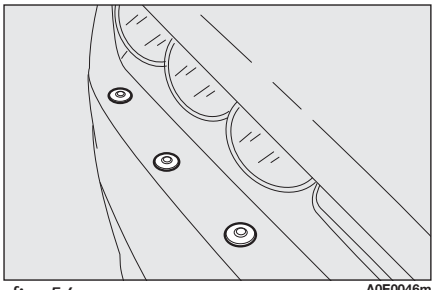


fig. 56

HEADLIGHT WASHERS (where provided) fig. 56

Headlight washers are visible and are fitted with a nozzle for each external light function. They come into operation automatically when operating the windscreen washer with external lights turned on.

IMPORTANT Check at regular intervals correct operation and cleanness of nozzles.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CRUISE CONTROL

(for versions/markets, where provided)

GENERAL

The speed regulator (**CRUISE CONTROL**), with electronic control, makes it possible to drive the car at the required speed, without pressing the accelerator pedal. This reduces driving fatigue during long journeys (specially on highways) because the speed memorised is automatically maintained.

IMPORTANT The Cruise Control must be activated at speeds of between 45 and 180 k.p.h., in fourth, fifth and sixth gears.

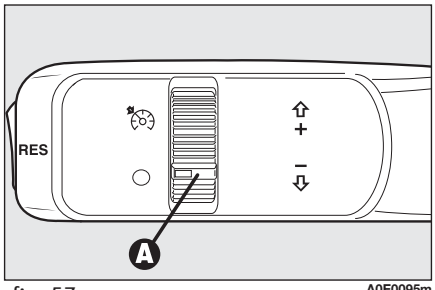


fig. 57

DEVICE ENGAGEMENT

Turn knurled ring **A-fig. 57** to .

The device cannot be engaged in first speed or reverse. It is recommended to engage it in 4th or higher speeds. Travelling downhill with the device engaged, the car speed may increase more than the memorised one.

When the device is activated the instrument panel warning light turns on (on certain versions together with a message on the display) (see section "Warning lights and messages").

TO MEMORISE SPEED

Proceed as follows:

- ❒ turn the knurled ring **A-fig. 57** to and press the accelerator pedal to the required speed;
- ❒ push the stalk upwards (**+**) or downwards (**–**), then release it: car speed is memorised and it is therefore possible to release the accelerator pedal.

In the case of need (when overtaking for instance) acceleration is possible simply pressing the accelerator pedal: releasing the accelerator pedal, the car will return to the speed memorised previously.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TO RESET THE MEMORISED SPEED

If the device has been disengaged for example pressing the brake or clutch pedal, the memorised speed can be reset as follows:

❒ accelerate gradually until reaching a speed approaching the one memorised;

❒ engage the gear selected at the time of speed memorising (4th or 5th gear);

❒ press the **RES** button (set at stalk end).

TO INCREASE THE MEMORISED SPEED

The speed memorised can be increased in two ways:

❒ pressing the accelerator and then memorising the new speed reached;

or

❒ moving the stalk upwards (**+**).

Each operation of the stalk will correspond to a slight increase in speed (about 1.5 km/h), while keeping the stalk upwards will correspond to a continuous speed increase.

TO REDUCE MEMORISED SPEED

The speed memorised can be increased in two ways:

❒ disengaging the device and then memorising the new speed;

or

❒ moving the stalk downwards (**–**) until reaching the new speed which will be memorised automatically.

Each operation of the stalk will correspond to a slight decrease in speed (about 1.5 km/h), while keeping the stalk downwards will correspond to a continuous speed decrease.

DEVICE DISENGAGEMENT

The device is disengaged in one of the following cases:

❒ turning the knurled ring **A-fig. 57** to **O**;

❒ turning the engine off or removing the electronic key from the ignition device;

❒ pressing the brake pedal, pressing the clutch pedal (in these cases the last stored speed will stay memorised, to resume it press button **RES**);

❒ pressing the accelerator pedal; in this case the system is disengaged only temporarily; device operation will be resumed automatically when releasing the pedal;

❒ with car speed below the preset limit (in these cases the last stored speed will stay memorised, to resume it press button **RES**);

Automatic Cruise Control deactivation

The Cruise Control is temporarily deactivated when the ABS or VDC systems come into operation (above a max. preset time): in this case the last set speed will stay memorised, to recall it press button **RES**.

In the event of Cruise Control or engine control system failure, the device is deactivated until removing the electronic key from the ignition device. In this event contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The device is automatically deactivated when operating accidentally or incorrectly the stalk, the knurled ring **A** or button **RES**: in this event to reactivate the device: bring the car to the required speed and then move the stalk upwards (**+**) or downwards (**–**).

WARNING

In the event of device malfunction or failure, turn the knurled ring A-fig. 57 to O and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services after checking the protection fuse integrity.

WARNING

When travelling with the device on, never set the gearshift lever to neutral.

CEILING LIGHTS

FRONT CEILING LIGHT fig. 58

Press button:

A: to turn on/off the driver's courtesy light;

B: to turn on/off the central light;

C: to turn on/off the passenger's courtesy light.

Keeping pressed button **B** will turn off all front ceiling lights and rear ceiling lights. Turning off is also indicated by the sound of a buzzer. To turn these lights on again press briefly button **B**.

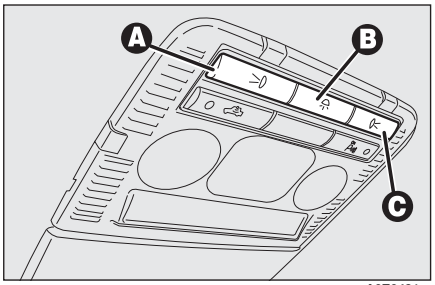


fig. 58

IMPORTANT Leaving inadvertently a door open, the front ceiling light and the puddle lights will turn off automatically after a few minutes. To turn them on again, open another door or close and open again the same door.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In the following table are summarised the causes that make front/rear ceiling lights turn on/off and their turning on/off mode:

Cause	Front and rear ceiling lights turning on/off mode
Opening one of the front/rear doors	Central front light and rear light turning on for a few minutes. This timed operation will be reactivated each time a door is opened.
Closing all the doors	With electronic key removed from ignition device: ceiling lights will stay on for other 10 seconds. This timed operation is stopped when refitting the electronic key into the ignition device Starting the engine: front central and rear courtesy lights will turn off
Removing the electronic key from the ignition device	Front central and rear courtesy lights turning on for about 10 seconds
Locking the doors	Front central and rear courtesy lights turning off
Unlocking the doors	Front central and rear courtesy lights turning on for about 10 seconds
Cutting in of the fuel cut-off switch	Front central and rear courtesy lights turning on for a few minutes. Reactivating the fuel cut-off switch will turn off the ceiling lights

In all the cases tabulated above, front and rear ceiling lights turning on/off is gradual, for 2 seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

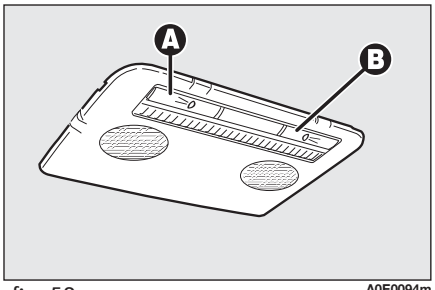


fig. 59 A0E0094m

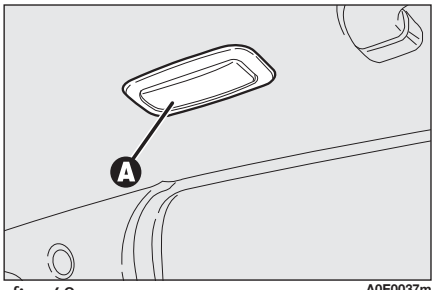


fig. 60 A0E0037m

REAR CEILING LIGHT

Versions without sunroof fig. 59

Press button:

A: to turn on/off the driver's courtesy light;

B: to turn on/off the passenger's courtesy light.

Closing the doors, the ceiling lights will stay on for a few seconds, then they will switch off automatically. Ceiling lights will turn off when fitting the electronic key into the ignition device.

IMPORTANT Leaving inadvertently a door open, the ceiling lights will turn off automatically after a few minutes. To turn them on again, open another door or close and open again the same door.

Versions with sunroof fig. 60

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Versions with sunroof are fitted with two rear ceiling lights located above the rears doors.

Press lens **A-fig. 60** to turn these lights on/off.

DOOR PUDDLE LIGHTS

The door light will turn on when opening the door regardless of the electronic key position. It will stay on for about 3 minutes when the door is open, then it will go off automatically.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CONTROLS

POWER SUPPLY AND FUEL CUT-OFF SWITCHES

The car is fitted with a safety switch that in the event of a crash comes into operation by cutting off fuel and turning off the engine as a consequence.

Certain versions are equipped with an additional safety switch that in the event of a crash comes into operation by cutting off the power supply.

These two safety switches therefore prevent dangerous fuel leaks due to fuel line cracking, and sparks or electric discharges due to damaging or malfunctioning of the electric components of the car in the event of a crash.

IMPORTANT After a crash, remember to remove the key from the ignition device to prevent battery run-down.

WARNING

If, after a crash, you smell fuel or see leaks from the fuel system, do not reset the switches to avoid fire risk.

Door unlocking in the event of a crash

In the event of a crash that triggers the fuel cut-off switch, the doors will unlock automatically to enable getting into the car and at the same time the passenger's compartment lights will turn on. It is however always possible to open the doors from the passenger's compartment by means of the internal door handles.

If, after a crash no fuel leaks or damages to the electric devices (e.g. headlights) are found and the car can be started again, reset the fuel cut-off switch and the power supply cut-off switch (for versions/markets, where provided). Follow the instructions given below.

WARNING

If central door locking has been activated from inside the car and after a crash the fuel cut-off switch cannot activate automatic door unlocking, it will not be possible to get into the car. In any case, door opening from the outside depends on door conditions after the crash: if a door is badly damaged it will be impossible to open it. In this event try to open one of the other doors.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

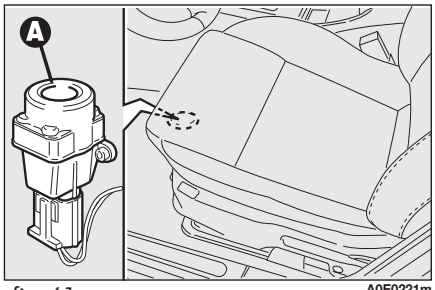


fig. 61

Resetting the fuel cut-off switch

WARNING

Before resetting the fuel cut-off switch carefully inspect the car for fuel leaks or damages to electric devices (e.g. headlights).

To reset the fuel cut-off switch, press button **A-fig. 61**.

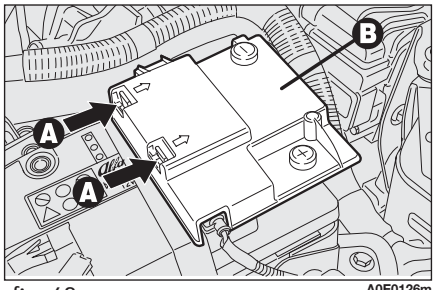


fig. 62

Resetting the power supply cut-off switch

(for versions/markets, where provided)

WARNING

Before resetting the power supply cut-off switch carefully inspect the car for fuel leaks or damages to electric devices (e.g. headlights).

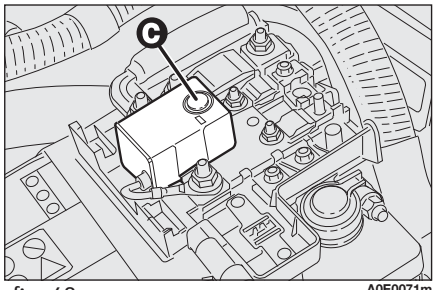


fig. 63

The switch is located inside the fuse box at battery positive terminal.

To reset the power supply cut-off switch, proceed as follows:

- ❒ press button **A-fig. 61** to reset the fuel cut-off switch;
- ❒ open the bonnet;
- ❒ operate the retaining clips **A-fig. 62** and remove the protection cover **B**;
- ❒ press button **C-fig. 63** to reset the power supply cut-off switch.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INTERIOR FITTINGS

CENTRAL ARMREST

The central armrest is located between the front seats. Inside the armrest are housed an oddment compartment and an air-conditioned food box (where provided) (see next paragraphs).

On certain versions the central armrest can be adjusted forward or backward by operating the cover **B-fig. 64**.

Oddment compartment

To open the oddment compartment, press button **A-fig. 64** and raise the cover **B**.

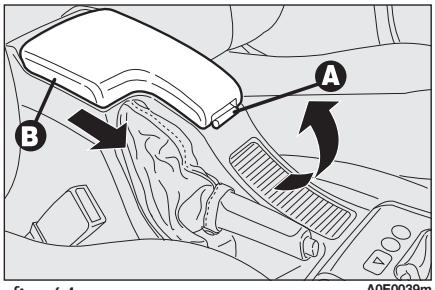


fig. 64

Air-conditioned food box
(for versions/markets, where provided)

Access to the food box is gained from the oddment compartment by lifting tab **A-fig. 65**. Turn wheel **B** to adjust the air flow inside the food box.

IMPORTANT Function of the food box is to keep the temperature of the drinks placed inside it; drinks shall be warmed or cooled as required before being put inside the food box.

Pay attention not to spill the drinks: the food box bottom however is provided with a hole to drain spilled liquids, if any.

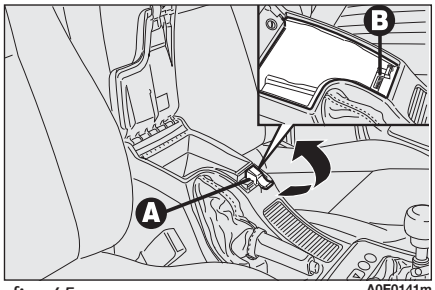


fig. 65

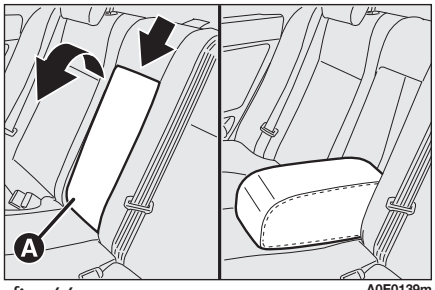


fig. 66

REAR ARMREST
(for versions/markets, where provided)

To use the central armrest **A-fig. 66** lower it as shown in the figure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

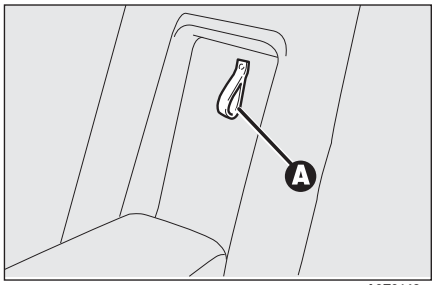


fig. 67 A0E0142m

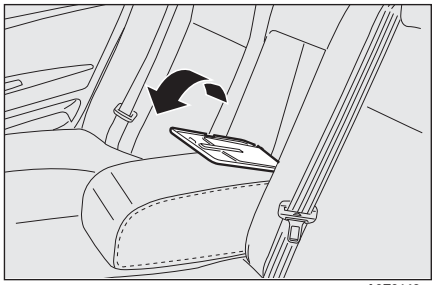


fig. 68 A0E0143m

Ski compartment
(for versions/markets, where provided)

This compartment can be used for carrying long loads.

To have access to this compartment, lower the armrest, pull the lid tab **A-fig. 67**, then lower it on the armrest **fig. 68**.

fig. 69 A0E0146m

REAR ARMREST WITH ODDMENT COMPARTMENT

(for versions/markets, where provided)

To use the central armrest **B-fig. 69**, take it from tab **A** and then lower it. Inside the armrest is fitted an oddment compartment **fig. 71**. To open it, press button **B-fig. 70** and raise the cover **C-fig. 70**.

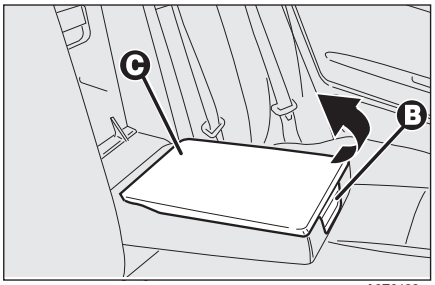


fig. 70 A0E0199m

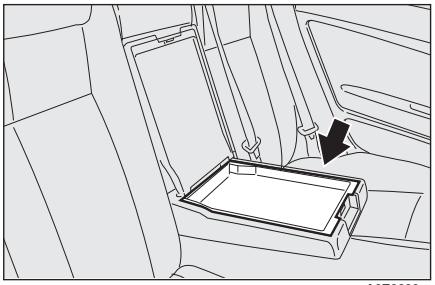


fig. 71 A0E0200m

Ski compartment
(for versions/markets, where provided)

This compartment can be used for carrying long loads.

To have access to this compartment, lower the armrest, press button **A-fig. 72** of the lid **B**, then lower it on the armrest.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

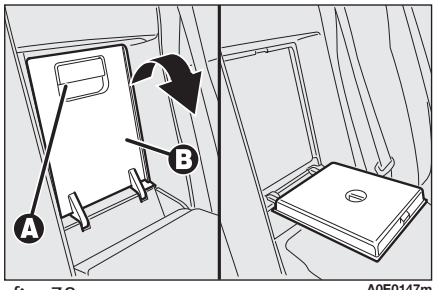


fig. 72 A0E0147m

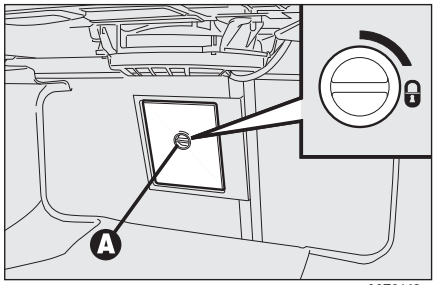


fig. 73 A0E0148m

To open the lid **B**, switch **A-fig. 73** (accessible from the boot) shall be set in vertical position (horizontal position 🔒 = compartment locked).

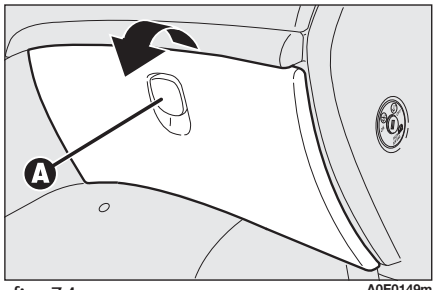


fig. 74 A0E0149m

GLOVE COMPARTMENT

To open the glove compartment use lever **A-fig. 74**. When the glove compartment is opened, the internal courtesy light turns on. Leaving inadvertently open the glove compartment, this light will turn off automatically after a few minutes. The folding top is also provided with a recess for a pen or a pencil.

Do not travel with the glove compartment open; it could harm the passenger in the event of an accident.

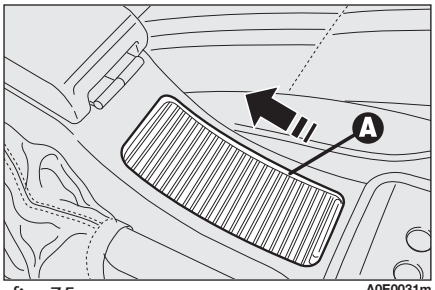


fig. 75 A0E0031m

CIGAR LIGHTER

Front cigar lighter
(for versions/markets, where provided)

It is located on the central console, near the handbrake lever. To use the cigar lighter, raise cover **A-fig. 75** as shown by the arrow.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

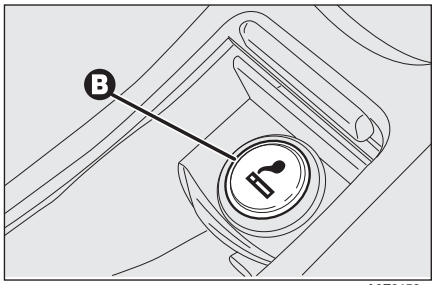


fig. 76 A0E0152m

Press button **B-fig. 76** to switch on the cigar lighter with key fitted into ignition device.

IMPORTANT Always check that the cigar lighter has turned off.

IMPORTANT The cigar lighter gets very hot. Handle it with care and make sure that it is not used by children: danger of fire and/or burns.

IMPORTANT Do not plug electric accessories with power exceeding 100W to the front cigar lighter seat.

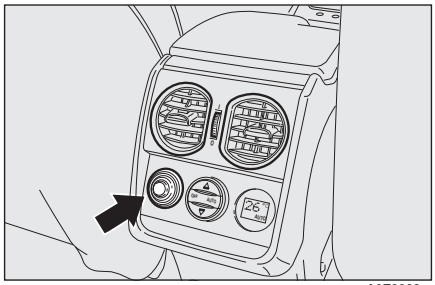


fig. 77 A0E0068m

Rear cigar lighter
(for versions/markets, where provided)

It is located on the central console between the seats (see **fig. 77**).

IMPORTANT Do not plug electric accessories with power exceeding 140W to the rear cigar lighter seat.

IMPORTANT Oversize plugs could damage the cigar lighter outlet tabs.

Do not plug electric accessories with absorption exceeding the max. specified value. Prolonged current absorption could drain the battery and impair next engine start up.

IMPORTANT To safeguard the lighting life of certain internal devices (e.g.: cigar lighter ring and ashtray), when switching on the external lights, these devices will switch on according to the passenger's compartment brightness: with enough daylight these devices will not switch on. On the contrary they will switch on with poor daylight.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

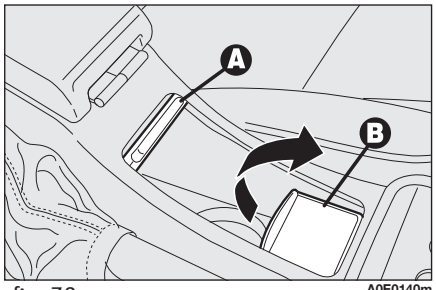


fig. 78 A0E0140m

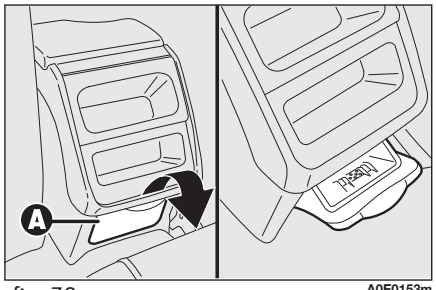


fig. 79 A0E0153m

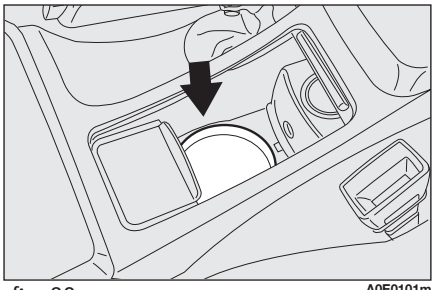


fig. 80 A0E0101m

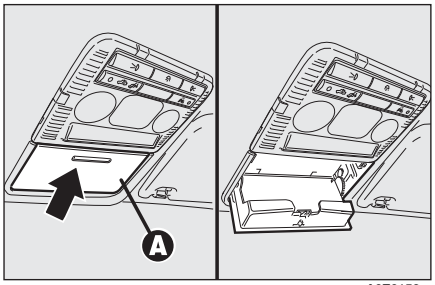


fig. 81 A0E0156m

ASHTRAY
(for versions/markets, where provided)

Front ashtray

It is located on the central console, near the handbrake lever.

To use the cigar lighter, raise cover **A-fig. 78** and open lid **B**.

Front ashtray is removable: to remove it, pull it upwards.

IMPORTANT Do not use the ashtray as paper bin: it could set on fire on contact with cigarette stubs.

Rear ashtray

It is located on the central console, between front seats. To use the ashtray, lift lid **A-fig. 79** as shown by the arrow.

Rear ashtray is removable: to remove it, press on the central part and pull it upwards.

IMPORTANT Do not use the ashtray as paper bin: it could set on fire on contact with cigarette stubs.

GLASS/CAN HOLDER fig. 80

It is located on the central console, near the handbrake lever. To use it lift cover **A-fig. 75**.

EYEGLASSES HOLDER
(for versions/markets, where provided)

It is located near the front ceiling light. To use it, press lid **A-fig. 81**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

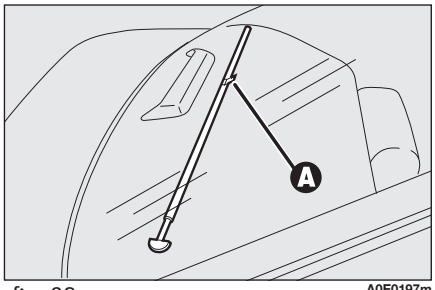


fig. 82 A0E0197m

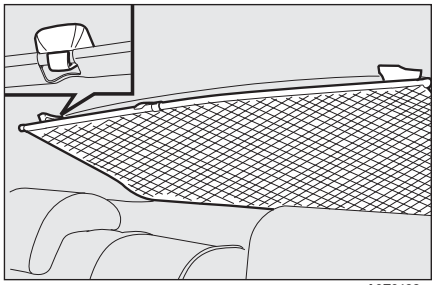


fig. 83 A0E0198m

SUN VISORS

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Certain versions are provided with sun-visors behind the rear seats.

To use it, take the tab **A-fig. 82**, pull it forwards and secure it to the hooks set on the top of the car roof (see **fig. 83**).

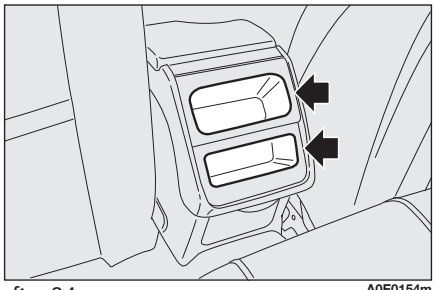


fig. 84 A0E0154m

ODDMENTS COMPARTMENTS

fig. 84 (for versions/markets, where provided)

They are located on the central console between the front seats.

SUN VISORS

These are positioned to the sides of the rear-view mirror. They can swing to the sides and up or down.

On certain versions, sun visors are fitted on the back with a courtesy mirror and a light which enables to use the mirror also with poor sunlight.

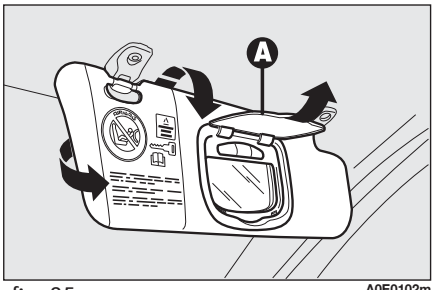


fig. 85 A0E0102m

To use the mirror open cover **A-fig. 85**.

Mirror lights will turn on automatically when lifting the cover and they will turn off when lowering it or few minutes after removing the electronic key from the ignition device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HOMELINK

(for versions/markets, where provided)

DESCRIPTION

The HomeLink fixed-system installed on your car enables to control up to three different devices for opening/closing garage doors or gates, or for turning on/off lighting system and for activating/deactivating alarm systems installed at home and/or office.

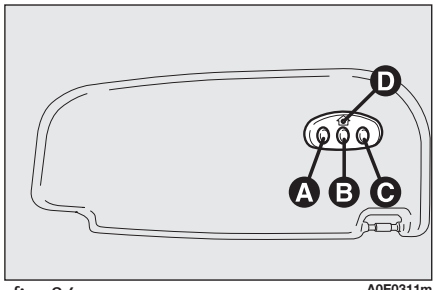


fig. 86

PROGRAMMING

IMPORTANT While programming the system, check for the absence of people, animals or objects within the manoeuvre space of main doors or gates to prevent the risk of injuries or damages.

IMPORTANT Pull up the handbrake and fit the key into the ignition device. Do not start the engine.

Proceed as follows:

1) press and keep pressed the outer buttons (**A** and **C**): 20 seconds after led **D** will start flashing. Release both buttons;

NOTE This operation clears the standard codes programmed by the manufacturer. It will not be necessary to repeat this operation the next time you program the buttons.

2) press and keep pressed the required HomeLink button **A** or **B** or **C**. Do not release the button until completing operation **4**;

3) when the HomeLink led **D** starts flashing slowly (about 20 seconds after) bring the portable remote control (keeping the button to program pressed) as close as possible to the HomeLink.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The distance required between the portable remote control and the HomeLink depends on the system to be programmed (type of frequency of main door, gate or other system).

If **D** does not start to flash quickly try again changing the distance between HomeLink and portable remote control (move them away slightly). If 20 seconds later the led is still flashing slowing, repeat the operation changing again the distance between Homelink and remote control.

4) the HomeLink led **D** will start blinking, first slowly and then quickly. When it starts flashing quickly, release both buttons (HomeLink and portable remote control).

HOW TO USE THE HOMELINK SYSTEM

The HomeLink remote control activates the operation of the garage door motor or gate motor exactly as the portable remote control. The car shall be within the range of the motor and the key shall be fitted into the ignition device.

Press the programmed button (**A** or **B** or **C**). During signal transmission the led **D** will stay on and the set system (garage door, gate, etc.) will obey.

If the HomeLink system set as described above does not work, this may be due to the fact the original portable remote control has an alternate code (see paragraph "Synchronising alternate codes").

It is however always possible to use the original portable remote control to operate the system (garage door, gate, etc.).

SYNCHRONISING ALTERNATE CODES

To ascertain whether your garage door motor or gate motor is provided with an alternate code, proceed as follows:

consult the owner handbook provided by the garage door motor's or gate motor's manufacturer;

the portable remote control seems to have programmed HomeLink; HomeLink however is not up to open or to close the garage door or the gate;

press and keep pressed the programmed button (**A** or **B** or **C**).

With an alternate code system, the led **D** blinks fast for short and then it stays on glowing steadily for two seconds. This sequence is repeated for 20 seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HomeLink can only work if the programmed alternate code is synchronised with the system of the device (garage door, gate, etc.).

IMPORTANT While synchronising the system, check for the absence of people, animals or objects within the manoeuvre space of main doors or gates to prevent the risk of injuries or damages.

IMPORTANT The car shall be within the range of the motor. Pull up the handbrake and fit the key into the ignition device. Do not start the engine.

Proceed as follows:

- ❒ find the set-up button on the upper side of the garage door/gate motor. Colour and position may vary according to the manufacturer (consult the motor handbook);
- ❒ press the motor set-up button (this action will usually turn up the "set-up" pilot light). After operation 2, start to perform operation 3 within 30 seconds;
- ❒ press the programmed button (**A** or **B** or **C**) and release it. Press again the programmed button and then release it to end the operation. Certain motors could require to repeat once again the operation for concluding the setting.

Now the motor should be up to recognise the signal transmitted by HomeLink and therefore to open/close the garage door or the gate.

RE-PROGRAMMING ONE SINGLE BUTTON

It is possible to programme another original portable remote control on one HomeLink button already programmed. Previous programming will be cancelled.

IMPORTANT While programming the system, check for the absence of people, animals or objects within the manoeuvre space of main doors or gates to prevent the risk of injuries or damages.

IMPORTANT Pull up the handbrake and fit the key into the ignition device. Do not start the engine.

Proceed as follows:

1) press and keep pressed the required HomeLink button **A** or **B** or **C**. Do not release the button until completing operation **3**;

2) when the HomeLink led **D** starts flashing slowly (about 20 seconds after) bring the portable remote control (keeping the button to program pressed) as close as possible to the HomeLink.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The distance required between the portable remote control and the HomeLink depends on the system to be programmed (type of frequency of main door, gate or other system).

If **D** does not start to flash quickly try again changing the distance between HomeLink and portable remote control (move them away slightly). If 20 seconds later the led is still flashing slowing, repeat the operation changing again the distance between Homelink and remote control.

3) the HomeLink led **D** will start blinking, first slowly and then quickly. When it starts flashing quickly, release both buttons (HomeLink and portable remote control).

In this way the system previously programmed on HomeLink is cleared and the new system is ready for use. This operation has no effect on the other two HomeLink buttons.

CLEARING THE PROGRAMMED BUTTONS

You are recommended to clear the HomeLink programming before selling the car.

Programming is cleared on all the three buttons at the same time.

Proceed as follows:

- ❒ press and keep pressed the outer buttons (**A** and **C**): 20 seconds after led **D** will start flashing.
- ❒ Release both buttons.

TECHNICAL DATA FOR THE ASSISTANCE SERVICE

If after following the previous instructions you are still unable to set the HomeLink system, contact the Assistance Service (HomeLink toll free number 00800046635465) and communicate the following data:

- ❒ make and model of your car, including the date of manufacture and the country where you bought it;
- ❒ make, model, date of manufacture and operating frequency of the original portable remote control (if known).

IMPORTANT Certain phone carriers do not permit the use of the toll-free number. It is therefore required to dial the alternative pay-number, +49 6838 907-277 (dialling this number will start an international call).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SUNROOF

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The sunroof consists of a moving pane sliding horizontally and retractable.

When closed it enables sunlight to get into the passenger compartment, whereas when open it enables wide opening of the whole glass sunroof surface.

The sunroof is provided with manually-operated sun curtain with handle and air vents.

Sunroof can only be operated when the key is fitted into the ignition device.

Do not open the sunroof if there is snow or ice on it: it could be damaged.

WARNING

When leaving the car, the ignition key should be removed to prevent the sunroof from being operated inadvertently and harming anyone remaining in the car. Improper use of the sunroof can be dangerous. Before and during its operation ensure that any passengers are not at risk from the moving roof either by personal objects getting caught in the mechanism or by being injured by it directly.

SUNROOF OPENING

Opening from inside the car

Turn selector **A-fig. 87**, as shown by the arrow. The sunroof will stop in position as soon as the selector is released.

The movement of the roof may be interrupted and restarted by means of slight pressure on selector **A**.

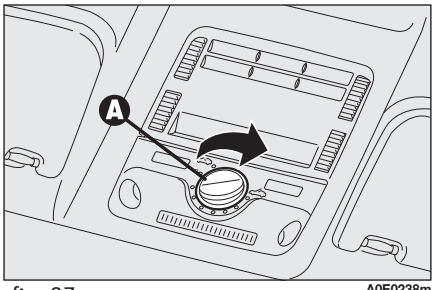


fig. 87 A0E0238m

IMPORTANT Top comfort position with sunroof open is obtained by turning selector **A-fig. 87** to position.

Operating the selector it is possible to open/close the sunroof in one of the following cases:

- ❒ fitting the electronic key into the ignition device;
- ❒ in the first 2 minutes after removing the key from the ignition device or up to door opening.

Opening from outside the car

Press the electronic key button 🔒 for over 2 seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SUNROOF CLOSING

Turn selector **A-fig. 87** counter-clockwise.

The movement of the roof may be interrupted and restarted by means of slight pressure on selector **A**.

Though the selector **A** (by pressing it) it is possible to use the "Inhibit" position that will exclude the anti-crushing safety system.

If when removing the key from the ignition device, you activate sunroof sliding by pressing the electronic key button 🔓 while sunroof sliding by manual control (by pressing the selector) is being performed, this last control will prevail. To make the sunroof sliding automatically you have to press again button 🔓.

Sunroof sliding by pressing the electronic key button 🔓 can be stopped by operating selector **A-fig. 87** (by changing its position or pressing it).

Changing selector position, will make the sunroof slide to the new position ignoring button 🔓.

WARNING

Open and close the roof only when the vehicle is stationary.

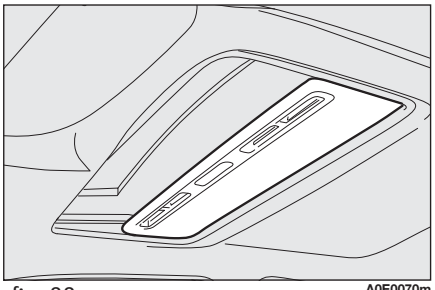


fig. 88

SUN CURTAIN fig. 88

The sun curtain shall be used to adjust brightness inside the passenger compartment. Sun curtain is fitted with handle and air vents.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ANTI-CRUSHING SAFETY SYSTEM

The anti-crushing safety system fitted on the front curtain outline is active during horizontal closing (front edge) and vertical closing of the panel (rear edge) and it will cut in when it finds an obstacle (e.g.: finger, hand, etc . . .), thus guaranteeing sunroof reversal for a short section.

When an obstacle is found, sunroof stroke is stopped immediately and its stroke is reversed to the preset position:

❒ during horizontal closing it is active along the whole stroke of the sunroof and when it finds an obstacle on the front side of the pane it guarantees a 10 cm stroke reversal;

❒ during vertical closing it is active along the whole stroke of the sunroof and when it finds an obstacle on the rear side of the pane it guarantees stroke reversal.

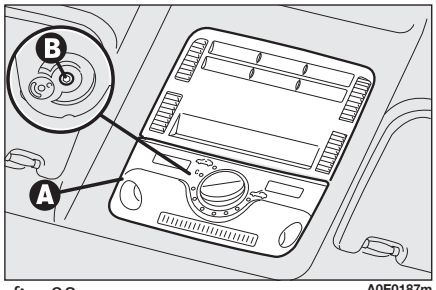


fig. 89

EMERGENCY OPERATION

In a emergency or during servicing (without power supply), the sunroof can be operated manually; proceed as follows:

❒ press the light notches to release the clips and remove the front ceiling light **A-fig. 89**.

❒ fit the setscrew wrench into the proper slot **B**;

❒ turn the key to open or to close (according to rotation direction) the sunroof.

SUNROOF INITIALISATION PROCEDURE

After disconnecting the battery or failing the protection fuse, the sunroof shall be "initialised" again, proceed as follows:

❒ turn selector fully leftwards (counterclokwise);

❒ press and keep pressed selector until sunroof locking;

❒ release selector;

❒ press selector again within 3 seconds, and keep it pressed;

❒ a few seconds after the sunroof will move automatically (during this stage keep on pressing the knob);

❒ initialisation will end when the sunroof stops. Release selector.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DOORS

CENTRAL DOOR LOCKING/ UNLOCKING SYSTEM

Door locking from the outside

With the doors closed, press the electronic key button 🔒 or fit and turn the metal insert (inside the key) into the lock of the driver's door. Central door locking can only be activated if all the doors are closed. If one or more doors are open after pressing the electronic key button 🔒 the direction indicators and the driver's door led will flash fast for about 3 seconds.

If one or more doors are open by turning the metal insert of the electronic key, only the driver's door led will flash fast for about 3 seconds. If the doors are closed but the tailgate is open, central locking is actuated: the direction indicators (only for locking performed by pressing button 🔒) and the driver's door led will flash fast for about 3 seconds.

Through the "Setup menu" (or the Radionavigation system for certain versions) it is possible to activate the function that enables to unlock only the driver's door lock by pressing the electronic key button 🔓 (see paragraph "Reconfigurable multifunction display" in this section).

With this function on (**ON**) it is however possible to unlock the other doors by pressing button 🚪 (**fig. 90**) set on the central console.

Door unlocking from the outside

Press the electronic key button 🔓 or, fit and turn the metal insert (inside the key) into the lock of the driver's door.

Door locking/unlocking from the inside

Press button 🚪 (**fig. 90**) to lock/unlock all the doors.

The button is provided with a circular led indicating the car condition (doors locked or unlocked). When doors are locked the led is on: in this case pressing the button again will unlock all the doors and will turn the led off.

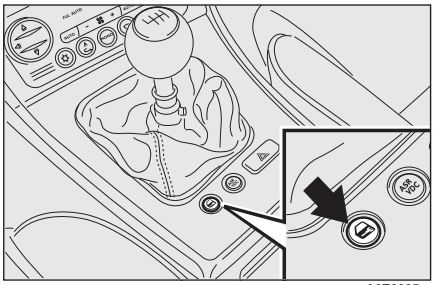


fig. 90

With key removed the led will turn off after about 2 minutes.

When doors are unlocked the led is off; pressing the button will lock all the doors. Central door locking will only take place if all doors are perfectly closed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Button is disabled after door locking carried out by operating the remote control, the driver's door revolving plug, or by automatic door locking after about 2.5 minutes and it will be enabled again after door unlocking carried out by pressing the key button , by turning the metal insert of the key into the driver's door lock or by fitting the key into the ignition device.

IMPORTANT With central locking system on, pulling the internal door handle will unlock all the doors. Lacking power (blown fuse, battery disconnected, etc.) it is however possible to lock the doors manually.

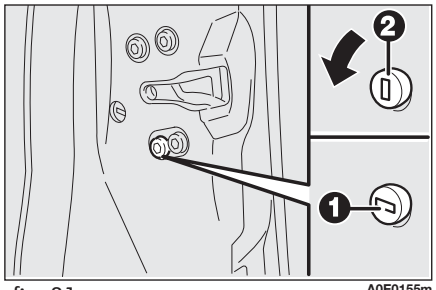


fig. 91

CHILD LOCK

Rear doors are fitted with a locking device **fig. 91** that inhibits door opening from the inside.

This device can be engaged/disengaged (by the metal insert of the key) only with doors open:

❒ **position 1**: engaged (door locked);

❒ **position 2**: disengaged (door can be opened from the inside).

IMPORTANT Each device acts only on the relevant door.

IMPORTANT Always use this device when transporting children.

IMPORTANT After engaging the child lock on both rear doors, check for proper engagement by trying to open a rear door with the internal handle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DOOR LOCKING WITH RUN DOWN BATTERY

If the car battery is run down, to lock the doors proceed as described in the following points.

Right front door

Proceed as follows:

❒ remove the protection plug on the door;

❒ fit the electronic key metal insert into **A-fig. 92**;

❒ turn the key clockwise (counter-clockwise for right-hand drive versions);

❒ remove the key from **A-fig. 92** and then efit the plug on the door.

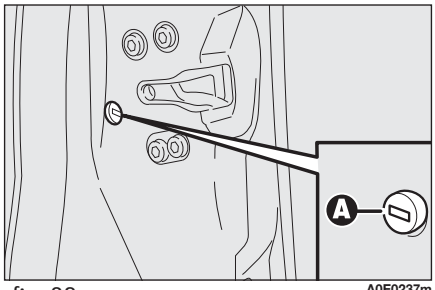


fig. 92

Doorknobs can be realigned (only after recharging the battery) as follows:

❒ pressing the electronic key button 🔓;

❒ pressing door locking/unlocking button 🚗;

❒ opening with the key in front door revolving plug;

❒ pulling internal door handle.

IMPORTANT As concerns rear doors, with child lock device on and the previously described locking active, operating the internal door handle will not open the door but will only realign doorknobs; to open the door pull the external door handle. Emergency locking will not disable central door locking/unlocking button 🚗.

IMPORTANT After disconnecting the battery or failing the protection fuse, the door locking/unlocking mechanism shall be "initialised" again, proceed as follows:

❒ lock the doors;

❒ press the remote control button 🔒 or the button 🚗 on the central console;

❒ press the remote control button 🔓 or the button 🚗 on the central console.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

POWER WINDOWS

Versions with 2 front power windows are fitted with automatic window opening/closing only on the driver's side.

Versions with 4 power windows are fitted with automatic window opening/closing on all doors. For versions/markets where applicable the passenger side electrical window and the rear electrical windows are provided with a safety system with anti-crushing seal able to recognize the eventual presence of an obstacle during the closing movement of the window; upon verification of this event the system interrupts and immediately inverts the run of the window.

This system is particularly useful when children operate the windows inadvertently and make it possible to close/open (where provided) the windows using the remote control when leaving the car.

IMPORTANT In the event the anti-crushing function is activated 5 times in only 1 minute or in the event of a failure, the system will automatically enter the "recovery" mode (self-protection). This condition is pointed out by the fact that, in the closing stroke, the windows goes up in jerks.

In this case it is necessary to carry out system restore procedure as follows:

❒ open the windows;

or

❒ remove and then refit the key into the ignition device.

If no malfunction is present, the window returns to its normal operation automatically. In the event of a failure see section "Warning lights and messages".

Windows and sunroof opening/closing by the electronic key (for versions/markets, where provided)

By the metal insert of the key

On all versions:

❒ turning clockwise the metal insert of the key into the driver's door revolving plug will open all the windows and the sunroof (for versions/markets, where provided) at the same time.

❒ turning counterclockwise the metal insert of the key into the driver's door revolving plug will close all the windows and the sunroof (for versions/ markets, where provided) at the same time.

By remote control

On all versions, keep button 🔓 pressed for over 2 seconds to open all the windows and the sunroof (where provided) at the same time.

The system complies with the forthcoming Standard 2000/4/ EC concerning the safety of passengers leaning out of the passenger compartment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

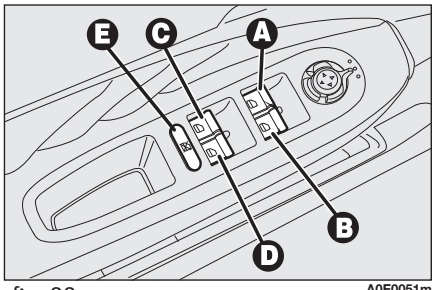


fig. 93

CONTROLS

Driver side

On the driver's door panel are set the buttons **fig. 93** for controlling, with electronic key fitted into the ignition device:

A – front left window opening/closing; window opening or closing in "automatic continuous" mode;

B – front right window opening/closing; window opening or closing in "automatic continuous" mode (only versions with 4 power windows);

C (for versions/markets, where provided) – rear left window opening/closing; "automatic continuous" mode operation during window opening/closing;

D (for versions/markets, where provided) – rear right window opening/closing; "automatic continuous" mode operation just during window opening;

E (for versions/markets, where provided) – rear power window enabling/disabling controls (when rear power window controls are disabled, the led on button **E** will turn on and disabled controls will turn off).

Press buttons **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** to open/close the required window.

Pressing briefly one of the buttons the window "jerks" whereas a prolonged pressing makes the window opening or closing in "automatic continuous" mode.

Pressing button **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** again will stop the window in the required position.

Improper use of the power windows can be dangerous. Before and during its operation ensure that any passengers are not at risk from the moving glass either by personal objects getting caught in the mechanism or by being injured by it directly. Always remove the ignition key when getting out of the car to prevent the power windows being operated accidentally and constituting a danger to the passengers in the car.

Front passenger door/ rear doors

Front passenger door and, on certain versions, rear doors are fitted with button panels controlling opening/closing of the corresponding window.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BOOT

The boot lock is electric and it is disabled when the car is running.

Through the "Setup menu" (or the Radionavigation system for certain versions) boot opening can be set by selecting the option "Indep. boot" (see paragraph "Reconfigurable multifunction display" in this section): when this function is on, the boot can only be opened by pressing the electronic key button .

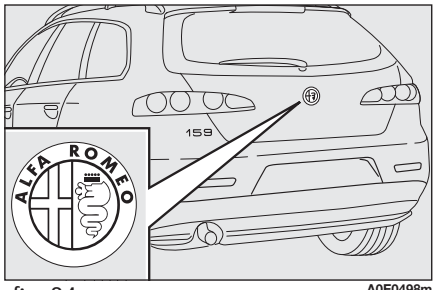


fig. 94

On certain versions, improper boot closing is indicated by the instrument panel warning light , whereas on other versions the symbol and a message are displayed (see section "Warning lights and messages").

When unlocked, the boot can be opened from outside the vehicle pressing the electric logo (**fig. 94**) until it snaps unlocked.

Tailgate opening is facilitated by the side gas shock springs.

Opening the boot its internal light will turn on and it will turn off automatically when re-closing the tailgate. Leaving the tailgate inadvertently open, the light will turn off automatically after a few minutes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

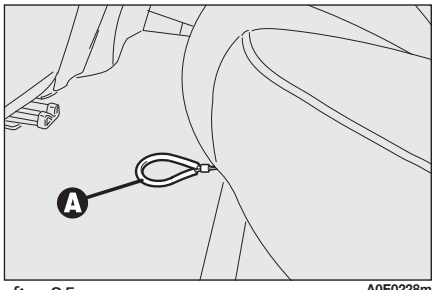


fig. 95

EMERGENCY OPENING OF THE BOOT FROM THE PASSENGER COMPARTMENT (foreseen only on the 3-volume saloon version)

If the battery is disconnected, the boot can be opened by pulling the lever **A-fig. 95** set under the rear left seat.

Refit the handle under the cushion after using it.

IMPORTANT After disconnecting the battery or failing the protection fuse, the tailgate locking/unlocking mechanism shall be "initialised" again, proceed as follows:

- ❒ lock the doors and the tailgate;
- ❒ press the remote control button 🔒 or the button 🚗 on the central console;
- ❒ press the remote control button 🔓 or the button 🚗 on the central console.

OPENING BY REMOTE CONTROL

Press the electronic key button 🚗. Opening is indicated by double flashing of direction indicators.

Opening the boot with alarm (for versions/markets, where provided) on will cause the following:

- ❒ volumetric protection deactivation;
- ❒ anti-raising protection deactivation;
- ❒ tailgate monitoring sensor.

Re-closing the tailgate will restore all the above functions and direction indicators will turn on for about 1 second.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TAILGATE CLOSING

Lower the tailgate pressing the lock until hearing the locking click.

IMPORTANT If the option for "Indep. boot" is on, before closing the boot, check whether you have with you the ignition key since the boot will be locked automatically.

The addition of objects (speakers, spoilers, etc.) on the rear shelf or boot lid, except those envisaged by the manufacturer, may prevent the gas filled struts at the sides of the boot from working properly.

WARNING

Never travel with objects on the rear shelf to prevent them being thrown forwards and injuring passengers in case of accident or sharp braking.

WARNING

When using the boot, make sure the loads do not exceed the permitted weight (see "Technical specifications" chapter). Also make sure the items in the boot are arranged properly to prevent them being thrown forwards and injuring passengers should you brake sharply.

EXTENDING THE BOOT

(for versions/markets, where provided)

To extend the boot proceed as follows:

❒ remove rear head restraints;

❒ move aside the seat belt, check that it is not twisted;

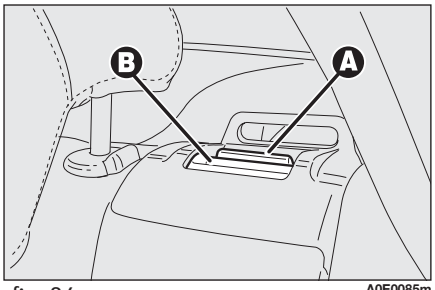


fig. 96

❒ lift seat back lever **A-fig. 96** and tilt the seat back forward. Lever raising is indicated by a "red band" **B**.

IMPORTANT Before folding the backrest over onto the cushion, in order to avoid interference, make sure that the seat belt branches are in their housings on the cushion.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TO RETURN THE REAR SEAT BACK TO ITS ORIGINAL POSITION

Move aside the seat belts, check that they are not twisted.

Raise the seat backrests and push them back until hearing the locking click of both retainers; the "red band" **B** aside the levers **A** shall no longer be visible. The "red band" **B** actually indicates that the backrest is not properly secured.

IMPORTANT Make sure the head restraints are properly positioned.

WARNING

Make sure the backrest is properly secured at both sides ("red bands" B-fig. 96 not visible) to prevent it moves forward in the event of sharp braking causing injuries to passengers.

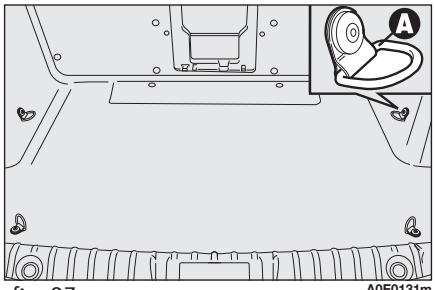


fig. 97

ANCHORING THE LOAD

The boot houses 4 hooks **A-fig. 97** for anchoring ropes in order to guarantee perfect load anchoring.

WARNING

A heavy load that has not been secured may cause serious harm.

WARNING

If you want to carry reserve fuel in a can, follow law regulations, only using a certified can, suitably fastened to the load securing eyelets. Even in this way the risk of fire is increased in the case of an accident.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BONNET

TO OPEN THE BONNET

Proceed as follows:

❒ pull lever **A-fig. 98** until hearing the releasing click;

❒ press the safety lever **B-fig. 99** upwards and raise the bonnet.

IMPORTANT Bonnet raising is aided by two gas springs. Do not tamper with these springs and guide the bonnet while raising it.

IMPORTANT Before opening the bonnet, check that windscreen wiper arms are not lifted from the windscreen.

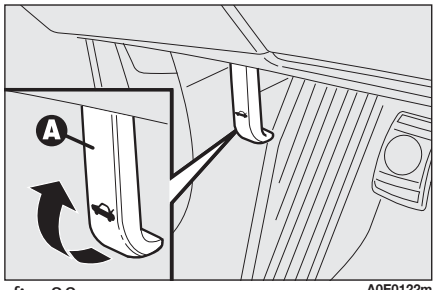


fig. 98 A0E0122m

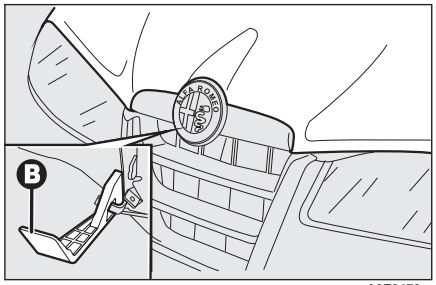


fig. 99 A0E0470m

TO CLOSE THE BONNET

Lower the bonnet at approx. 20 centimetres from the engine compartment and then let it drop, ensuring that it is fully closed and not just held in position by the safety catch. If the bonnet does not close properly, do not push it down but open it again and repeat the above procedure.

Improper bonnet closing is indicated (on certain versions) by the instrument panel warning light (where provided), or by symbol and a message on the display (see section "Warning lights and messages").

IMPORTANT Always check that the bonnet is closed properly to avoid its opening while the car is travelling.

WARNING

Carry out operations only when the car is stationary.

WARNING

For safety reasons the bonnet must be closed properly to avoid its opening while the car is travelling. Therefore, always check it is properly closed and the catch engaged. Should you notice that the catch is not perfectly engaged when travelling, stop the car immediately and close the bonnet.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ROOF RACK/ SKI RACK

The car is preset for mounting roof racks/ski racks.

Front hooks are in points **A-fig. 100**.

Rear hooks are in points **B**.

Distribute the load evenly and when driving, bear in mind the increased sensitivity to side wind.

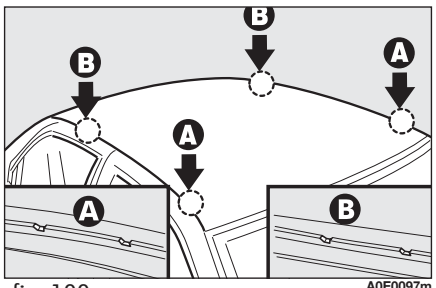


fig. 100

IMPORTANT After few kilometers, check that fastening screws are firmly tightened.

IMPORTANT Never exceed the max. permissible loads (see section ""Technical specifications").

HEADLIGHTS

ADJUSTING THE HEADLIGHT BEAM

Proper adjustment of the headlight beams is of vital importance for your safety and comfort and also for the other road users. To ensure you and other drivers have the best visibility conditions when travelling with the headlights on, the headlights must be set properly. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the headlights properly adjusted.

HEADLIGHT AIMING DEVICE

It works with the key fitted into the ignition device and dipped beams on.

When the car is loaded, it slopes backwards. This means that the headlight beam rises. In this case, it is necessary to return it to the correct position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

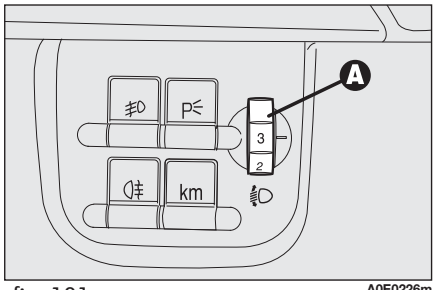


fig. 101 A0E0226m

In this event, to adjust the headlight slant use control **A-fig. 101** set on the button control panel near the steering wheel.

If the car is fitted with bixenon headlights, headlight aiming is electronic and therefore control **A** is not present.

Control has four positions corresponding to the loads given below:

- ❒ position **0**: one or two passenger on front seats and kerb weight (including full fuel tank, tools and accessories);
- ❒ position **1**: five passengers;
- ❒ position **2**: five passengers and boot fully loaded (about 50 kg);
- ❒ position **3**: driver plus 300 kg load completely stored into the boot.

IMPORTANT Check headlight slant each time the transported load changes.

FRONT FOG LIGHT ADJUSTMENT

Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the headlights correctly adjusted.

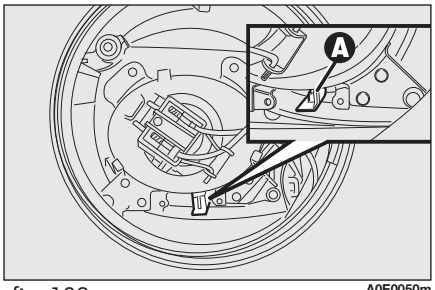


fig. 102 A0E0050m

HEADLIGHT ADJUSTMENT ABROAD

The dipped beam headlights are adjusted for circulation in the country in which the car is marketed. In countries with opposite circulation, to avoid glaring oncoming vehicles, proceed as follows:

- ❒ remove headlight cover (see paragraph "Dipped beam headlights" in section "In an emergency");
- ❒ move lever **A-fig. 102** aside;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ABS SYSTEM

The car is fitted with ABS braking system, which prevents the wheels from locking when braking, makes the most of road grip and gives the best control when emergency braking under difficult road conditions.

System is completed by EBD (Electronic Braking Force Distribution), which distributes the braking action between front and rear wheels.

IMPORTANT To have the maximum efficiency of the braking system, it is necessary a setting period of about 500 km: during this period it is better to avoid sharp, repeated and prolonged brakes.

ABS SYSTEM INTERVENTION

The driver can tell the ABS system has come into action because the brake pedal pulsates slightly and the system gets noisier: it means that the car speed should be altered to fit the type of road surface.

WARNING

If the ABS system cuts in, it is a sign that the grip between tyre and the road surface has reached the limit: you must slow down to match the speed to the road grip available.

WARNING

The ABS exploits the tyre-road grip at the best, but it cannot improve it; you should therefore take every care when driving on slippery surfaces without taking unnecessary risks.

WARNING

When the ABS cuts in, and you feel the brake pedal pulsating, do not remove your foot, but keep it pressed; in doing so you will stop in the shortest amount of space possible under the current road conditions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FAILURE WARNING LIGHTS

ABS failure

ABS failure is indicated by the turning on of warning light (ABS) on the instrument panel (on certain versions together with the dedicated message on the display) (see section "Warning lights and messages"). In this case the braking system is still efficient, though without the aid of the ABS system.

Drive carefully to the closest Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the system checked.

EBD failure

EBD failure is indicated by the turning on of warning lights (ABS) + (!) on the instrument panel (on certain versions together with the dedicated message on the display) (see section "Warning lights and messages").

In this case with sharp braking the rear wheels might lock too early, with the possibility of skidding. Drive extremely carefully to the closest Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the system checked.

BRAKE ASSIST (emergency braking assistance)

The system, which cannot be cut out, recognizes emergency braking (on the ground of the brake pedal operation speed) and considerably increases the pressure in the brake circuit.

Brake Assist is deactivated on the versions equipped with VDC system in the event of VDC system failure, indicated by the turning on of warning light (A) on the instrument panel (on certain versions together with a message on the display).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VDC SYSTEM (Vehicle Dynamics Control)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The VDC system is an electronic system controlling the car stability in the event of tyre grip loss.

The VDC system is therefore particularly useful when grip conditions of the road surfaces changes.

VDC SYSTEM INTERVENTION

It is signalled by the blinking of the warning light on the instrument panel, to inform the driver that the car is in critical stability and grip conditions.

TURNING THE VDC SYSTEM ON/OFF

The VDC system is automatically activated when the engine is started. When travelling, to turn the VDC off press the ASR/ VDC button on the central console **fig. 103** for 2 seconds. Turning off the VDC will also turn off the ASR. Both functions can be reactivated by pressing the ASR/VDC button.

VDC system deactivation is indicated by the instrument panel warning light (on certain versions a symbol is displayed) and by the circular led around the ASR/VDC button.

If the VDC has been turned off when travelling, at next engine start-up it will turn on again automatically.

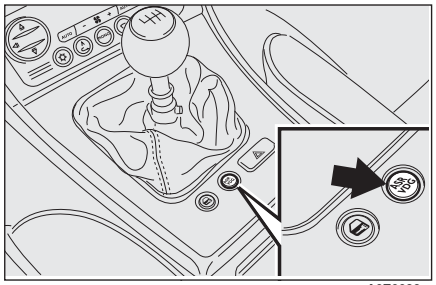


fig. 103

FAILURE WARNING LIGHTS

In the event of failure, the VDC system is automatically disconnected and the warning light comes on with fixed light on the instrument panel (on certain versions together with a message on the display) (see section "Warning lights and messages"). In this case contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Performance of the VDC system, in terms of active safety should not induce the driver to take pointless and unnecessary risks. The style of driving must in any case always be adapted to the conditions of the road surface, visibility an traffic. Road safety is always the driver's responsibility.

WARNING

During the use of the space-saver spare wheel for versions/markets, (where provided), the VDC system carries on working. However, you must remind that the space-saver spare wheel has dimensions smaller than the standard tyre and therefore its grip is reduced as to the other car tyres.

WARNING

For correct operation of the VDC system, the tyres must absolutely be of the same brand and type on all wheels, in perfect conditions and, above all, of type, brand and size specified.

HILL HOLDER SYSTEM

(for versions/markets, where provided)

This system is an integral part of the VDC system and it is provided to facilitate starting on slopes:

- ❒ uphill: car at a standstill on a road with a gradient higher than 6%, engine running, clutch and brake pedal depressed, gearbox to neutral or engaged gear other than reverse;
- ❒ downhill: car at a standstill on a road with a gradient higher than 6%, engine running, clutch and brake pedal depressed and reverse gear engaged.

At pickup the VDC system control unit will keep brake force on wheels until reaching the torque suitable for starting, or in any case for about 1 second in order to pass easily from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This time elapsing without starting, the system will deactivate automatically by releasing gradually the brake force.

At releasing, the typical brake disengagement noise indicating that the car is going to move will be heard.

Failure warnings

System failure is indicated by the turning on of warning light (where provided) on the instrument panel (on certain versions together with the dedicated message on the display) (see section "Warning lights and messages").

IMPORTANT The Hill Holder system is not a parking brake. Never get out of the car without engaging the handbrake, switching the engine off and engaging the first gear.

ASR SYSTEM (AntiSlip Regulation)

This system is an integral part of the VDC system, it controls car drive and cuts in automatically every time one or both driving wheels slip.

According to slipping conditions, two different control systems are activated:

- ❒ if slipping involves both driving wheels, the ASR function intervenes reducing the power transmitted by the engine;
- ❒ if slipping involves only one driving wheel, the ASR system cuts in automatically braking the wheel that is slipping.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The action of the ASR is particularly helpful in the following circumstances:

- ❒ slipping of the inner wheel due to the effect of dynamic load changes or excessive acceleration;
- ❒ too much power transmitted to the wheels also in relation to the conditions of the road surface;
- ❒ acceleration on slippery, snowy or frozen surfaces;
- ❒ in the case of loss of grip on a wet surface (aquaplaning).

WARNING

The performance of the system, in terms of active safety should not induce the driver to take pointless and unnecessary risks. The style of driving must in any case always be adapted to the conditions of the road surface, visibility an traffic. Road safety is always the driver's responsibility.

Switching the ASR system on/off

ASR turns on automatically when turning the instrument panel on.

When travelling the ASR can be switched off by pressing briefly the ASR/VDC button on the central console.

When the ASR is switched off this is shown by the lighting up of the ASR/VDC button led (on versions fitted with "Reconfigurable multifunction display" symbol will also be displayed).

If the ASR is switched off when travelling, it will turn on again automatically the next time the engine is started.

When travelling on snowy roads with snow chains, it may be helpful to turn the ASR off: in fact, in these conditions, slipping of the driving wheels when moving off makes it possible to obtain better drive.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Failure warnings

In the event of malfunctioning, the ASR system is automatically disconnected and on versions fitted with "Reconfigurable multifunction display" symbol is displayed. In this case contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

WARNING

For correct operation of the ASR system, the tyres must absolutely be of the same brand and type on all wheels, in normal conditions of use, at the proper inflation pressure values and, above all, of type, brand and size specified (see paragraph "Wheels" in section "Technical Specifications").

MSR system (engine braking torque control)

It is an integral part of the ASR system that in case of sudden gear shifting, cuts in providing torque to the engine thus preventing excessive driving wheel drive that, specially in poor grip conditions, can lead to loss of stability.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EOBD SYSTEM

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The EOBD system (European On Board Diagnosis) allows continuous diagnosis of the components of the car correlated with emissions.

It also alerts the driver, by turning on the warning light on the instrument panel (on certain versions together with the message on the display) (see section "Warning lights and messages"), when these conditions are no longer in peak conditions.

The objective is:

- ❒ to keep system efficiency under control;
- ❒ to warn when a fault causes emission levels to increase;
- ❒ to warn of the need to replace deteriorated components.

The system also has a diagnostic connector that can be interfaced with appropriate tools, which makes it possible to read the error codes stored in the control unit, together with a series of specific parameters for engine operation and diagnosis. This check can also be carried out by the traffic police.

IMPORTANT After eliminating the inconvenience, to check the system completely, Alfa Romeo Authorized Services are obliged to run a bench test and, if necessary, road tests which may also call for a long journey.

If when fitting the key into the ignition device, the warning light does not turn on or if, while travelling it turns on glowing steadily or flashing, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible. Warning light operation can be checked by means of special equipment by traffic agents. Always comply with the traffic regulations in force in the country where you are travelling.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SOUND SYSTEM PRESETTING

(for versions/markets, where provided)

When the sound system has not been requested the car is provided with two oddment compartments on the instrument panel.

Sound system presetting includes:

❒ sound system power cables;

❒ front and rear speakers cables;

❒ aerial power cable;

❒ sound system compartment;

❒ aerial on car roof.

The sound system shall be installed in the proper space occupied by the oddment compartment that shall be removed by pressing the two retaining tabs set in the oddment compartment: here you will find the power cables.

If you decide to install the sound system after buying the car, contact first Alfa Romeo Authorized Services that will give you useful advice about installation and how to safeguard the battery. Excessive loadless absorption damages the battery and the battery warranty can be invalidated.

ACCESSORIES PURCHASED BY THE OWNER

If after buying the car, you decide to install electrical accessories that require a permanent electric supply (alarm, satellite antitheft system, etc.) or accessories that in any case burden the electric supply, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services, whose qualified personnel, besides suggesting the most suitable devices belonging to Lineaccessori Alfa Romeo, will also evaluate the overall electric absorption, checking whether the car's electric system is able to withstand the load required, or whether it needs to be integrated with a more powerful battery.

WARNING

Take care when fitting additional spoilers, alloy rims and non-standard wheel caps: they might reduce ventilation of the brakes, thus their efficiency, during abrupt and repeated braking, or long downhill slopes. Make sure that nothing (mats, etc.) gets in the way of the pedals when they are pushed down.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INSTALLATION OF ELECTRIC/ELECTRONIC DEVICES

Electric/electronic devices installed after buying the car or in aftermarket shall bear the and marking:

Fiat Auto S.p.A. authorizes the installation of transceivers provided that installation is carried out at a specialized shop, workmanlike performed and in compliance with manufacturer's specifications.

IMPORTANT Installation of devices resulting in modifications of car characteristics may cause driving license seizing by traffic agents and also the lapse of the warranty as concerns defects due to the abovementioned modification or traceable back to it directly or indirectly.

Fiat Auto S.p.A. declines all responsibility for damages caused by the installation of non-genuine accessories or not recommended by Fiat Auto S.p.A. and installed not in compliance with the specified requirements.

RADIO TRANSMITTERS AND CELLULAR TELEPHONES

Radio transceiver equipment (vehicle mobile phones, CB radios, amateur radio and similar equipment) shall not be used inside the car unless a separate aerial is mounted on the roof.

IMPORTANT The use of mobile phones, HAM radio systems or other similar devices inside the passenger compartment (without separate aerial) may cause electronic systems equipping the car to malfunction. This could compromise safety in addition to constituting a potential hazard for the passengers.

In addition, transmission and reception of these devices may be affected by the shielding effect of the car body.

As concerns the use of mobile phones (GSM, GPRS, UMTS) with homologation CE, keep strictly to the mobile phone manufacturer's specifications.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PARKING SENSORS (where provided)

Parking sensors inform the driver about the presence of obstacles behind the car (versions fitted with 4 rear sensors) or behind and in front of the car (versions fitted with 4 rear sensors and 4 front sensors).

This system is therefore an aid for the driver when parking the car since it detects obstacles out of the driver's sight range.

The presence and the distance from the car of an obstacle is indicated by a warning buzzer - as the distance from the obstacle decreases, the acoustic alarm becomes more frequent - and, only on certain versions, by an image on the display (see paragraph "Indications on the display).

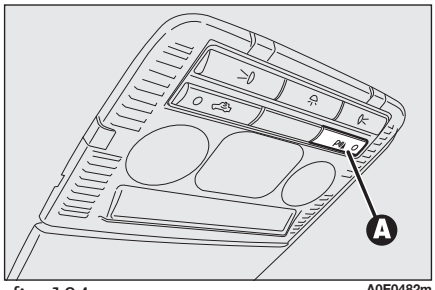


fig. 104

ACTIVATION

Versions with 4 sensors

Front sensors are automatically activated with electronic key fitted into the ignition device when reverse gear is engaged or when pressing the front ceiling light button **A-fig. 104** with speed below 15 km/h.

Sensors are deactivated when exceeding 18 km/h or, on certain versions by pressing again the button if the speed is lower than 15 km/h **A-fig. 104**. If the system is off on versions with deactivation button, the button led is off.

Versions with 8 sensors

Front and rear sensors are automatically activated with electronic key fitted into the ignition device when reverse gear is engaged or when pressing the front ceiling light button **A-fig. 104** with speed below 15 km/h.

Sensors are deactivated by pressing again button **A-fig. 104** if the speed is lower than 15 km/h or when exceeding 18 km/h. If the system is off, the button led is off.

When sensors are on, front and rear indicators will sound warning signals as soon as an obstacle is detected: as the distance from the obstacle decreases, the acoustic alarm becomes more frequent.

When the distance between the car and the obstacle is less than 30 cm, the acoustic alarm becomes continuous. According to obstacle position (in front or behind the car), the acoustic alarm will be emitted by front or rear indicators.

In any case the system will indicate the obstacle closest to the car.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The acoustic alarm will stop immediately as distance raises. The acoustic alarm is constant if the distance measured by central sensors is unvaried, whereas if this situation takes place for side sensors the acoustic alarm is muted after about 3 seconds to prevent sound indications when performing manoeuvres near walls.

WARNING

Parking manoeuvres however are always under the driver's responsibility that shall always check the absence of people (specially children) or animals in the manoeuvre space. This system is just a help for the driver but she/he shall never reduce attention during dangerous manoeuvres even if performed at low speed.

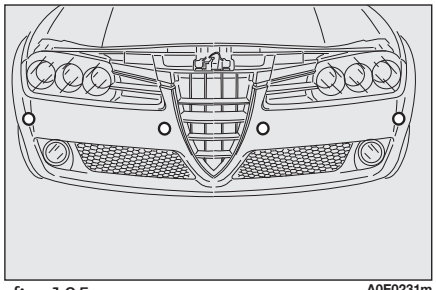


fig. 105

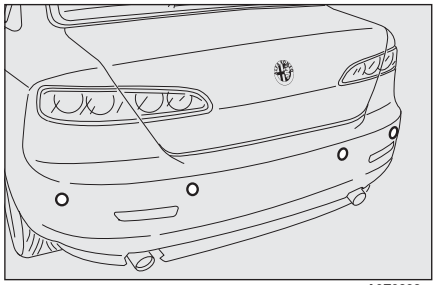


fig. 106

SENSORS

Obstacles are detected by 4 sensors located in the front bumper (where provided) **fig. 105** and 4 sensors located in the rear bumper **fig. 106**.

BUZZER

The presence of any obstacle and its distance from the car is indicated by the buzzers installed inside the passenger compartment:

- ❒ on versions with 4 rear sensors, the rear buzzer will indicate the presence of rear obstacles;
- ❒ on versions with 8 sensors (4 front sensors and 4 rear sensors) obstacles are indicated by rear and front buzzers. This feature gives the driver the direction (front/rear) of the obstacle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

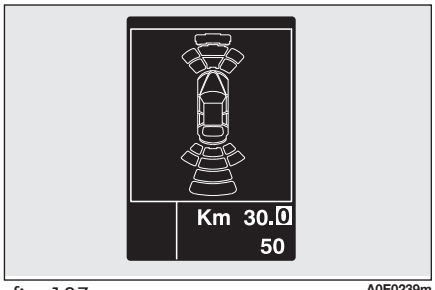


fig. 107

INDICATIONS ON THE DISPLAY (for versions/markets, where provided)

On versions with 8 sensors, sensor activation is indicated on the "Reconfigurable multifunction display" (where provided) by screen **fig.107**; therefore obstacle presence and distance is indicated (in addition to buzzer) also on the instrument panel display.

In the event of several obstacles, the obstacle closest to the car will be indicated.

For proper operation, the parking sensors shall always be clean from mud, dirt, snow or ice. When cleaning the sensors, take the utmost care to prevent their damaging; do not use therefore dry or rough clothes. Sensors shall be washed with clean water and car detergent, if required. In washing stations, clean sensors quickly keeping the vapour jet/high pressure washing nozzles at 10 cm at least from the sensors.

Repainting the bumpers or touch-up in the sensor area, if required, shall be carried out at Alfa Romeo Authorized Services only. Incorrect repainting may impair regular operation of the parking sensors.

SENSOR DETECTION RANGE

Sensors enable the system to monitor the front part (versions with 8 sensors) and the rear part of the car.

Actually their position covers the central and side areas of the front and rear part of the car.

An obstacle positioned at central area is detected at a distance less than 0.9 m (front) and 1.40 m (rear).

An obstacle positioned at side area is detected at a distance less than 0.6 m.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TOWING TRAILERS

Rear sensors are reactivated automatically when removing the trailer cable plug.

Rear sensors operation is deactivated automatically when the trailer electric cable plug is fitted into the car tow hook socket.

FAILURE INDICATIONS

The system control unit checks every system component each time the key is fitted into the ignition device. Sensors and relevant electrical connections are then constantly monitored during system operation.

Sensor failure is indicated by turning on of warning light P (where provided) on the instrument panel (on certain versions together with the message on the display) (see section "Warning lights and messages").

If a failure is indicated, stop the car, turn the engine off and then clean the sensors. Make sure to be far from possible ultrasound sources (e.g.: truck pneumatic brakes or pneumatic hammers). If failure cause has been eliminated the system will resume regular operation and warning P and the corresponding warning message will turn off.

If the warning light stays on, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the system inspected, although the system keeps on working. If the failure detected does not impair system operation, the system keeps on working and failure is stored in order to be then detected by Alfa Romeo Authorized Services at next inspection.

GENERAL WARNINGS

When parking, take the utmost care to obstacles that may be set above or under the sensors. Objects set close to the car front or rear part, under certain circumstances are not detected and could therefore cause damages to the car or be damaged.

Indications sent by the sensors can be altered by dirt, snow or ice deposited on the sensors or by ultrasound systems (e.g.: truck pneumatic brakes or pneumatic hammers) set nearby the car.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM - T.P.M.S. (for versions/markets, where provided)

The car may be equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System, which indicates to the driver the tyre pressure status by two different indications: "Check tyre pressures" and "Low tyre pressures". For a detailed description of the two indications, see the "Warning Lights and Messages" section. This system consists of a radio-frequency sensor, installed on each wheel (on the rim inside the tyre) that sends pressure information to the control unit.

WARNING

The T.P.M.S. does not exempt the driver from checking tyre pressure, including the space-saver spare wheel (for versions/markets, where provided) at regular intervals.

IMPORTANT NOTES

Failure indications will not be stored and therefore will not be displayed when turning the engine off and on again. If failure persists, the control unit will send warning indications to the instrument panel only after a few seconds when the car is moving.

Tyre pressure should be checked with tyres cold. Should it become necessary for whatever reason to check pressure with hot tyres, do not reduce pressure although it is higher than the prescribed value but repeat the check when tyres are cold (see section "Wheels" in section "Technical Specifications").

T.P.M.S. cannot indicate sudden tyre pressure drops (e.g.: tyre burst). In this event, brake the car cautiously and avoid sudden steering.

The T.P.M.S. system requires special equipment. Consult Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to know what type of accessories are compatible with the system (wheels, wheel caps, etc.). Using other accessories could cause system malfunctioning. Due to inflation valve special characteristics, use only tyre repair sealants approved by Alfa Romeo; other sealants could cause system malfunctioning.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the car is fitted with T.P.M.S. system, when changing a tyre, change also the rubber seal of the valve and the fastening ring of the sensor. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

Strong radio-frequency disturbances could inhibit proper TPMS system operation. This condition is indicated by a dedicated massage on the display. This indication will go off automatically as soon as the radio-frequency disturbance ceases.

If after repairing a punctured tyre with the Fix&Go automatic kit and restoring the initial conditions the flat tyre warning light continues to stay on, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

Tyre pressure could change according to outside temperature. For this reason the T.P.M.S. system could temporarily indicate low tyre pressure. In this event check pressure with cold tyres and restore proper inflation values if required.

If the car is fitted with T.P.M.S. system, tyre and/or rim removal and refitting operations involve special precautions; to prevent damages or wrong sensor refitting, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have tyre and/or rim changed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In order to use the system properly, refer to the following table when you have to change wheels/tyres:

Operation	Sensor presence	Failure Indication	Alfa Romeo Authorized Services operation
–	–	YES	Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services
Wheel change with space-saver spare wheel	NO	YES	Repair damaged wheel
Wheel change with snow tyres	NO	YES	Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services
Wheel change with snow tyres	YES	NO	–
Wheel change with others of different size (*)	YES	NO	–
Wheel cross switching (front/rear) (**)	YES	NO	–

(*) Given as an alternative on the owner's manual and to be found in Lineaccessori Alfa Romeo.

(**) Not crossed (tyres shall remain on the same side).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AT THE FILLING STATION

IMPORTANT Refuelling shall always be performed with engine off. Failing to observe this precaution could cause the gauge to provide wrong indications. Should this occur, to restore proper indication just have next refuelling with the engine off. Otherwise contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

PETROL ENGINES

Use only unleaded petrol. To prevent errors, the diameter of the fuel tank filler is too small to introduce a lead petrol pump filler. Use petrol with a rated octane number (R.O.N.) not lower than 95.

IMPORTANT An inefficient catalyst leads to harmful exhaust emissions, thus contributing to air pollution.

IMPORTANT Never use leaded petrol, even in small amount or in an emergency, as this would damage the catalyst beyond repair.

DIESEL ENGINES

If the outside temperature is very low, the diesel thickens due to the formation of paraffins and could clog the diesel fuel filter.

In order to avoid these problems, different types of diesel are distributed according to the season: summer type, winter type arctic type (mountains/cold areas).

If refuelling with diesel fuel not suitable for the current temperature, mix diesel fuel with **TUTELA DIESEL ART** additive in the proportions stated on the can, putting first the antifreeze in the tank and then the diesel fuel.

If driving or parking the vehicle for a long period in cold areas/mountains, refuel with the diesel fuel available at local filling stations. In this situation you are also recommended to have in the tank an amount of fuel 50% higher than usable capacity.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The car must only be filled with diesel fuel for motor vehicles, in compliance with European Standard EN590. The use of other products or mixtures may irreparably damage the engine with invalidation of the warranty due to the damage caused. In the event of accidentally filling with another type of fuel, do not start the engine and empty the tank. If the engine has been run even for only a very short time, in addition to the tank, it is also necessary to drain out the whole fuel circuit.

REFUELLING

To guarantee full tank filling, carry out two refuelling operations after the first click of the fuel delivery gun. Avoid further topping up operations that could cause damages to the fuel system.

FUEL FILLER CAP

The fuel filler cap is unlocked when central door locking is off and it is automatically locked when activating the central door locking.

Opening

Open the flap **A-fig. 109** by means of front part (see figure), turn cap **B** anti-clockwise and extract it. The cap has a device **C** retaining it to the flap so it cannot be lost. When refuelling, attach the cap to the flap, as illustrated.

Closing

Fit cap **B** in its housing and turn it clockwise until it clicks once or more, then close the flap **A**.

When refuelling, position the cap on the device inside the flap as shown in the figure.

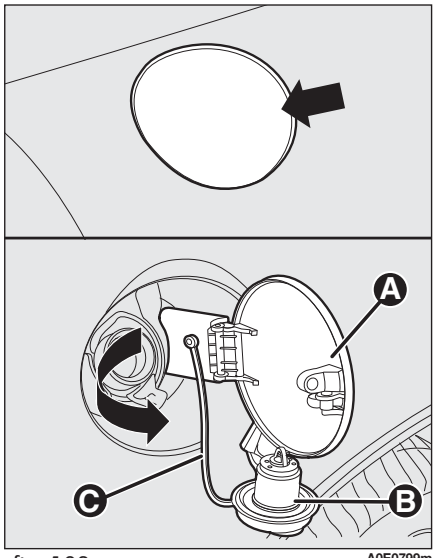


fig. 109

IMPORTANT The sealing of the tank may cause light pressurising in the tank. A little breathing off, while slackening the cap, is absolutely normal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Do not put naked flames or lighted cigarettes near the fuel filler hole as there is danger of fire. Do not bend too close to the hole either so as not to breathe in harmful vapours.

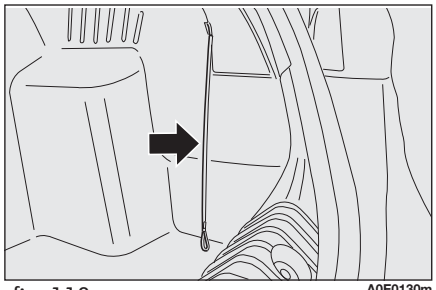


fig. 110

EMERGENCY OPENING OF THE FUEL FILLER CAP

In case of failure, the fuel filler cap can be opened by pulling string set on the right side of the boot **fig. 110**.

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

The devices for curtailing petrol engine emissions are the following:

❒ three-way catalytic converter;

❒ Lambda sensor;

❒ fuel evaporation system.

In addition, do not let the engine run, even for a test, with one or more spark plugs disconnected.

The devices for curtailing diesel fuel engine emissions are the following:

❒ oxidising catalytic converter;

❒ exhaust gas recirculation system (E.G.R.);

❒ diesel particulate filter (DPF) (where required).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

During normal service the diesel particulate filter (DPF) (where required) reaches high temperatures. Do not therefore park the car over inflammable materials (grass, dry leaves, pine needles, etc.): fire hazard.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF) (where required)

The Diesel Particulate Filter is a mechanical filter, integral with the exhaust system, that physically traps particulate present in the exhaust gases of Diesel engines.

The diesel particular filter has been adopted to eliminate almost totally particulates in compliance with current / future law regulations.

During normal use of the car, the engine control unit records a set of data (e.g.: travel time, type of route, temperatures, etc.) and it will then calculate how much particulates has been trapped by the filter.

Since this filter physically traps particulates, it shall be cleaned (reclaimed) at regular intervals by burning carbon particles. Reclaiming procedure is controlled automatically by the engine control unit according to the filter conditions and the conditions of use of the car. During reclaiming the following phenomena could take place: idling slight increase, fan activation, slight smoke increase, high exhaust temperatures. These situations shall not be considered as faults and they do not affect car performance and environment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SAFETY DEVICES

SEAT BELTS 130
S.B.R. SYSTEM 131
PRETENSIONERS 132
CARRYING CHILDREN SAFELY 135
PRESETTING FOR MOUNTING THE "UNIVERSAL ISOFIX"CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM..... 140
FRONT AIR BAGS..... 142
SIDE AIR BAGS (Side bag - Window bag) 145

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SEAT BELTS

USING THE SEAT BELTS

The belt should be worn keeping the chest straight and rested against the seat back.

To fasten seat belts, take the tongue **A-fig. 1** and insert it into the buckle **B**, until hearing the locking click.

At removal, if it jams, let it rewind for a short stretch, then pull it out again without jerking.

To unfasten the seat belts, press button **C**. Guide the seat belt with your hand while it is rewinding, to prevent it from twisting.

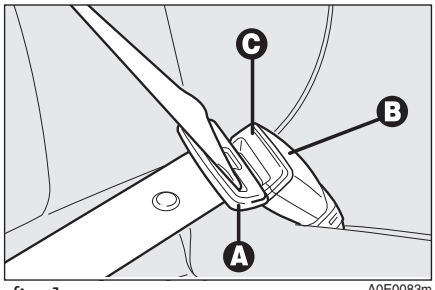


fig. 1 A0E0083m

WARNING

Never press button C when travelling.

Through the reel, the belt automatically adapts to the body of the passenger wearing it, allowing freedom of movement.

When the car is parked on a steep slope the reel mechanism may block; this is normal. The reel mechanism prevents the webbing coming out when it is jerked or if the car brakes sharply, in a collision or when cornering at high speed.

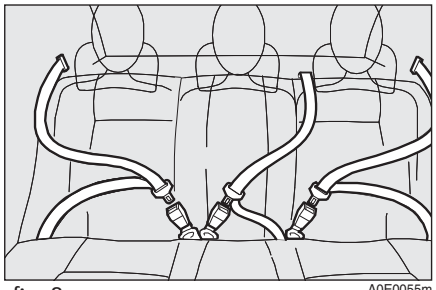


fig. 2 A0E0055m

The rear seat is fitted with inertial seat belts with three anchor points and reel for side and central seats.

Rear seat belts shall be worn as shown in the figure **fig. 2**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

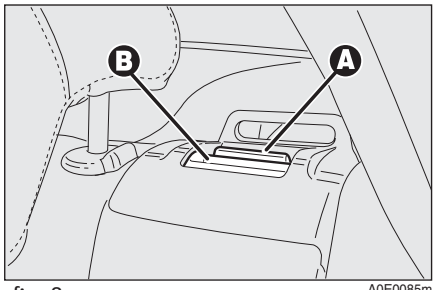


fig. 3 A0E0085m

IMPORTANT On certain versions, correct backrest fastening is guaranteed when the "red band" **A-fig. 3** aside levers **B** is no longer visible. The "red band" actually indicates that the backrest is not properly secured.

IMPORTANT After putting the seats back to their travelling position, restore the seat belt position to make them ready for use.

WARNING

Remember that in the event of a violent collision, back seat passengers not wearing seat belts also represent a serious danger for the front seat passengers.

WARNING

Make sure the backrest is properly secured at both sides (red band A-fig. 3 not visible) to prevent it moves forward in the event of sharp braking causing injuries to passengers.

S.B.R. SYSTEM (Seat Belt Reminder)

The car is fitted with the S.B.R. system (Seat Belt Reminder), consisting of a buzzer which, together with the turning on of warning light, warns the driver and the front passenger to fasten the seat belt.

The buzzer can be muted temporarily by the following procedure:

- ❒ fasten the front seat belts;
- ❒ fit the electronic key into the ignition device;
- ❒ wait for over 20 seconds but less than 1 minute and then unfasten one of the front seat belts.

This procedure will stand valid till next engine switching off.

For permanent deactivation, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services. The S.B.R. system can only be reset through the set-up menu (see paragraph "Reconfigurable multifunction display" in section "Dashboard and controls").

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PRETENSIONERS

To increase the efficiency of the seat belts, the car is fitted with front pretensioners. These devices, in the event of a violent crash, rewind the seat belts a few centimetres. In this way they ensure that the seat belt adheres perfectly to the wearer before the restraining action begins.

Front pretensioners activation is indicated by buckle withdrawal downwards.

IMPORTANT To obtain the highest degree of protection from the action of the pretensioning device, wear the seat belt keeping it firmly close to the chest and pelvis.

Front seat pretensioners activate only if front seat belts are properly fitted into buckles.

A small amount of smoke may be produced. This smoke is in no way toxic and presents no fire hazard.

Anything that modifies its original conditions invalidates its efficiency. Anything that modifies its original conditions invalidates its efficiency. If due to unusual natural events (floods, seas storm, etc.) the device has been affected by water and mud, it must necessarily be replaced.

WARNING

The pretensioner can only be used once. After a collision that has triggered it, have it replaced at Alfa Romeo Authorized Services. Pretensioner validity is indicated on the label inside the glovebox. Pretensioners should be replaced at Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as this date approaches.

Operations which lead to knocks, vibrations or localised heating (over 100°C for a maximum of 6 hours) in the area around the pretensioners may cause damage or trigger them. These devices are not affected by vibrations caused by irregularities of the road surface or low obstacles such as kerbs, etc. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services for any assistance.

LOAD LIMITERS

To increase passenger's safety, the front seat belt reels contain a load limiter which allows controlled sag in such a way as to dose the force acting on the chest and shoulders during the belt restraining action in case of front crash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

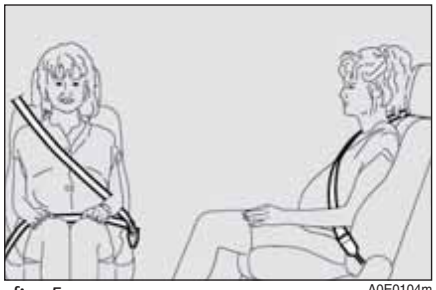


fig. 5

fig. 6

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS FOR USING THE SEAT BELTS

The driver must comply with (and have the vehicle occupants follow) all the local legal regulations concerning the use of seat belts.

Always fasten the seat belts before starting.

Seat belts are also to be worn by expectant mothers: the risk of injury in the case of accident is greatly reduced for them and the unborn child if they are wearing a seat belt. Of course they must position the lower part of the belt very low down so that it passes under the abdomen **fig. 5**.

IMPORTANT The belt should not be twisted. The upper part should pass over the shoulder and cross the chest diagonally. The lower part should adhere to the pelvis **fig. 6** and not the abdomen of the passenger. Do not use any objects (pegs, stoppers, etc.) to keep the belts away from the body.

WARNING

For maximum protection keep the back of your seat upright, lean back into it and make sure the seat belt fits closely across your chest and hips. Make sure that the seat belts of the front and rear passengers are fastened at all times! You increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision if you travel with the belts unfastened.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

fig. 7

IMPORTANT Never travel with a child sitting on the passenger's lap with a single belt to protect them both **fig. 7**. Do not fasten other objects to the body.

WARNING

Under no circumstances should the components of the seat belts and pretensioners be tampered with or removed. Any operation should be carried out by qualified and authorised personnel. Always contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

WARNING

If the belt has been subjected to heavy stress, for example after an accident, it should be changed completely together with the anchors, anchor fastening screws and the pretensioners. In fact, even if the belt has no visible defects, it could have lost its resilience.

HOW TO KEEP THE SEAT BELTS ALWAYS IN EFFICIENT CONDITIONS

- ❒ Always use the belt with the tape taut and never twisted; make sure that it is free to run without impediments;
- ❒ after a serious accident, replace the belt being worn at that time, even if it does not appear damaged. Always replace the seat belts if pretensioners have been activated;
- ❒ to clean the belts, wash by hand with neutral soap, rinse and leave to dry in the shade. Never use strong detergents, bleach or dyes or other chemical substance that might weaken the fibres;
- ❒ prevent the reels from getting wet: their correct operation is only guaranteed if water does not get inside;
- ❒ replace the seat belt when showing significant wear or cut signs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CARRYING CHILDREN SAFELY

For optimal protection in the event of a crash, all passengers must be seated and wearing adequate restraint systems. This is even more important for children.

This prescription is compulsory in all EC countries according to EC Directive 2003/20/EC.

Compared with adults, a child's head is proportionately larger and heavier than the rest of the body, while muscles and bone structure are not completely developed. Therefore, in order to restraint them correctly in the event of a crash, different systems are needed than adult seat belts.

The results of research on the best child restraint systems are contained in the European Standard ECE-R44. This Standard enforces the use of restraint systems classified in five groups:

Group 0 - 0-10 kg in weight

Group 0+ - 0-13 kg in weight

Group 1 9-18 kg in weight

Group 2 15-25 kg in weight

Group 3 22-36 kg in weight

As it may be noted, the groups overlap partly and in fact, in commerce it is possible to find devices that cover more than one weight group.

All restraint devices must bear the certification data, together with the control brand, on a solidly fixed label which must absolutely never be removed.

Over 1.50 m in height, from the point of view of restraint systems, children are considered as adults and wear the seat belts normally.

Lineaccessori Alfa Romeo offers seats for each weight group, which are the recommended choice, as they have been designed and experimented specifically for Alfa Romeo cars.

WARNING

With passenger's air bag active, never place child's seats with the cradle facing backwards since the air bag activation could cause to the child serious injuries, even mortal, regardless of the seriousness of the crash that triggered it. You are advised to carry children always with proper restraint systems on the rear seats, as this is the most protected position in the case of a crash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

SERIOUS DANGER If it is absolutely necessary to carry a child on the front passenger seat with the cradle child's seat facing backwards, the front passenger's air bags (front air bag, knees air bag, for versions/markets, where provided, and side bag on seat), must be deactivated using the key switch. In this case it is absolutely necessary to check the warning light on the front ceiling light panel (see paragraph "Passenger's front air bag") to make sure that deactivation has actually taken place. Moreover, the front passenger's seat shall be adjusted in the most backward position to prevent any contact between the child's seat and the dashboard.

fig. 8 A0E0106m

GROUP 0 and 0+

Babies up to 13 kg must be carried facing backwards **fig. 8** on a cradle seat, which, supporting the head, does not induce stress on the neck in the event of sharp deceleration.

The cradle is restrained by the car seat belts and in turn it must restrain the child with its own belts.

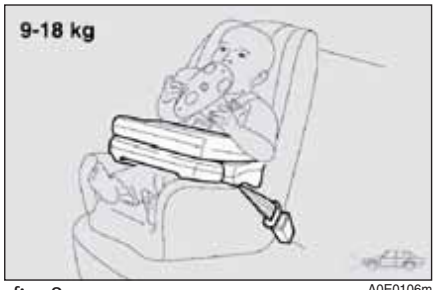


fig. 9 A0E0106m

GROUP 1

Starting from 9 kg to 18 kg in weight, children may be carried facing forwards, with seat fitted with front cushion **fig. 9**, through which the car seat belt restrains both child and seat.

WARNING

The figure is only an example for mounting. Attain to the instructions for fastening which must be enclosed with the specific child restraining system you are using.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Seats exist which are suitable for covering weight groups 0 and 1 with a rear connection to the car belts and their own belts to restrain the child. Due to their size, they can be dangerous if installed incorrectly fastened to the car belts with a cushion. Carefully follow the instructions for installation provided with the seat.

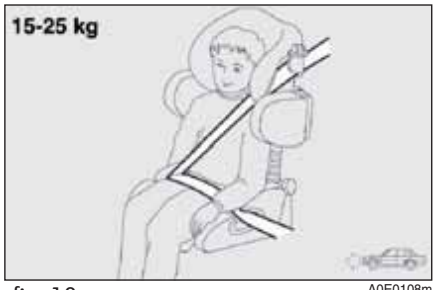


fig. 10 A0E0108m

GROUP 2

Starting from 15 kg to 25 kg in weight, children may be restrained directly by the car belts. The only function of the seat is to position the child correctly in relation to the belts, so that the diagonal part adheres to the chest and not to the neck and that the horizontal part clings to the child's pelvis and not the abdomen **fig. 10**.

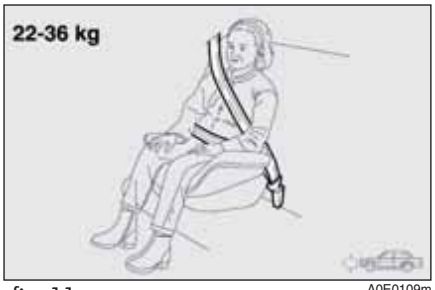


fig. 11 A0E0109m

GROUP 3

For children from 22 kg to 36 kg the size of the child's chest no longer requires a support to space the child's back from the seat back. **Fig. 11** shows proper child seat positioning on the rear seat.

Children taller than 1.50 m can wear seat belts like adults.

WARNING

The illustrations are indicative only for assembly. Assemble the seat according to the compulsory instructions provided with it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PASSENGER SEAT COMPLIANCE WITH REGULATIONS ON CHILD'S SEAT USE

Your car complies with the new European Directive 2000/3/EC regulating child's seat assembling on the different car seats according to the following tables:

Front and rear seat (fixed and double seat)

Group	Range of weight	SEAT			
		Front		Rear	
		Seat with 6 positions	Seat with 8 positions	Rear seat side	Rear seat central
Group 0, 0+	up to 13 kg	U (*)	U (*)	U	U
Group 1	9-18 kg	U (*)	U (*)	U	U
Group 2	15-25 kg	U (*)	U (*)	U	U
Group 3	22-36 kg	U (*)	U (*)	U	U

Key:

U = suitable for child restraint systems of the "Universal" category, according to European Standard EEC-R44 for the specified "Groups".

(*) = on cars not fitted with passenger's seat adjustable in height, the seat back shall be positioned perfectly upright. On cars fitted with passenger's seat adjustable in height, the seat shall be raised as much as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Below is a summary of the rules of safety to be followed for carrying children:

- ❒ the recommended position for installing child's seat is on the rear seat, as it is the most protected in the case of a crash;
- ❒ if the passenger's air bag is deactivated **always** check that the warning light on the front ceiling light panel is glowing steadily to indicate that the air bag has been deactivated;
- ❒ attain to the instructions for fastening the specific child restraint system which you are using. These instructions must be provided by the manufacturer. Keep the child restraint system installation instructions with the car documents and this Handbook. Never use a child restraint system without installation instructions;
- ❒ always check the seat belt is well fastened by pulling the webbing;
- ❒ only one child is to be strapped to each retaining system;
- ❒ always check the seat belts do not fit around the child's throat;
- ❒ while travelling, do not let the child sit incorrectly or release the belts;
- ❒ passengers should never carry children on their laps. No-one, however strong they are, can hold a child in the event of a crash;
- ❒ in case of an accident, replace the seat with a new one.

WARNING

With passenger's air bag active, never place child's seats with the cradle facing backwards since the air bag activation could cause to the child serious injuries, even mortal, regardless of the seriousness of the crash that triggered it. You are advised to carry children always with proper restraint systems on the rear seats, as this is the most protected position in the case of a crash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PRESETTING FOR MOUNTING THE "UNIVERSAL ISOFIX" CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

This car is preset for mounting the Universal Isofix child restraint system, a new European standardised system for carrying children safely.

Fig. 11/a shows an example of child restraint system. The Universal Isofix child's seat covers weight group: 1.

Due to its different anchoring system, the Universal Isofix child's seat shall be anchored to the proper lower metal rings **A-fig.12**, set between rear seat back and cushion. The upper belt (provided with the child's seat) shall be then secured to fasteners **B-fig.13** set behind head restraints.

It is possible to mount at the same time both the traditional restraint system and the "Universal Isofix" one.

Remember that in case of Universal Isofix child's seat, you can only use all those seats approved with the marking ECE R44/03 "Universal Isofix".

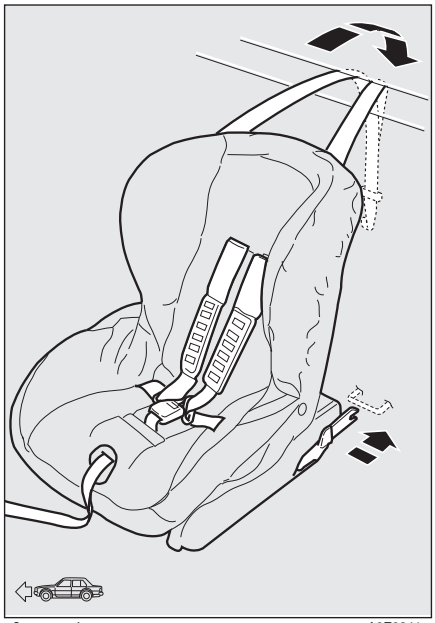


fig. 11/a A0E0241m

At Lineaccessori Alfa Romeo is available the "Universal Isofix" "Duo Plus" child's seat shown in.

For any further installation/use detail, refer to the "Instructions Manual" that must be provided by the child restraint system Manufacturer.

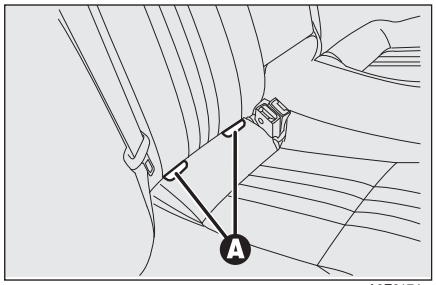


fig. 12 A0E0174m

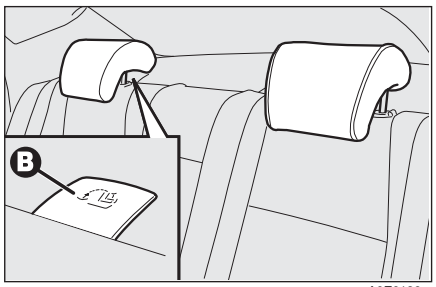


fig. 13 A0E0190m

WARNING

Mount the child restraint system only with the car stationary. The Isofix child restraint system is properly anchored to the mounting brackets when clicks are heard. In any case, keep to the installation instructions that must be provided by the child restraint system Manufacturer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PASSENGER SEAT COMPLIANCE WITH REGULATIONS ON UNIVERSALS ISOFIX CHILD'S SEAT USE

The table below, according to ECE 16 European Directive, shows the different installation possibilities of Isofix restraint systems on seats fitted with Universals Isofix fasteners.

Range of weight	Child's seat direction	Isofix size group	Isofix position side rear
Group 0 - 0 to 10 kg	Facing backwards	E	IL
Group 0+ - 0 to 13 kg	Facing backwards	E	IL
	Facing backwards	D	IL
	Facing backwards	C	IL
Group I - 9 to 18 kg	Facing backwards	D	IL
	Facing backwards	C	IL
	Facing forwards	B	IUF
	Facing forwards	BI	IUF
	Facing forwards	A	IUF

IUF: suitable for Isofix child restraint systems to be set facing forwards, universal class (fitted with third upper fastener), approved for the weight group.

IL: suitable for Isofix Type child restraint systems, specific and approved for this type of car. The child's seat can be installed by moving forward the front seat

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FRONT AIR BAGS

The car is fitted with front multistage air bags ("Smart bags") for the driver and the passenger and with knees air bag for the driver and for the passenger (for versions/markets, where provided).

"SMART BAG" SYSTEM (FRONT MULTISTAGE AIR BAGS)

The front air bags (driver and passenger) and knees air bags (driver and passenger) have been designed to protect the occupants in the event of head-on crashes of medium-high severity, by placing cushions between the occupant and the steering wheel or dashboard.

In case of crash, an electronic control unit, when required, triggers the inflation of the cushions that inflate, as a protection, between the body of the front occupants and the structure that could cause injuries. Immediately after, the cushions deflate.

The front air bags (driver and passenger) and knees air bags (driver and passenger) are not a replacement of but complementary to the use of belts, which should always be worn, as specified by law in Europe and most non European countries.

In case of crash, a person not wearing the seat belt moves forward and may come into contact with the cushion while it is still inflating. Under this circumstance the protection offered by the air bag is reduced.

Front air bags may not be activated in the following situations:

- ❒ front collisions against highly deformable objects not affecting the car front surface (e.g. bumper collision against guard rail, etc.);
- ❒ in case of wedging under other vehicles or protective barriers (for example under a truck or guard rail);
- ❒ the air bag is not triggered as it offers no additional protection compared with the seat belts, consequently it would be pointless. Therefore, failure to come into action in the above circumstance does not mean that the system is not working properly.

WARNING

Do not apply stickers or other objects to the steering wheel or to the air bag cover on the passenger's side or on the side roof lining. Never put objects (e.g. mobile phones) on the dashboard on passenger side since they could interfere with proper passenger air bag inflation and also cause serious injury.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

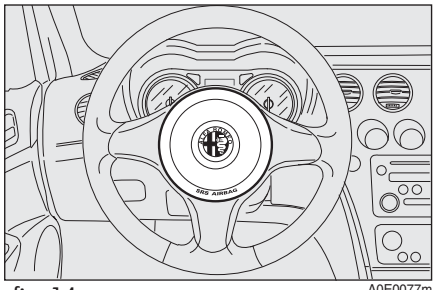


fig. 14 A0E0077m

DRIVER'S FRONT AIR BAG

It consists of an instant-inflating cushion contained in a special recess in the centre of the steering wheel **fig. 14**.

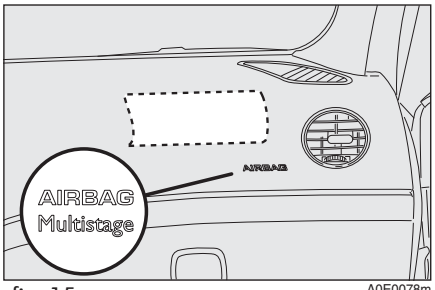


fig. 15 A0E0078m

PASSENGER'S FRONT AIR BAG

It consists of an instant-inflating cushion contained into a special recess in the dashboard **fig. 15**, this cushion has a volume bigger than that of the driver.

WARNING

With passenger's air bag active, never place child's seats with the cradle facing backwards since the air bag activation could cause to the child serious injuries, even mortal.

WARNING

On cars fitted with front passenger's air bag deactivation (front air bag, knees air bag (for versions/markets, where provided) and side on seat), these air bags shall be deactivated when placing the child's seat on the front passenger's seat. Moreover, the front passenger's seat shall be adjusted in the most backward position to prevent any contact between the child's seat and the dashboard. Even if not compulsory by law, you are recommended to reactivate the air bag immediately as soon as the child transport is no longer necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

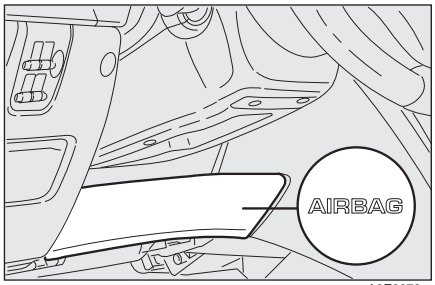


fig. 16 A0E0079m

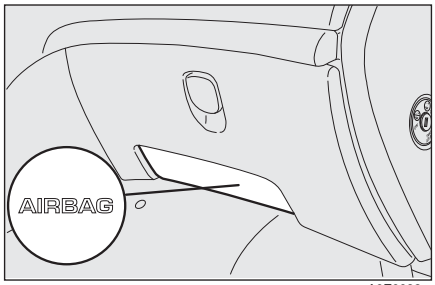


fig. 17 A0E0092m

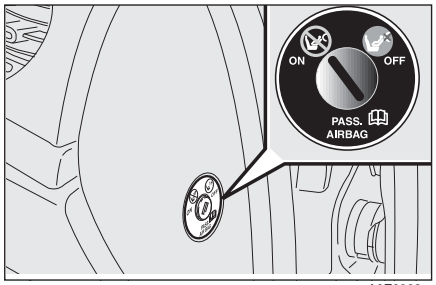


fig. 18 A0E0062m

DRIVER'S AND PASSENGER'S KNEES AIR BAG (for versions/markets, where provided)

Knees air bag consists of an instant-inflating cushion housed into a special compartment provided for the purpose under the steering wheel for the driver **fig. 16** and into the lower part of the dashboard for the passenger **fig. 17**, to give further protection in the event of frontal crash.

MANUAL DEACTIVATION (for versions/markets, where provided) OF PASSENGER'S FRONT AIR BAG , KNEES AIR BAG (for versions/markets, where provided) AND PASSENGER'S FRONT SIDE BAG

Should it be absolutely necessary to carry a child on the front seat, the passenger's front air bag, knees air bag (for versions/markets, where provided) and the side bag can be deactivated. Deactivation/activation shall be performed (with key removed from ignition device) using the key switch set on the right side of dashboard **fig. 18**. You can reach the switch only if the door is opened. When the door is open, the metal insert of the key can be inserted and removed in both positions.

IMPORTANT Operate the switch only when the engine is not running and the ignition key is removed.

The key-operated switch has two positions:

- ❒ passenger's front air bag and knees air bag (for versions/markets, where provided) and side bag activated (**ON** position ⊗): warning light on front ceiling light panel off; it is absolutely prohibited to carry a child on the front seat;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

❒ passenger's front air bag and knees air bag (for versions/markets, where provided) and side bag deactivated (**OFF** position): warning light on front ceiling light panel on; it is possible to carry a child protected by special restraint systems on the front seat.

The warning light on front ceiling light panel stays on permanently until the passenger's air bags are reactivated.

Passenger's air bags deactivation will not inhibit the operation of the head protection side bag (Window Bag).

SIDE AIR BAGS (Side bag - Window bag)

The car is fitted with front side bags for driver and passenger for protecting the chest and window bags for protecting front and rear occupant's head.

Side bags protect car occupants from side crashes of medium-high severity, by placing the cushion between the occupant and the internal parts of the side structure of the car.

Non-activation of side bags in other types of collisions (front collisions, rear shunts, roll-overs, etc...) is not a system malfunction.

In case of side crash, an electronic control unit, when required triggers the inflation of the cushion. The cushion immediately inflates, placing itself as a protection, between the occupant's body and the structure that could cause injuries. Immediately after, the cushion deflates.

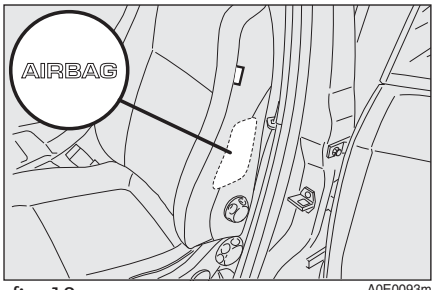


fig. 19

Side air bags are not a replacement of but complementary to the belts, which you are recommended to always wear, as specified by law in Europe and most non-European countries.

FRONT SIDE BAGS - CHEST AND PELVIS ZONE PROTECTION

They are composed by two types of instant inflation cushions and are housed in the back rest of the front seats **fig. 19**. The task of the side air bags is to increase protection of the occupants' chest and pelvis zone in the event of a side crash of medium-high severity.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

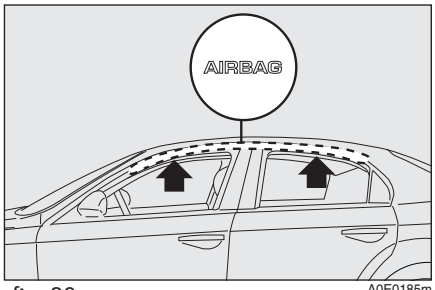


fig. 20

SIDE WINDOW BAGS - HEAD PROTECTION

They are "curtain" cushions located behind the side coverings of the roof **fig. 20** and covered by proper finishing. Window bags have been designed for protecting the head of front and rear occupants in the event of side crash, thanks to the wide cushion inflation surface. In minor side crashes (for which the restraining action of the seat belts is sufficient), the air bags are not deployed.

Also in this case it is of vital importance to wear the seat belts since in case of side crash they guarantee proper positioning of the occupant and prevent the occupants to be pitched out of the car in case of violent crashes.

IMPORTANT In the event of side crash, you can obtain the best protection by the system keeping a correct position on the seat, allowing thus a correct window bag unfolding.

IMPORTANT The front air bags and/or side bags may be deployed if the car is subject to heavy knocks or accidents involving the underbody area, such as for example violent shocks, against steps, kerbs or low obstacles, falling of the car in big holes or sags in the road.

IMPORTANT When the airbag inflates it emits a small amount of dusts. These dusts are harmless and is not the beginning of a fire; then the unfold cushion surface and the car interiors can be covered by a dusty remains: this dust can irritate skin and eyes. In case of contact, wash yourself using neutral soap and water.

Expiration dates of pyrotechnic charge and coil contact are indicated on the label inside the glovebox. As this date approaches, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the device replaced.

IMPORTANT Should an accident occur in which any of the safety devices is activated, take the car to Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the devices activated replaced and to have the system checked.

All control, repair and replacement operations concerning the air bags must only be carried out c/o Alfa Romeo Authorized Services. If you are having the car scrapped, have the air bag system deactivated at Alfa Romeo Authorized Services first. If the car changes ownership, the new owner must be informed of the method of use of air bags and the above warnings and also be given this "Owner's Manual".

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IMPORTANT The triggering of pretensioners, front air bags and side bags is decided in a differentiated manner according to the type of impact. The failure to deploy one or more of them does not mean that the system is not working properly.

WARNING

Never rest head, arms and elbows on the door, on the windows and in the window bag unfolding area to prevent possible injuries during the inflation phase.

WARNING

Never lean head, arms and elbows out of the window.

GENERAL WARNINGS

WARNING

If when fitting the key into the ignition device, the warning light ✱ does not turn on or if it stays on when travelling (on certain versions together with the message on the display) there could be a failure in safety systems; in this event air bags or pretensioners could not trigger in case of impact or, in a minor number of cases, they could trigger accidentally. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services immediately to have the system checked.

WARNING

Do not cover the backrest of front seats with trims or covers that are not suitable to be used with side bags.

WARNING

Never travel with objects on your lap, in front of your chest or with a pipe, pencil, etc. between your lips; injury may result in the event of the air bag being triggered.

WARNING

Always keep your hands on the steering wheel rim when driving, so that if the air bag is triggered, it can inflate without meeting any obstacles which could cause serious harm to you. Do not drive with the body bent forwards, keep the seat back rest in the erect position and lean your back well against it.

WARNING

If the car has been stolen or an attempt to steal it has been made, if it has been subjected to vandals or floods, have the air bag system checked by Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Remember that with the key fitted into the ignition device and engine off, the air bags may be triggered on a stationary car if it is bumped by another moving car. Therefore, never seat children on the front seat even when the car is stationary. On the other hand remember that if the key is not fitted into the ignition device, no safety system (air bags or pretensioners) is triggered in the event of an impact; in this case, failure to come into action cannot be considered as a sign that the system is not working properly.

WARNING

When the key is fitted into the ignition device, the warning light (with passenger's front air bags deactivation switch at ON) turns on and flashes for few seconds to remind that passenger's front air bag, knees air bag and side bag will be deployed in a crash, after which it should go off.

WARNING

Never wash seat backrests with pressurised water or steam (by hand or at automatic seat washing stations).

WARNING

The front air bag is triggered for shocks greater in magnitude than the pretensioners. For impacts between these two thresholds, it is therefore normal that only the pretensioners are triggered.

WARNING

Do not hook rigid objects to the coat hooks and to the support handles.

WARNING

The air bag does not substitute the seat belts, but only increases their effectiveness. Moreover, since the front air bags do not come into operation in the event of front impact at low speed, side collisions, bumps from behind or overturning, in these circumstances the occupants would only be protected by the seat belts which must therefore always be fastened.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CORRECT USE OF THE CAR

ENGINE STARTING 150
PARKING 155
USING THE GEARBOX 156
CONTAINING RUNNING COSTS 157
TOWING TRAILERS 159
SNOW TYRES 162
SNOW CHAINS 163
CAR INACTIVITY 164

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE STARTING

The car is fitted with an electronic engine immobilising system. If the engine fails to start, see paragraph "Alfa Romeo CODE system" in section "Dashboard and controls".

IMPORTANT Tampering with the ignition device can cause unrequired steering lock.

IMPORTANT Fit completely the electronic key into the ignition device until it locks into place.

IMPORTANT Never take the electronic key out of the ignition device while the car is moving unless you have to carry out an emergency removal (see paragraph "Removing the electronic key from the ignition device in an emergency"), this ensures that the steering column lock is deactivated while the car is moving (e.g.: towing the car).

We recommend that during the initial period you do not drive to full car performance (e.g.: excessive acceleration, long journeys at top speed, sharp braking, etc.).

When the engine is switched off never leave the electronic key into the ignition device to prevent pointless current absorption from draining the batter.

WARNING

Running the engine in confined areas is extremely dangerous. The engine consumes oxygen and produces carbon monoxide which is a highly toxic and lethal gas.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STARTING PROCEDURE FOR PETROL VERSIONS

Proceed as follows:

❒ Ensure that the handbrake is up;

❒ Fully press the clutch pedal, without pressing the accelerator;

❒ Put the gear lever neutral;

❒ Fit the electronic key into the ignition device to stop limit;

❒ Briefly press the **START/STOP** button.

The starter automatically operates until the engine starts.

With engine off and electronic key inserted in the ignition device, it is possible to operate the automatic ignition briefly pressing the **START/STOP** button and keeping the clutch pedal pressed.

IMPORTANT It is possible to start the engine keeping pressed only the brake pedal. In that case, automatic start is not enabled. Then press the **START/STOP** button and release it as soon as the engine starts.

STARTING PROCEDURE FOR DIESEL VERSIONS

Proceed as follows:

❒ Ensure that the handbrake is up;

❒ Fully press the clutch pedal, without pressing the accelerator;

❒ Put the gear lever neutral;

❒ fit the electronic key down into the ignition device until it stops. The instrument panel warning light ⚲ will turn on;

❒ Wait for the warning light ⚲ to turn off. The hotter the engine is, the quicker this will happen;

❒ Briefly press the **START/STOP** button as soon as the warning light ⚲ turns on. Waiting for too long means making spark plugs heating useless.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The starter automatically operates until the engine starts.

With engine off and electronic key inserted in the ignition device, it is possible to operate the automatic ignition briefly pressing the **START/STOP** button and keeping the clutch pedal pressed.

In the event of cold weather, we recommend to wait for warning light turn off before operating the starter.

IMPORTANT It is possible to start the engine keeping pressed only the brake pedal. In that case, automatic start is not enabled. Then press the **START/STOP** button and release it as soon as the engine starts.

IMPORTANT

If at start-up the engine turns off, restart it by pressing the clutch or brake pedal and then press button **START/STOP**.

If after a few attempts the engine does not start, do not insist but contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

With car started the electronic key is locked into the ignition device and it can be removed only after switching the engine off. With car running and key locked into the ignition device, forced key removal could damage the ignition device.

Start-up failures, if any, are indicated by the turning on of the warning light on the instrument panel (on certain versions a dedicated message is displayed). In this case contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

If the engine will not start after pressing button **START/STOP**, repeat the start-up procedure by pressing the other pedal (clutch or brake).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Start-up failures

The system can recognise start-up failures.

In the event of failure, the electronic key can be removed from the ignition device to enable the driver to carry out the following operations:

❒ turn the instrument panel off by pressing button **START/STOP** or removing the electronic key from the ignition device;

❒ start the engine again by pressing the clutch/brake pedal and button **START/STOP**.

IMPORTANT In the event of engine locking while the car is running, due to safety reasons it will not be possible to take the electronic key out of the ignition device. To remove it, press button **START/STOP** with brake pedal (or clutch pedal) released and car stopped.

HOW TO WARM UP THE ENGINE AFTER IT HAS JUST STARTED (petrol and diesel engines)

Proceed as follows:

❒ Drive off slowly, letting the engine turn at medium revs. Do not accelerate abruptly;

❒ Do not drive at full performance for the initial kilometres. Wait until the coolant temperature gauge starts moving.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

With car stopped press button **START/STOP**. When the engine is off it will be possible to remove the electronic key from the ignition device.

WARNING

In an emergency, and for safety reasons the engine can be turned off when the car is running by pressing repeatedly (3 times within 2 seconds) or by keeping pressed button START/STOP for a few seconds. In this case the steering lock cannot be engaged.

IMPORTANT After a taxing drive, you should allow the engine to "catch its breath" before turning it off by letting it idle to allow the temperature in the engine compartment to fall.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IMPORTANT Turning the car off will deactivate the electronic safety systems and turn off the external lights.

IMPORTANT In the event of engine locking while the car is running, due to safety reasons it will not be possible to take the electronic key out of the ignition device. To remove it, turn the instrument panel on and off by pressing button **START/STOP** with brake pedal (and clutch pedal) released and car stopped.

A quick burst on the accelerator before turning off the engine serves absolutely no practical purpose, it wastes fuel and is damaging especially to turbocharged engines.

REMOVING THE ELECTRONIC KEY FROM THE IGNITION DEVICE IN AN EMERGENCY

In the event of a failure at engine switching off system or at electronic key unlocking system proceed as follows:

- ❒ press the unlocking button to remove the metal insert (see paragraph "Electronic key" in section "Dashboard and controls");
- ❒ fit the metal insert **B-fig. 1** of the electronic key into the slot **A**;
- ❒ remove the electronic key from the ignition device.

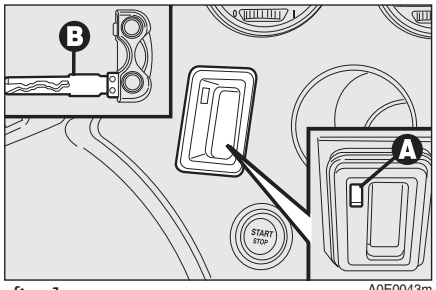


fig. 1 A0E0043m

IMPORTANT Only fit the metal insert **B** of the electronic key into slot **A-fig.1**.

IMPORTANT Stop the car before emergency removal of the key, since removing the key with the engine running will turn both the engine and the instrument panel off and the steering lock will not be engaged.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PARKING THE CAR

Proceed as follows:

❒ Stop the engine and engage the handbrake;

❒ Engage a gear (on a slope, engage first gear if the car is faced uphill or reverse if it is faced downhill) and leave the wheels steered.

Block the wheels with a wedge or a stone if the car is parked on a steep slope. Do not leave the electronic key in the ignition switch to prevent draining the battery.

WARNING

Never leave children unattended in the car. Always remove the electronic key from the ignition device when leaving the car and take it out with you.

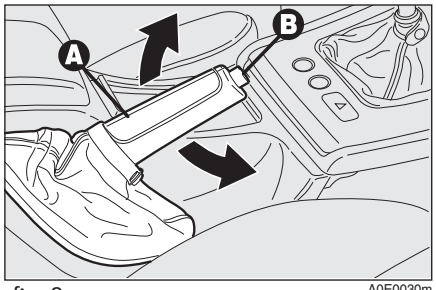


fig. 2

HANDBRAKE

The handbrake lever **A-fig. 2** is located between the two front seats. Pull the handbrake lever **A** upwards, until the car cannot be moved.

With electronic key fitted into the ignition device, the instrument panel warning light ⓘ will come on.

IMPORTANT The car shall stop after a few clicks of the handbrake lever. If this is not the case, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the handbrake adjusted.

To release the handbrake proceed as follows:

❒ Slightly lift the handbrake **A** and press release button **B**;

❒ Keep button **B** pressed and lower the lever. Warning light ⓘ on the instrument panel will turn off.

Press the brake pedal when carrying out this operation to prevent the car from moving accidentally.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USING THE GEARBOX

The car can be fitted with 6-gear or 5-gear manual gearbox (1.8 140 HP version). Gear positions are shown on the gearshift lever knob.

Always press down the clutch pedal when shifting gears. To engage the 6th gear, move the gearshift lever pressing slightly rightwards to prevent engaging the 4th gear accidentally.

To engage reverse **R** from neutral, raise ring **A-fig. 3** or **A-fig. 4** under the knob and at the same time move the gearshift lever leftwards and then forward. After engaging reverse release the ring. To shift from reverse to another gear it is not necessary to raise the ring.

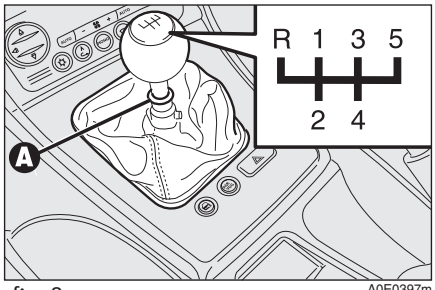


fig. 3 A0E0397m

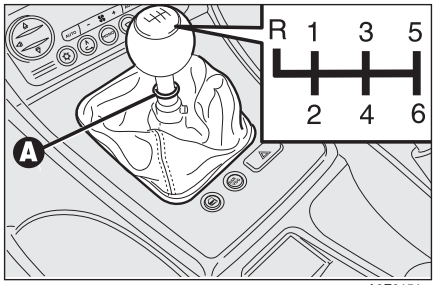


fig. 4 A0E0151m

IMPORTANT The car can only be put into reverse gear when it has stopped moving completely. With the engine running, before engaging the reverse, wait at least 3 seconds with the clutch pedal fully down to prevent damage and grating of the gears.

WARNING

To change gears properly you must push the clutch pedal fully down. It is therefore essential that there is nothing under the pedals: make sure mats are lying flat and do not get in the way of the pedals.

Do not drive with your hand resting on the gear lever as the force exerted, even if slight, could lead over time to premature wear on the gearbox internal components. The clutch pedal must be used for gear shift only. Never drive with the foot resting, even if slightly, on the clutch pedal. For versions/markets where applicable the clutch pedal control electronics can intervene interpreting the wrong drive style as a fault.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CONTAINING RUNNING COSTS

Here are some suggestions which may help you to keep the running costs of your car down and lower the amount of toxic emissions released into the atmosphere.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Car maintenance

Have checks and adjustments carried out in accordance with the "Service schedule".

Tyres

Check the pressure of the tyres routinely at an interval of no more than 4 weeks: if the pressure is too low, consumption levels increase as resistance to rolling is higher.

Unnecessary loads

Do not travel with too much luggage stowed in the boot. The weight of the car (especially when driving in town) and its trim greatly affects consumption and stability.

Roof rack/ski rack

Remove the roof rack or the ski rack from the roof as soon as they are no longer used. These accessories lower air penetration and adversely affect consumption levels. When needing to carry particularly voluminous objects, preferably use a trailer.

Electric devices

Use electric devices only for the amount of time needed. Rear heated window, additional headlights, windscreen wipers and heater fan need a considerable amount of energy, therefore increasing the requirement of current increases fuel consumption (up to +25% in the urban cycle).

Climate control

The air conditioner is an additional load which greatly affects the engine leading to higher consumption. When the temperature outside the car permits it, use the air vents where possible.

Spoilers

The use of aerodynamic optional extras which are not certified for the specific use on the vehicle, may reduce the aerodynamic penetration of the vehicle and increase consumption.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DRIVING STYLE

Starting

Do not warm the engine with the car at a standstill or at idle or high speed: under these conditions the engine warms up much more slowly, increasing electrical consumption and emissions. It is therefore advisable to move off immediately, slowly, avoiding high speeds. This way the engine will warm faster.

Unnecessary actions

Avoid accelerating when waiting at traffic lights or before switching off the engine. This and also double declutching is absolutely pointless on modern cars and also increase consumption and pollution.

Gear selection

As soon as the conditions of the traffic and road allow, use a higher gear. Using a low gear to obtain brilliant performance increases consumption. In the same way improper use of a high gear increases consumption, emissions an engine wear.

Top speed

Fuel consumption considerably increases with speed. Avoid superfluous braking and accelerating, which cost in terms of both fuel and emissions.

Acceleration

Accelerating violently increasing the revs will greatly affect consumption and emissions: acceleration should be gradual and should not exceed the maximum torque.

CONDITIONS OF USE

Cold starting

Short journeys and frequent cold starts do not allow the engine to reach optimum operating temperature. This results in a significant increase in consumption levels (from +15 to +30% on the urban cycle) and emission of harmful substances.

Traffic and road conditions

Rather high consumption levels are tied to situations with heavy traffic, for example in queues with frequent use of the lower gears or in cities with many traffic lights. Also winding mountain roads and rough road surfaces adversely affect consumption.

Traffic hold-ups

During prolonged hold-ups (e.g.: level crossings) the engine should be switched off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TOWING TRAILERS

IMPORTANT NOTES

For towing caravans or trailers the car must be fitted with a certified tow hook and an adequate electric system. Installation should be carried out by specialised personnel who release a special document for circulation on the road.

Install any specific and/or additional rear-view mirrors as specified by law.

Remember that when towing a trailer, steep hills are harder to climb, the braking spaces increase and overtaking takes longer depending on the overall weight.

Engage a low gear when driving downhill, rather than constantly using the brake.

The weight the trailer exerts on the car tow hook reduces by the same amount the actual car loading capacity. To make sure the maximum towable weight is not exceeded (given in the log book) account should be taken of the fully laden trailer, including accessories and personal belongings.

Do not exceed the speed limits of the country you are driving in. In any case do not exceed 100 km/h.

WARNING

The ABS system with which the car may be fitted does not control the trailer braking system. Drive with extreme care on slippery roadbeds.

WARNING

Under no circumstances should the car brake system be altered to control the trailer brake. The trailer braking system must be fully independent of the car hydraulic system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INSTALLING THE TOW HOOK

The towing device should be fastened to the body by specialised personnel according to any additional and/or integrative information supplied by the Manufacturer of the device.

The towing device must meet current regulations with reference to 94/20/EC Directive and subsequent amendments.

For any version the towing device used must match the towable weight of the car on which it is to be installed.

For the electric connection a unified connector should be used which is generally placed on a special bracket normally fastened to the towing device.

For the electrical connection, 7 pin 12VDC connection is to be used (CUNA/UNI and ISO/DIN Standards). Follow the instructions provided by the car manufacturer and/or the tow hitch manufacturer.

An electric brake or other device (electric winch, etc.), if required, should be supplied directly by the battery through a cable with a cross section of no less than 2.5 mm^2. In addition to the electrical branches, the car's electric system can only be connected to the supply cable for an electric brake and to the cable for an internal light, though not above 15W.

Assembly diagram fig. 4

The structure of the tow-hook must be fixed in the indicated points with ◔ with n. 2 M10 screws and n. 4 M12 screws.

The fixing points (**1**) must be provided with Ø 25x6 mm spacers.

The counter-plates (**2**) must have a minimum thickness of 4 mm.

The counter-plates (**3**) must have a minimum thickness of 6 mm.

IMPORTANT It is compulsory to fasten a label (plainly visible) of suitable size and material with the following wording:

MAX LOAD ON BALL 75 kg

After fitting, screw holes shall be sealed to prevent exhaust gas inlet.

IMPORTANT The hook should be fastened to the body avoiding any type of drilling and trimming of the bumper.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

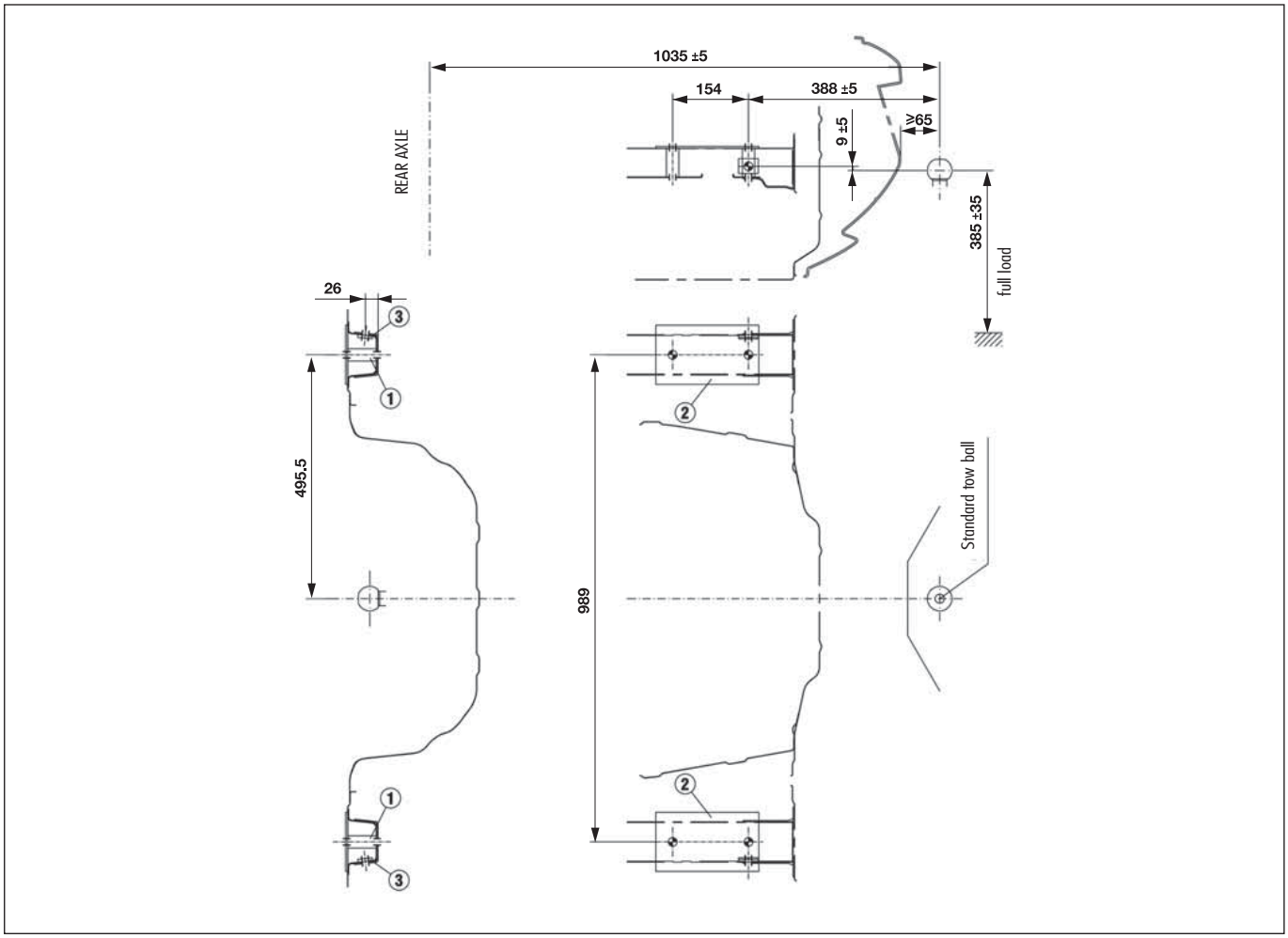


fig. 4

A0E0428m

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SNOW TYRES

Use snow tyres of the same size as the normal tyres provided with the car.

Alfa Romeo Authorized Services will be glad to provide advice concerning the most suitable type of tyre for the customer's requirements.

For the type of tyre to be used, inflation pressures and the specifications of snow tyres, follow the instructions given in paragraph "Wheels" in section "Technical specifications".

The winter features of these tyres are reduced considerably when the tread depth is below 4 mm. In this case, they should be replaced.

Due to the snow tyre features, under normal conditions of use or on long motorway journeys, the performance of these tyres is lower than that of normal tyres. It is therefore necessary to limit their use to the purposes for which they are certified.

IMPORTANT When snow tyres are used with a max speed index below the one that can be reached by the car (increased by 5%), place a notice in the passenger compartment, plainly in the driver's view which states the max permissible speed of the snow tyres (as per EC Directive).

All four tyres should be the same (brand and track) to ensure greater safety when driving and braking and better driveability.

Remember that it is inappropriate to change the direction of rotation of tyres.

WARNING

The max speed for snow tyres with "Q" marking is 160 km/h; 190 km/h for tyres with "T" marking and 210 km/h for tyres with H marking. The Road Traffic Code speed limits must however be always strictly observed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SNOW CHAINS

Use of snow chains should be in compliance with local regulations.

Snow chains should only be applied to the driving wheels (front wheels).

Check the tension of the chains after the first few metres have been driven.

Use snow chains with reduced size: for tyres 205/55 R16" and 215/55 R16" use snow chains with reduced size with max protrusion beyond the tyre profile of 9 mm.

Use of snow chains may be compulsory also for cars with four-wheel drive.

Also for 3.2 JTS version, snow chains shall be fitted on the FRONT axle of the car.

IMPORTANT Snow chains cannot be fitted to the space-saver spare wheel. So, if a front (drive) wheel is punctured and chains are needed, a rear wheel should be fitted to the front of the car and the spare wheel should be fitted to the rear (adjust tyre pressure to the specified value as soon as possible). This way with two normal drive wheels, snow chains can be fitted to them to solve an emergency.

Traditional snow chains may not be used on tyres type 225/50 R17" only spider type chains can be used. Tyres 235/45 R18" and 235/40 ZR 19" cannot be fitted with snow chains due to interference with the fender.

WARNING

Keep your speed down when snow chains are fitted. Do not exceed 40 km/h. Avoid potholes, steps and pavements and avoid also to drive for long distances on roads not covered with snow to prevent damaging the car and the roadbed.

When snow chains are fitted, switch the ASR system off. Press the ASR/VDC button (see paragraph "ASR system" in section "Dashboard and controls").

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAR INACTIVITY

If the car is to be left inactive for longer than a month, the following precautions should be noted:

- ❒ park the car in covered, dry and if possible well-ventilated premises;
- ❒ engage a gear;
- ❒ check that the handbrake is not engaged;
- ❒ disconnect battery negative terminal and check the battery charge. This check is to be repeated every three months when the car is left inactive. Recharge if the optical(where provided) indicator shows a dark colour without the central green area (see paragraph "Battery" in "Car maintenance" section);
- ❒ clean and protect the painted parts using protective wax;
- ❒ clean and protect the shiny metal parts using special compounds readily available;
- ❒ sprinkle talcum powder on the rubber windscreen and rear window wiper blades and lift them off the glass;
- ❒ slightly open the windows;
- ❒ cover the car with a cloth or perforated plastic sheet. Do not use sheets of non-perforated plastic as they do not allow moisture on the car body to evaporate;
- ❒ inflate tyres to +0.5 bar above the normal specified pressure and check it at intervals;
- ❒ if you don't disconnect the battery from the electric system, check its charge every month and recharge it if the optical indicator shows a dark colour without the central green area;
- ❒ do not drain the engine cooling system.

IMPORTANT If the car is fitted with alarm system, switch off the alarm with the remote control.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING LIGHTS AND MESSAGES

LOW BRAKE FLUID/HANDBRAKE ON 166
BRAKE PAD WEAR 167
SEAT BELTS NOT FASTENED..... 167
AIR BAG FAILURE..... 168
PASSANGER'S FRONT AIR BAGS DEACTIVATED..... 168
ENGINE COOLANT HIGH TEMPERATURE 169
ENGINE OIL HIGH TEMPERATURE..... 169
MINIMUM ENGINE OIL LEVEL 170
LOW ENGINE OIL PRESSURE/EXHAUST OIL..... 170
LOW BATTERY CHARGE..... 170
INCOMPLETE DOOR LOCKING 171
BONNET OPEN..... 171
BOOT OPEN 171
INJECTION SYSTEM FAILURE/
EOBD SYSTEM FAILURE..... 171
CAR PROTECTION SYSTEM FAILURE/
STEERING LOCK INHIBITION 172
ALARM FAILURE/BREAK-IN ATTEMPT
ELECTRONIC KEY NOT RECOGNIZED..... 172
POSSIBLE PRESENCE OF ICE ON THE ROAD 173
PRE-HEATING GLOW PLUGS/
PRE-HEATING GLOW PLUG FAILURE..... 173
WATER IN DIESEL FUEL FILTER..... 174
INERTIAL FUEL CUT-OFF SWITCHED ON 174
ABS SYSTEM FAILURE..... 175
EBD SYSTEM FAILURE..... 175
VDC SYSTEM 175
HILL HOLDER FAILURE 176
ASR SYSTEM (WHEEL ANTISKID SYSTEM) 176
EXTERNAL LIGHTS FAILURE 176
BRAKE LIGHTS FAILURE 177
REAR FOGLIGHTS 177
FRONT FOG LIGHTS 177
SIDE/TAILLIGHTS/FOLLOW ME HOME..... 177
DIPPED BEAM HEADLIGHTS..... 177
MAIN BEAM HEADLIGHTS 177
LEFT-HAND DIRECTION INDICATOR..... 177
RIGHT-HAND DIRECTION INDICATOR..... 177
LIGHT SENSOR FAILURE..... 178
RAIN SENSOR FAILURE..... 178
PARKING SENSORS FAILURE..... 178
FUEL RESERVE — LIMITED CRUISING RANGE..... 178
CRUISE CONTROL 178
DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER CLOGGED 178
ANTIPINCH SYSTEM FAILURE..... 179
WINDSCREEN WASHER FLUID LOW LEVEL..... 179
SPEED LIMIT EXCEEDED 179
T.P.M.S. SYSTEM FAILURE..... 179
CHECK TYRE PRESSURE..... 179
LOW INFLATION PRESSURE..... 180
TYRE PRESSURE UNSUITABLE FOR SPEED 180

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING LIGHTS AND MESSAGES

GENERAL WARNINGS

Failure indications shown on the display are divided into two categories: very serious and less serious failures.

Every failure indication is accompanied by the turning on of the relevant warning light (where provided) and by dedicated warning messages, if any.

In certain cases, failure indications can be accompanied by the sound of a buzzer (adjustable).

These indications are concise and cautionary and are aimed to suggest the prompt action the driver must adopt when a car malfunctioning appears. These indications, however, shall not be considered as exhaustive and/or as an alternative to the specifications contained in this "Owner's Manual", which shall always be read through carefully and thoroughly.

In case of failure indication always refer to the specifications contained in this section.

Very serious failures

These failures are repeated on the display indefinitely and stop any previous indication on the display. These failures are repeated each time the key is fitted into the ignition device until the cause of malfunctioning is removed. To stop this "cycle" press button **MENU**: in this case the failure symbol stays on the display at the bottom of the screen until the cause of malfunctioning is removed.

Serious failures

These failures are repeated on the display for about 20 seconds and then they go off. These failures are repeated each time the key is fitted into the ignition device. At the end of the displaying cycle (approx. 20 seconds), or when pressing button **MENU**, the failure symbol will stay on the display at the bottom of the screen until the cause of malfunctioning is removed.

LOW BRAKE FLUID (red)

HANDBRAKE ON (red)

Fitting the key into the ignition device the warning light turns on, but it should go off after few seconds.

Low brake fluid level

The warning light turns on (on certain versions a dedicated message is displayed) when the level of the brake fluid in the reservoir falls below the minimum level, due to possible leak in the circuit.

Handbrake on

The warning light turns on when the handbrake is on.

WARNING

If the warning light turns on when travelling, check that the handbrake is not engaged. If the warning light stays on with handbrake disengaged, stop the car immediately and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BRAKE PAD WEAR (amber)

The warning light (where provided) turn on (on certain versions together with the message on the display) if the front brake pads are worn; in this case have them changed as soon as possible.

IMPORTANT Since the car is fitted with wear sensors for the front brake pads, when changing them, check also the rear brake pads.

SEAT BELTS NOT FASTENED (red)

The warning light turns on glowing steadily when:

❒ the driver's seat belt is not fastened correctly;

❒ the passenger's seat belt is not fastened correctly, heavy objects are placed on the passenger's seat;

❒ unfastening the driver's or the passenger's seat belt.

With car moving the warning light will turn on flashing together with the buzzer for a short time.

The warning light will then stay on glowing steadily.

The buzzer can be muted temporarily by the following procedure:

❒ fasten the front seat belts;

❒ fit the electronic key into the ignition device;

❒ wait for over 20 seconds but less than 1 minute and then unfasten one of the front seat belts.

This procedure will stand valid till next engine switching off.

For permanent deactivation, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services. The S.B.R. system can only be reset through the setup menu (see paragraph “Reconfigurable multifunction display” in section “Dashboard and controls”).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AIR BAG FAILURE (red)

Fitting the key into the ignition device the warning light turns on, but it should go off after few seconds.

The warning light stays on glowing steadily (on certain versions together with the message on the display) to indicate a failure in the air bag system.

WARNING

If the warning light does not turn on when fitting the key into the ignition device, or if stays on when travelling (on certain versions together with the message on the display), this could indicate a failure in safety retaining system; under this condition air bags or pretensioners could not trigger in the event of collision or, in a restricted number of cases, they could trigger accidentally. Before restarting contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

WARNING

Failure of the warning light is indicated by the flashing for more than the normal 4 seconds of the passenger's front air bag deactivated warning light. In addition, the air bag system will deactivate automatically the passenger's front air bag (front and side for versions/markets, where provided). In this event warning light could not indicate failure in safety systems. Before restarting contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services immediately to have the system checked.

PASSENGER'S FRONT AIR BAGS DEACTIVATED (amber)

The warning light (set on the front ceiling light panel) turns on when passenger's front air bags, passenger's knees air bag (where provided) and passenger's front side bag are deactivated through the relevant key switch (for versions/markets, where provided).

With passenger's air bags active, when fitting the electronic key into the ignition device the warning light will turn on for about 4 seconds, will flash for the next 4 seconds and then it will turn off.

WARNING

Warning light failure is indicated by warning light. In addition, the air bag system will deactivate automatically the passenger's front air bag (front and side). Before restarting contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services immediately to have the system checked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE COOLANT HIGH TEMPERATURE (red)

Fitting the key into the ignition device, the warning light (set on engine coolant gauge) turns on but it shall go off after a few seconds.

The warning light turns on (on certain versions a dedicated message is displayed) to indicate engine overheating.

If the warning light comes on, proceed as follows:

– **Normal driving conditions**: stop the car, switch off the engine and check whether the water level in the reservoir is not below the **MIN** marl. Otherwise wait for few seconds to allow engine cooling, then open slowly and carefully the cap, top up coolant and check whether its level is falling between **MIN** and **MAX** marks in the reservoir. Check visually any leak. If when restarting the warning light comes on again, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

– **Car heavy duty** (e.g.: towing trailer uphill or fully laden car): decrease speed, if the warning light stays on, stop the car. Wait for 2 or 3 minutes leaving the engine on and slightly accelerated to further activate the circulation of the coolant fluid, then switch the engine off.

IMPORTANT Under severe use of the car, keep the engine on and slightly accelerated for few minutes before switching it off.

WARNING

With engine hot, do not remove the cap: risk of burnt.

ENGINE OIL HIGH TEMPERATURE

Fitting the key into the ignition device, the warning light (set on engine oil temperature gauge) turns on but it should go off after a few seconds. Warning light turning on when travelling (on certain versions together with the message on the display) indicates that engine oil is too hot; switch the engine off and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

If warning light starts flashing when travelling contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MINIMUM ENGINE OIL LEVEL (RED)

When the electronic key is inserted into the starting device the display will show the engine oil level for a few seconds.

On some versions the display will show a message and a symbol if the engine oil level is too low. In this case, top up the engine oil to the correct level (see "Checking fluid levels" in "Car maintenance" chapter).

LIGHT STAYS ON:
LOW ENGINE OIL PRESSURE (red)
FLASHING LIGHT:
EXHAUSTED ENGINE OIL
(only Diesel versions with DPF - red)

When the electronic key is inserted into the starting device, the warning light switches on and should go out as soon as the engine is started.

1. Low engine oil pressare

The warning light turns on and stays on constantly (for versions/markets, where provided) along with the message on the display when the system detects that engine oil pressure is low.

WARNING

If the warning light turns on when the vehicle is travelling (on certain versions together with the message on the display) stop the engine immediately and contact a Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

2. Exhausted engine oil (only Diesel versions with DPF)

The warning light will flash and a specific message will appear on the display (for versions/markets, where provided). The warning light may flash in the following ways, depending on the version:

— for 1 minute every two hours;

— for 3 minute cycles with the warning light off for intervals of 5 seconds until oil is changed.

After the initial warning, each time the engine is started up, the warning light will continue to flash in the above mentioned modes, until the oil is changed. A specific message will appear on the display (for versions/markets, where provided) in addition to the warning light. If the warning light flashes, this does not mean that the car is defective but simply informs the driver that it is now necessary to change the oil as a result of regular vehicle use.

Note that engine oil is exhausted faster under the following circumstances:

— use of the vehicle prevalently for city driving, requiring more frequent regeneration of DPF

— use of the vehicle for short drives, in which the engine does not have time to reach its regular operating temperature

— repeated interruption of the regeneration process, signalled by the DPF warning light coming on.

WARNING

Exhausted engine oil should be replaced as soon as possible after the warning light comes on, never more than 500 km after the warning light first comes on. Failure to change the oil within the first 500 km may result in severe damage to the engine and will result in forfeiture of the warranty. Remember that when the warning light flashes, it does not mean that the level of engine oil is low, so if the light flashes you must not top up.

LOW BATTERY CHARGE (red)

The warning light (where provided) turns on, but it should go off as soon as the engine has started (with the engine running at idle speed a brief delay in going out is allowed).

If the warning light (or as an alternative, on certain versions, a symbol and a message are displayed) stays on glowing steadily or flashing contact immediately Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INCOMPLETE DOOR LOCKING (red)

The warning light (where provided) (or symbol on the display) turns on when one or more doors, the boot or the bonnet (where provided) are not properly shut.

BONNET OPEN

(for versions/markets, where provided)

On certain versions message and symbol (red) are displayed to indicate that bonnet is open.

BOOT OPEN

On certain versions message and symbol (red) are displayed to indicate that boot is open.

INJECTION SYSTEM FAILURE (diesel versions - amber)

EOBD SYSTEM FAILURE (petrol versions - amber)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Injection system failure

Fitting the key into the ignition device the warning light turns on, but it should go off when the engine has started.

The warning light stays on or it turns on when travelling to indicate a malfunction in the injection/exhaust system with possible lack of performance, poor driveability and high consumption.

In these conditions it is possible to continue driving without however requiring heavy effort or high speed from the engine. In any case, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

EOBD system failure

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Under normal conditions, fitting the electronic key into the ignition device, the warning light turns on, but it should go off when the engine has started. This indicates proper operation of the warning light.

If the warning light stays on or turns on when travelling:

– **glowing steadily** (on certain versions together with the message on the display): means a fault in the supply/ignition system which could cause high emissions at the exhaust, possible lack of performance, poor handling and high consumption levels. In these conditions it is possible to continue driving without however requiring heavy effort or high speed from the engine. Prolonged use of the car with the warning light on may cause damages. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

The warning light goes off if the fault disappears, but it is however stored by the system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– **flashing**: indicates the possibility of damage to the catalyst (see "EOBD system" in section "Dashboard and controls"). If the light flashes, it is necessary to release the accelerator pedal to lower the speed of the engine until the warning light stops flashing; continue the journey at moderate speed, trying to avoid driving conditions that may cause further flashing and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

If when fitting the key into the ignition device, the warning light does not turn on or if turns on with fixed light or flashing when the car is travelling, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible. Warning light operation can by checked by traffic agents by proper equipment therefore, comply with laws and regulations in force in the country where you are driving.

CAR PROTECTION SYSTEM FAILURE (amber)

STEERING LOCK INHIBITION (amber)

Car protection system failure

Warning light (where provided) coming on (on certain versions a message is displayed) indicates car protecting system failure: in this event contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

Steering lock inhibition

Warning light (where provided) turns on (on certain versions a message is displayed) when removing the electronic key from the ignition device when the car has turned off while travelling.

ALARM FAILURE (amber)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

BREAK-IN ATTEMPT (amber)

ELECTRONIC KEY NOT RECOGNIZED (amber)

Alarm failure

The turning on of the warning light (where provided) (on certain versions a message is displayed) indicates that there is a failure in the alarm system. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

Break-in attempt

The turning on of the warning light (where provided) (on certain versions a message is displayed) indicates an attempt of break-in. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

Electronic key not recognized

The turning on of the warning light (where provided) (on certain versions a message is displayed) indicates that the electronic key being used is not enabled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

POSSIBLE PRESENCE OF ICE ON THE ROAD

When the outside temperature reaches or falls below 3°C, the display will show a warning message, symbol ✡ to warn the driver of the possible presence of ice on the road.

On certain versions, once the above warning indication cycle is over or when pressing briefly the button **MENU**:

– the displayed message goes off and previously active screen is displayed again;

– temperature indication stops flashing;

– symbol ✡ stays displayed at the bottom right of the screen (until outside temperature is lower than or equal to 6°C).

This cycle is performed only once when the outside temperature read is lower than or equal to 3°C and it can be repeated only when outside temperature exceeds
6 °C and then falls down to 3 °C or below.

IMPORTANT In the event of outside temperature sensor failure, the display will show dashes instead of the value.

PRE-HEATING GLOW PLUGS (diesel versions - amber)

PRE-HEATING GLOW PLUGS FAILURE (diesel versions - amber)

Pre-heating glow plugs

Fitting the key into the ignition device the warning light turns on and it will turn off when glow plugs reach the preset temperature. Start the engine immediately after warning light switching off.

IMPORTANT With mild or hot ambient temperature, warning light stays on for very short time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pre-heating glow plugs failure

The warning light (on certain versions together with the message on the display) will flash to indicate a failure in the pre-heating glow plugs system. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.

WATER IN FUEL FILTER (diesel versions - amber)

The warning light turns on glowing steadily when travelling (on certain versions together with the message on the display) to indicate that there is water in the diesel fuel filter.

The presence of water in the fuel circuit may cause serious damage to the entire injection system and cause irregular engine operation. If the warning light on the dial turns on (on certain versions together with the message on the display) contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible to have the system relieved. If the above indications come on immediately after refuelling, water has probably been poured into the tank: turn the engine off immediately and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

INERTIAL FUEL CUT-OFF SWITCHED ON

On certain versions, the intervention of the inertial fuel cut-off switch is indicated by a message + symbol (amber) on the display.

WARNING

If, after a crash, you smell fuel or see leaks from the fuel system, do not reset the switch to avoid fire risk.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ABS SYSTEM FAILURE (amber)

Fitting the key into the ignition device the warning light turns on, but it should go off after few seconds.

The warning light turns on (on certain versions a dedicated message is displayed) when the system is inefficient. In this case the braking system keeps its effectiveness unchanged, but without the potential offered by the ABS system. Drive carefully and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

EBD SYSTEM FAILURE (red) (amber)

With the engine running the turning on at the same time of the (ABS) and (!) warning lights (on certain versions together with the message on the display) indicates that the EBD system is inefficient; in this case heavy braking may cause the rear wheels to lock before time, with the possibility of skidding.

Drive with the utmost care to the nearest Alfa Romeo Authorized Service to have the system checked.

VDC SYSTEM (amber)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Fitting the key into the ignition device the warning light turns on, but it should go off after few seconds.

The warning light flashes when the VDC cuts in, to alert the driver that the system is adapting to the road surface grip conditions.

VDC deactivation

When the VDC is deactivated manually (pressing the ASR/VDC button for 2 seconds) (see paragraph "VDC system" in section "Dashboard and controls") the instrument panel warning light turns on (on certain versions a message is displayed).

VDC failure

In case of failure, the VDC system will deactivate automatically and the instrument panel warning light Ⓐ will turn on glowing steadily (on certain versions a message will also be displayed). In this case contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HILL HOLDER FAILURE (amber)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Fitting the key into the ignition device, the warning light (where provided) turns on, but it should go off after a few seconds.

If the warning light stays on (on certain versions a message is displayed) there is a failure in the Hill Holder system. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

ASR SYSTEM (WHEEL ANTISKID SYSTEM) (amber)

Fitting the key into the ignition device the warning light turns on, but it should go off after few seconds. The warning light flashes when the system cuts in, to alert the driver that the system is adapting to the road surface grip conditions.

ASR deactivation

When the ASR is deactivated manually (pressing the ASR/VDC button) (see paragraph "ASR system" in section "Dashboard and controls") the ASR/VDC button turns on (on versions fitted with "Reconfigurable multifunction display" symbol is also displayed).

ASR failure

In the event of a failure the ASR system is deactivated automatically and on versions fitted with "Reconfigurable multifunction display" the symbol is displayed. In this case contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

EXTERNAL LIGHTS FAILURE (amber)

The warning light (where provided) turns on (on certain versions a message is displayed) when one of the following lights is failing:

– sidelights
– direction indicators
– rear fog guards
– number plate lights.

The failure referring to these lights could be: one or more blown bulbs, a blown protection fuse or an electric connection cut-off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BRAKE LIGHTS FAILURE (amber)

The warning light (where provided) turns on (on certain versions a message is displayed) when a failure at brake lights (stop) is detected. The failure could be due to: blown bulb, blown protection fuse or electric connection cut-off.

REAR FOG LIGHTS (amber)

The warning light turns on when the rear fog lights are turned on.

FRONT FOG LIGHTS (green)

The warning light turns on when the front fog lights are turned on.

SIDE/TAILLIGHTS (green)

FOLLOW ME HOME (green)

Sidelights

The warning light turns on when side/taillights are turned on.

Follow me home

The warning light comes on (together with the message on the display) when the Follow me home device is activated (see paragraph "Follow me home" in section "Dashboard and controls").

DIPPED BEAM HEADLIGHTS (green)

The warning light turns on when the dipped beams are turned on.

MAIN BEAM HEADLIGHTS (blue)

The warning light turns on when the main beams are turned on.

LEFT-HAND DIRECTION INDICATOR (green)

The warning light turns on when the direction indicator stalk is moved downwards or, together with the right indicator, when the hazard light button is pressed.

RIGHT-HAND DIRECTION INDICATOR (green)

The warning light turns on when the direction indicator stalk is moved upwards or, together with the left indicator, when the hazard light button is pressed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LIGHT SENSOR FAILURE (amber)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The warning light (or as an alternative, on certain versions, a symbol and a message are displayed) turns on to indicate a failure at the light sensor.

RAIN SENSOR FAILURE (amber)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The warning light (where provided) turns on (on certain versions a message is displayed) when the rain sensor is failing.

PARKING SENSOR FAILURE (amber)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The warning light (or as an alternative, on certain versions, a symbol and a message are displayed) turns on to indicate a failure at parking sensors.

FUEL RESERVE - LIMITED CRUISING RANGE (amber)

The warning light on the fuel level gauge turns on when about 10 litres fuel are left in the tank. On certain versions. the display will show a warning message when the cruising range is less than 50 km (or 31 mi).

If warning light ⛽ starts flashing when travelling contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

CRUISE CONTROL (green)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The warning light turns on (on certain versions a dedicated message is displayed) when turning the the knurled ring of the Cruise Control to ⏲.

CLEANING DPF (PARTICULATE FILTER) IN PROGRESS (only Diesel versions with DPF - amber)

When the electronic key is inserted into the starting device, the warning light switches on but it must switch off after a few seconds. The warning light comes on constantly to notify the driver that the DPF system needs to eliminate captured pollutants (particulate) by the regeneration process. The warning light does not come on during every DPF regeneration, but only when driving conditions require notification of the driver. To switch the warning light off, the car must stay in motion until regeneration has been completed. The process normally takes about 15 minutes. The optimum conditions to end the process are achieved by keeping the car in motion up to 60 km/h with an engine speed higher than 2,000 rpm. This light coming on is not a car defect and therefore the car does not need to go to the workshop. A specific message will appear on the display when the warning light comes on (for versions/markets, where provided).

WARNING

Always drive at a speed appropriate to the traffic conditions, the weather and speed limits. The engine may be turned off while the DPF light is on; however, repeated interruption of the regeneration process may result in premature exhaustion of engine oil. For this reason it is always advisable to wait for the light to go off before turning off the engine, following the instructions appearing above. It is not advisable to complete DPF regeneration with the vehicle stationary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ANTIPINCH SYSTEM FAILURE (amber)

The warning light (or as an alternative, on certain versions, a symbol and a message are displayed) turns on when a failure is detected in the antipinch system.

Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

WINDSCREEN WASHER FLUID LOW LEVEL (amber)

The warning light (where provided) turns on (on certain versions a message is displayed) when the windscreen washer fluid level falls down the preset min. level.

SPEED LIMIT EXCEEDED

The display will show a warning message + symbol (red) and the buzzer will sound when the car exceeds the speed limit set through the "Setup menu" (e.g.: 120 km/h) (see paragraphs "Multifunction Display" or "Reconfigurable Multifunction Display" in section "Dashboard and controls").

T.P.M.S. SYSTEM FAILURE

(for versions/markets, where provided)

On certain versions the display will show a warning message + symbol (amber) when a failure is detected in the T.P.M.S. system (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System). Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

Should one or more wheels without sensor be fitted, the display will show a warning message until initial conditions are restored.

CHECK TYRE PRESSURE

(for versions/markets, where provided)

On some versions, the display shows a message + symbol (amber) to indicate that the tyre pressure is below the recommended value which ensures the long life of the tyre and optimum fuel consumption, and/or to indicate a slow pressure leak. If two or more tyres are in one of the above-mentioned conditions, the display will show the message relating to each tyre in succession. In this case, it is advisable to check and adjust the tyre pressures (see "Technical Specification" section).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LOW TYRE PRESSURE

(for versions/markets, where provided)

On certain versions the display will show a warning message + symbol (red) (and buzzer will sound) when the pressure of one or more tyres falls below the preset threshold. In this way the T.P.M.S. system warns the driver that tyre/s is/are dangerously flat; possible puncture.

IMPORTANT Stop immediately with one or more tyres flat, avoid braking sharply and abrupt turns. Replace immediately the punctured tyre with the space-saver spare wheel (for versions/markets, where provided) or repair the puncture tyre using the proper kit (see paragraph "If a tyre is punctured" in section "In an emergency") and then contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

TYRE PRESSURE UNSUITABLE FOR SPEED

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Should it be required to journey at a speed higher than 160 km/h, inflate tyres at full load pressures (see paragraph "Cold inflation pressures" in section "Technical Specifications").

On certain versions, if the T.P.M.S. system detects that the pressure of one or more tyres is unsuitable for the current speed the display will show a message + symbol (amber) that will stay on until the car speed slow downs below the preset threshold.

IMPORTANT In this case slow down immediately since tyre overheating could impair tyre performance and life beyond repair, and even make the tyre to blow-out.

IMPORTANT Should you have to journey anyway a speed higher than 160 km/h, stop the car when the display shows the warning symbol to inflate tyres to the proper pressure values (see paragraph "Cold inflation pressures" in section "Technical Specifications ").

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IN AN EMERGENCY

In an emergency we recommend that you call the toll-free number found on the Warranty Booklet. You can also connect to the site www.alfaromeo.com to search for the nearest Alfa Romeo Authorized Services point.

JUMP STARTING 182
IF A TYRE IS PUNCTURED 183
QUICK TYRE REPAIR KIT
FIX&GO automatic 190
WHEN NEEDING TO CHANGE A BULB 196
IF AN EXTERIOR LIGHT BURNS OUT 199
IF AN INTERIOR LIGHT BURNS OUT 205
IF A FUSE BLOWS 209
IF THE BATTERY IS FLAT 219
JACKING THE CAR 220
TOWING THE CAR 221

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

JUMP STARTING

If the battery is flat, it is possible to start the engine using an auxiliary battery with the same capacity or a little higher than the flat one.

Proceed as follows **fig. 1**:

❒ Connect positive terminals (+ near the terminal) of the two batteries with a jump lead;

❒ With a second lead, connect the negative terminal (—) of the auxiliary battery and to an earthing point ⏚ on the engine of the car to be started;

❒ Start the engine;

❒ When the engine has been started, remove the leads reversing the order above.

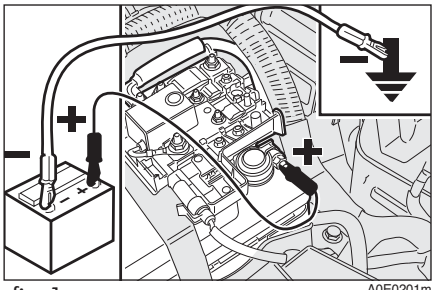


fig. 1

If after a few attempts the engine does not start, do not insist but contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Service.

IMPORTANT Do not directly connect the negative terminals of the two batteries: sparks could ignite the flammable gas from the battery. If the other battery is fitted in another car, prevent accidental contacts between the metal parts of the two cars.

Under no circumstances should a battery charger be used to start the engine: it could damage the electronic systems and in particular the ignition and injection control units.

WARNING

Do not carry out this procedure if you lack experience; if it is not done correctly it can cause very intense electrical discharges. In addition, the fluid contained in the battery is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with skin and eyes. You are also advised not to put naked flames or lighted cigarettes near the battery and not to cause sparks.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BUMP STARTING

Never bump start the engine (by pushing, towing, or coasting downhill) as this could cause fuel to flow into the catalytic exhaust system and damage it beyond repair.

WARNING

Remember that the brake booster and the power steering system are not operating until the engine is started, a greater effort will therefore be required to press the brake pedal or turn the steering wheel.

IF A TYRE IS PUNCTURED

For versions/markets, where provided applicable, the car can be equipped with the "Quick tyre repair kit Fix&Go automatic". Operations required to change a wheel are described in the following chapter.

As an alternative to the kit "Fix & Go automatic", the car can be provided (upon request) with space-saver spare wheel or standard size spare wheel; wheel changing and correct use of the jack and space-saver spare wheel call for some precautions as listed below.

WARNING

Alert other drivers that the car is stationary in compliance with local regulations: hazard warning lights, warning triangle etc. Any passengers on board should leave the car, especially if it is heavily laden. Passengers should stay away from oncoming traffic while the wheel is being changed on. If the wheel is being changed on a steep or badly surfaced road, place the wedges or other suitable material under the wheel to stop the car. Never start the engine when the car is jacked up. If you were towing a trailer, uncouple the trailer before jacking the car.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

The space-saver spare wheel (for versions/ markets, where provided) is specific to your car; do not use it on other models, or use the spare wheel of other models on your car. The space-saver spare wheel shall only be used in an emergency. It shall only be used for the distance necessary to reach a service point and the car speed shall not exceed 80 Km/h. The spare wheel has a sticker that summarises the main cautions for use and limitations. The sticker should never be removed or covered!. Never fit a wheel cap on a space-saver spare wheel.

WARNING

When driving with a space-saver spare wheel fitted, the driving performance of the car changes. Avoid accelerating or braking sharply, abrupt turns or fast cornerings. The life of the spare wheel is approx. 3000 Km, after this distance it should be replaced with another of the same type. Never attempt to fit a conventional tyre on a rim designed for use as a space-saver spare wheel. Have the punctured wheel repaired and refitted as soon as possible. Two or more space-saver spare wheels should never be used together. Do not grease the threads of bolts before installing them: they might slip out.

WARNING

The jack shall only be used for changing wheels on the car with which it is provided or on cars of the same model. It must not be used for other purposes such as for instance raising cars of other models. In no case should it be used for repairs under the car. Incorrect positioning of the jack may cause the jacked car to fall. Do not use the jack for higher capacities than stated on its label. Snow chains cannot be fitted to the space-saver spare wheel. So, if a front (drive) wheel is punctured and chains are needed, a rear wheel should be fitted to the front of the car and the spare wheel should be fitted to the rear. This way with two normal drive wheels, snow chains can be fitted to them to solve an emergency.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Never tamper with the inflation valve. Never place tools between the rim and tyre. Check and restore, if required, the pressure of tyres and spare wheel to the values given in section "Technical Specifications".

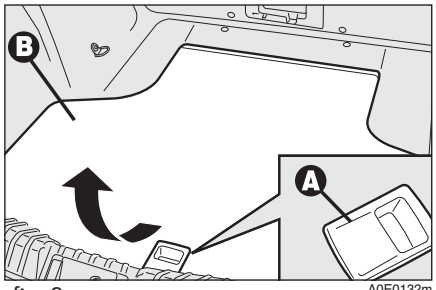


fig. 2

Please note:

- ❒ the jack weight is 1.76 kg;
- ❒ the jack requires no adjustment;
- ❒ the jack cannot be repaired. If it breaks it must be replaced with a new jack;
- ❒ no tool other than its cranking device may be fitted on the jack.

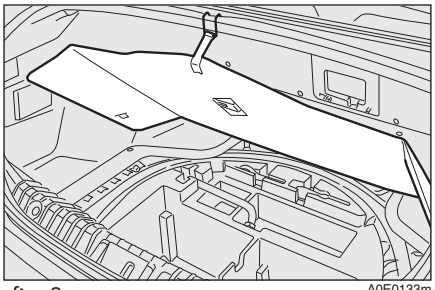


fig. 3

To change a wheel proceed as follows:

- ❒ Stop the car in a position that is not dangerous for oncoming traffic where you can change the wheel safely. The ground should be flat and adequately firm;
- ❒ Turn the engine off, pull up the handbrake and engage first gear or reverse;
- ❒ Using handle **A-fig. 2**, lift the stiff cover **B** and secure it as shown in **fig. 3**;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

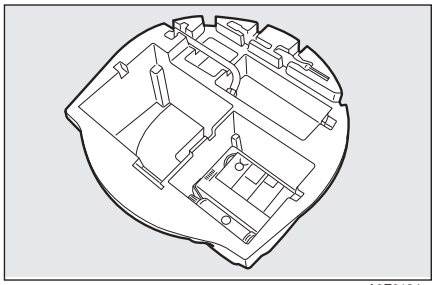


fig. 4 A0E0134m

❒ Take out the tool container **fig. 4**;

❒ Loosen the bolts of the wheel to be replaced by about one turn with the wrench provided **A-fig. 5**; if the car is fitted with alloy rims, shake the car to facilitate removing this rim from the wheel hub;

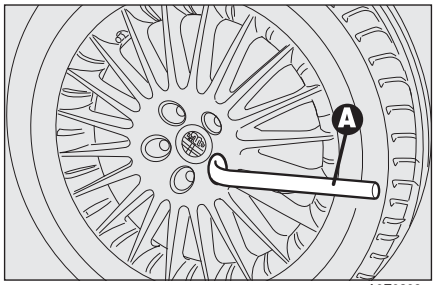


fig. 5 A0E0206m

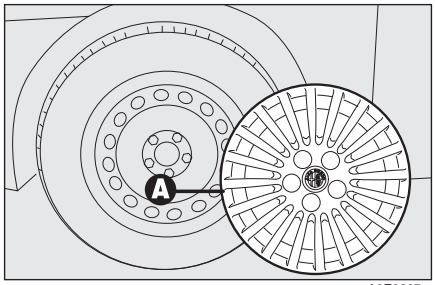


fig. 6 A0E0207m

❒ Remove the wheel cap **A-fig. 6** (only versions with steel rims);

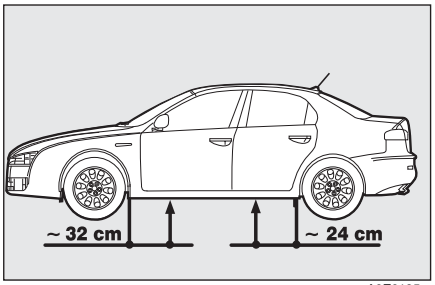


fig. 7 A0E0195m

❒ The jack shall be fitted as shown in **fig. 7** (for versions fitted with sideskirts, before fitting the jack, remove cover **A-fig. 9** set on the sideskirt as shown in the figure);

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

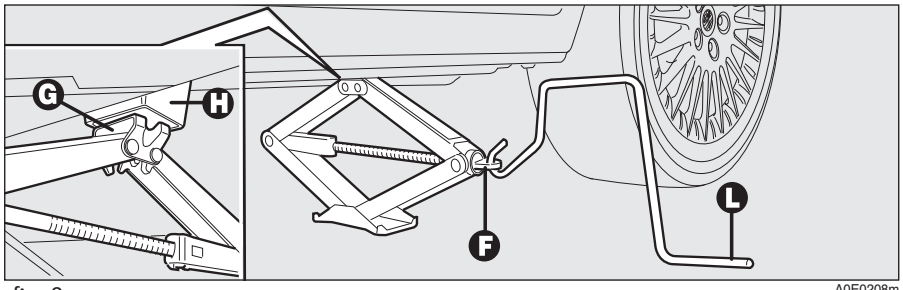


fig. 8

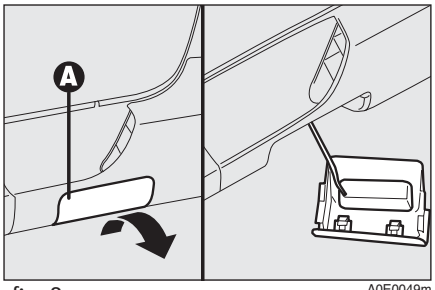


fig. 9

❒ Operate the device **F-fig. 8** to extend the jack until the top of the jack **G** fits correctly into catch **H**;

❒ Warn anybody nearby that the car is about to be lifted. They must stay clear and not touch the car until it is back on the ground;

❒ Fit the handle **L-fig. 8** to operate the jack and lift the car until the wheel to be changed is several centimetres off the ground;

❒ Loosen the fastening bolts and then remove the wheel;

❒ Make sure the contact surfaces between space-saver spare wheel and hub are clean so that the fastening bolts will not come loose;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

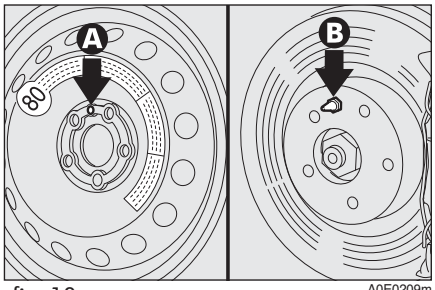


fig. 10 A0E0209m

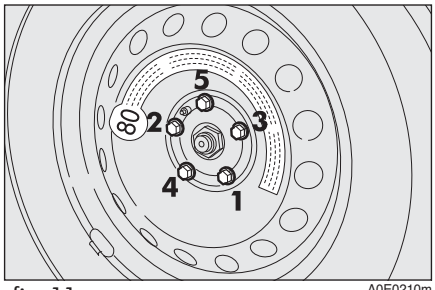


fig. 11 A0E0210m

❒ fit the space-saver spare wheel making one of the holes **A-fig. 10** coincide with the relevant pin **B**;

❒ Using the wrench provided, fully tighten the five fastening bolts;

❒ Lower the car and remove the jack;

❒ Use the wrench provided to fasten the bolts completely in a criss-cross fashion according to the sequence shown in **fig. 11**.

REFITTING A NORMAL WHEEL

Following the procedure described previously, raise the car and remove the spare wheel.

Versions with steel rims

Proceed as follows:

❒ Make sure the contact surfaces between standard wheel and hub are clean so that the fastening bolts will not come loose;

❒ Fit the standard wheel taking into account that pin **B-fig. 10** shall coincide with one of the holes **A**;

❒ Place the wheel cap on the wheel rim making symbol ✠, (marked inside the wheel cap), coincide with the inflation valve **fig. 12**;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

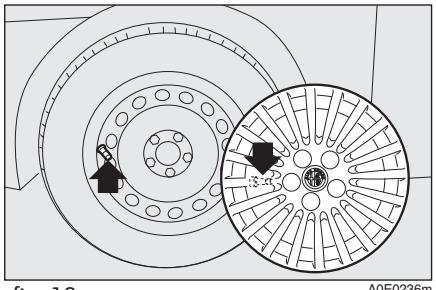


fig. 12

- ❒ Using the wrench provided, tighten the fastening bolts;
- ❒ Lower the car and remove the jack;
- ❒ Using the wrench provided, fully tighten the bolts in the sequence shown in **fig. 11**;

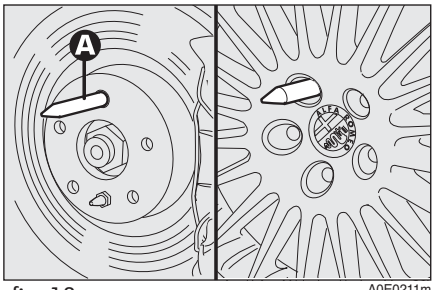


fig. 13

Versions with alloy rims

Proceed as follows:

- ❒ tighten pin **A-fig. 13** in one of the holes of the wheel hub fastening bolts;
- ❒ insert the wheel on the pin and, using the wrench provided, tighten the four bolts available;
- ❒ loosen pin **A-fig. 13** and tighten the last fastening bolt;
- ❒ lower the car and remove the jack, then, using the wrench provided tighten the bolts according to the sequence previously shown for the space-saver spare wheel **fig. 11**.

When you have finished:

- ❒ Stow the spare wheel in the space provided in the boot;
- ❒ Fit the jack partially open in its container forcing it lightly to prevent it from vibrating when travelling;
- ❒ Put the tools back into their places in the container;
- ❒ Arrange the container complete with tools on the space-saver spare wheel;
- ❒ Reposition properly the boot stiff covering.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

QUICK TYRE REPAIR KIT FIX&GO automatic

The car is provided with the quick tyre repair kit "FIX&GO automatic", instead of the traditional tool kit and space-saver spare wheel.

The kit **fig. 14** is placed in the boot. In this container are also housed the screwdriver and the tow hitch.

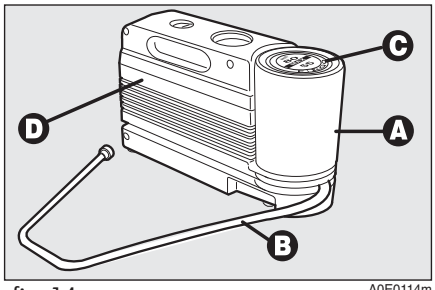


fig. 14 A0E0114m

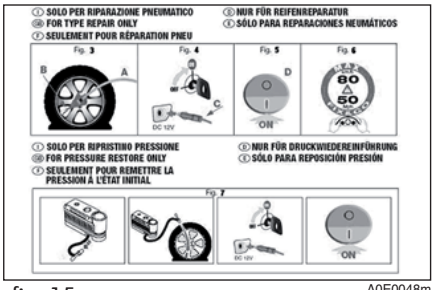


fig. 15 A0E0048m

The quick tyre repair kit includes:

- ❒ a bottle **A-fig. 14** containing the sealer, fitted with:
  - filling pipe **B**
  - sticker **C** bearing the notice "max. 80 km/h", to be placed in a position visible to the driver (on the instrument panel) after fixing the tyre;
- ❒ compressor **D** with pressure gauge and fittings;
- ❒ instruction brochure **fig. 15**, to be used for prompt and proper use of the quick repair kit and to be then handed to the personnel charged with handling the tyre treated with the tyre repair kit;
- ❒ a pair of protection gloves located in the side space of the compressor;
- ❒ adapters for inflating different elements.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Hand the instruction brochure to the personnel charged with treating the tyre repaired with the kit.

In the event of a puncture caused by foreign bodies, it is possible to repair tyres showing damages on the track or shoulder up to max 4 mm diameter.

It should be noticed that:

The sealing fluid of the quick tyre repair kit is effective with external temperatures between –20°C and +50°C. The sealing fluid has limited life.

WARNING

Holes and damages on the tyre side walls cannot be repaired. Do not use the quick tyre repair kit if damaging is due to running with flat tyre.

WARNING

Repairs are not possible in case of damages on the wheel rim (bad groove distortion causing air loss). Do not remove foreign bodies (screws or nails) from the tyre.

WARNING

The cylinder contains ethylene glycol. The cylinder contains latex: it can cause allergic reactions. It is harmful if ingested or inhaled and irritant for the eyes and in case of contact. In case of contact rinse immediately with water and take off contaminated clothes. If swallowed, do not induce vomit, rinse out the mouth, drink a lot of water and call the doctor immediately. Keep away from children. This product must not be used by asthmatics. Do not inhale vapours. Call the doctor immediately in case of allergic reactions. Keep the cylinder in the space provided for the purpose and far from heat. The sealing fluid has limited life.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

The compressor shall not be operated for more than 20 minutes. Risk of overheating!. Tyres repaired with the quick tyre repair kit shall be used temporarily only.

Replace the cylinder if sealer has run out. Do not throw away the cylinder and the sealing fluid. Have the sealing fluid and the cylinder disposed of in compliance with national and local regulations.

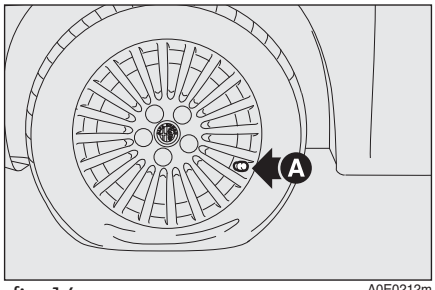


fig. 16 A0E0212m

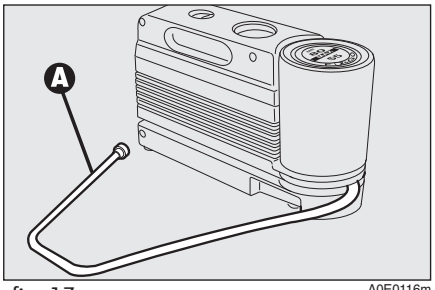


fig. 17 A0E0116m

INFLATING PROCEDURE

WARNING

Put on the protection gloves provided together with quick tyre repair kit.

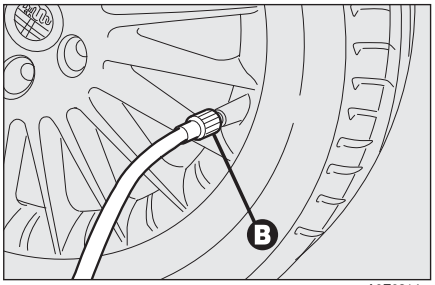


fig. 18 A0E0214m

Proceed as follows:

❒ set the wheel to be repaired with valve **A-fig. 16** in the position shown in the figure, **then pull up the handbrake**, take the quick tyre repair kit and put it on the ground near the wheel to be repaired;

❒ loosen tyre inflation valve cap, take out the filler hose **A-fig. 17** and screw the ring nut **B-fig. 18** on the tyre valve;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

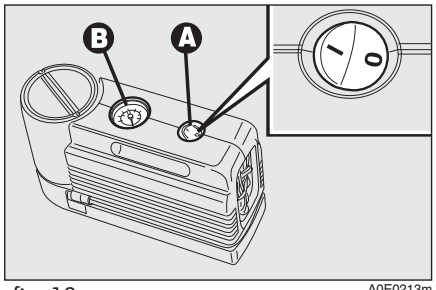


fig. 19 A0E0213m

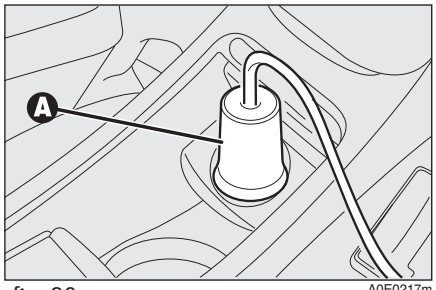


fig. 20 A0E0217m

❒ make sure the compressor switch **A-fig. 19** is set to **0** (off), start the engine and fit plug **A-fig. 20** into the outlet/cigar lighter on the front console and then turn on the compressor by setting switch **A-fig. 19** to **I** (on);

❒ Inflate the tyre to the pressure specified in paragraph "Wheels" in section "Technical Specifications". Check tyre pressure on gauge **B-fig. 19** with compressor off to obtain precise reading;

❒ if after 5 minutes it is still impossible to reach at least 1.5 bar, disengage compressor from valve and current outlet, then move the car forth for approx. 10 metres in order to distribute the sealing fluid inside the tyre evenly, then repeat the inflation operation;

❒ If after this operation it is still impossible after 5 minutes to reach at least 1.8 bar, do start driving since the tyre is excessively damaged and the quick tyre repair kit cannot guarantee suitable sealing, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services;

❒ after reaching the tyre pressure specified in paragraph "Wheels" in section "Technical Specifications", start driving immediately;

WARNING

Apply the sticker in a visible position for the driver to indicate that the tyre has been treated with the quick tyre repair kit. Drive carefully especially when cornering and do not exceed 80 km/h. Avoid heavy braking and accelerating.

❒ after driving for about 10 minutes stop and check again the tyre pressure; **pull up the handbrake**;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

If pressure falls below 1.8 bar, stop the car since the tyre is excessively damaged and the quick tyre repair kit Fix & Go automatic cannot guarantee suitable sealing, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

- ❒ if at least 1.8 bar pressure is read, restore proper pressure (with engine running and handbrake on) and restart;
- ❒ drive with the utmost care to the nearest Alfa Romeo Authorized Service.

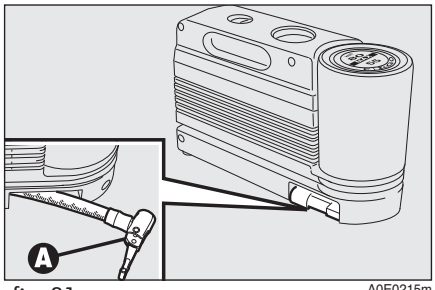


fig. 21 A0E0215m

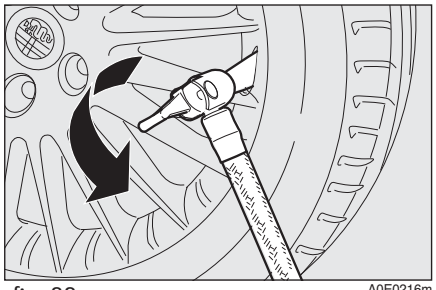


fig. 22 A0E0216m

WARNING

You shall absolutely communicate that the tyre has been repaired with the quick tyre repair kit. Hand the instruction brochure to the personnel charged with treating the tyre repaired with the kit.

CHECKING AND RESTORING PRESSURE ONLY

The compressor can be also used just for restoring pressure.

Disconnect the quick connection **A-fig. 21** and connect it directly to the tyre valve **fig. 22**; in this way the cylinder is not connected to compressor and the sealing fluid will not flow into the tyre.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

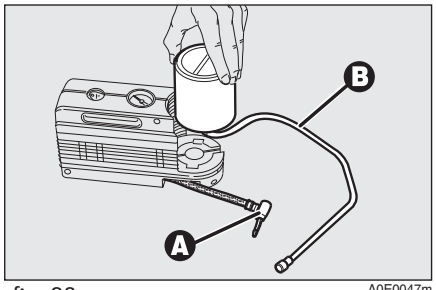


fig. 23 A0E0047m

CYLINDER REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

To replace the cylinder proceed as follows:

- ❒ disconnect connection **A-fig. 23** and hose **B**;
- ❒ turn counter-clockwise the cylinder to replace and raise it;
- ❒ fit the new cylinder and turn it clockwise;
- ❒ refit connection **A** or connect hose **B** into its seat.

WARNING

Inform other people driving the car that the tyre has been repaired using the quick tyre kit. Hand the sticker to the personnel that will carry out restoring operations.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WHEN NEEDING TO CHANGE A BULB

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

- ❒ When a light is not working, check that the corresponding fuse is intact before changing a bulb. For the location of fuses, refer to the paragraph "If a fuse blows" in this section;
- ❒ Before changing a bulb check the contacts for oxidation;
- ❒ Burnt bulbs must be replaced by others of the same type and power;
- ❒ Always check the height of the headlight beam after changing a bulb.

IMPORTANT The headlight inner surface may be lightly misted over: this is not a fault but a natural fact due to low temperature and the level of air humidity. It will disappear as soon the headlights are turned on. The presence of drops inside the headlights means water infiltration, therefore contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

WARNING

Halogen bulbs must be handled touching only the metallic part. If the transparent bulb is touched with the fingers, its lighting intensity is reduced and life of the bulb may be compromised. If touched accidentally, rub the bulb with a cloth moistened with alcohol and allow to dry.

WARNING

Modifications or repairs to the electrical system (electronic control units) carried out incorrectly and without bearing the features of the system in mind can cause malfunctions with the risk of fire.

WARNING

Halogen bulbs contain pressurised gas which, if broken, may cause small fragments of glass to be projected outwards.

WARNING

Due to high voltage, the bulb of (Bixenon) gas-discharge headlights must only be replaced by experts: danger of death! Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

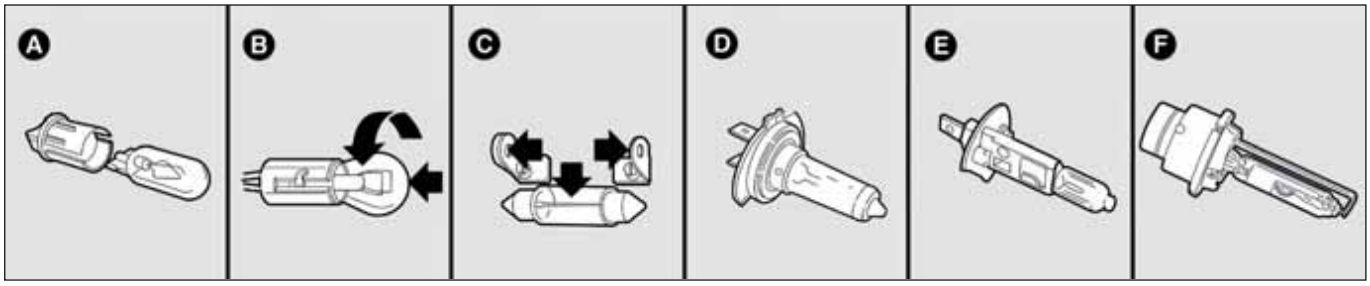


fig. 24 A0E0117m

TYPES OF BULBS fig. 24

Various types of bulbs are fitted to your car:

A **Glass bulbs:** clipped into position. Pull to remove.

B **Bayonet type bulbs:** press the bulb, turn counter-clockwise to remove this type of bulb from its holder.

C **Tubular bulbs:** release them from their contacts to remove.

D-E **Halogen bulbs:** to remove the bulb, release the clip holding the bulb in place.

F **Gas-discharge bulbs (Bixenon)**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BULBS	FIGURE 24	TYPE	POWER
Main beam headlights	D	H7	55W
Dipped beam headlights	D	H7	55W
Main beams/Dipped beams (versions with Bixenon headlights) (where provided)	F	D1S	55W
Additional main beams (where provided)	D	H1	55W
Front sidelights (1 per headlight)	A	W5WB	5W
Taillights (1 on fixed light unit - 1 on mobile light unit)	B	P21/5W	5W
Front fog lights	E	H7	55W
Front direction indicator	B	PY21W	21W
Side direction indicator	A	W5W	5W
Rear direction indicator	B	P21W	21W
Brake lights	B	P21/5W	21W
Third brake light	A	W2,3W	2,3W
Reversing light	B	P21W	21W
Rear fog lights	B	P21W	21W
Number plate lights	A	W5W	5W
Front ceiling light	2xA+1C	2xW5+10W	5+5+10W
Boot light	C	10W	10W
Rear ceiling light	A	2xW5W	5+5W
Courtesy mirror lights	A	1,5W	1.5W
Glovebox light	A	W5W	5W
Puddle/door lights	A	W5W	5W

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IF AN EXTERIOR LIGHT BURNS OUT

For the type of bulb and power rating, see “When needing to change a bulb”.

FRONT LIGHT UNITS

The front light units contain main beam, sidelights, direction indicator and dipped beam bulbs.

To change the bulbs, turn cap counter-clockwise and then remove it.

The bulbs are arranged inside the light unit **fig. 25/a** as follows:

A Main beam headlights

B Sidelights/direction indicators

C Dipped beam headlights

WARNING

After replacement, refit the covers correctly checking that they are properly secured.

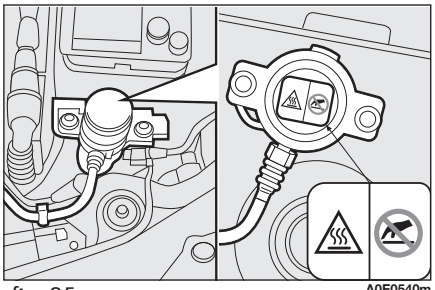


fig. 25

Main beam headlights (halogen bulbs)

On some versions a special brake servo vacuum unit is fitted which has to be removed in order to be able to replace the left main beam headlamp halogen bulb. The vacuum unit is located next to the battery drip tray (**fig. 25**).

WARNING

It should be remembered that the vacuum unit operates at high temperatures: avoid touching it with your hands, danger of scalding! Any operations not carried out following the rules could adversely affect the operation of the braking system and therefore the safety of the vehicle.

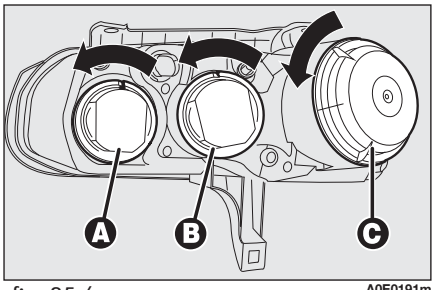


fig. 25/a

On versions with a brake servo vacuum unit, the description is given purely as an example; this operation must be carried out by Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

❒ remove cover **A-fig. 25/a** by turning it counter-clockwise;

❒ disconnect the electric connector **A-fig. 26**;

❒ release the bulb holder catch **B**;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

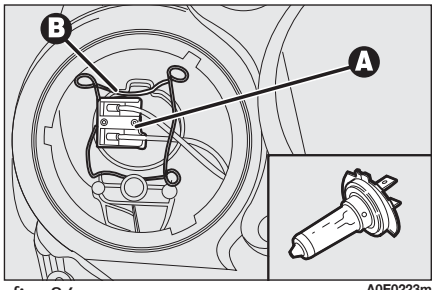


fig. 26

❒ remove the bulb and replace it;

❒ fit the new bulb and refit bulb holder catch **B-fig. 26**;

❒ reconnect the electrical connector **A**;

❒ refit the protective cover properly.

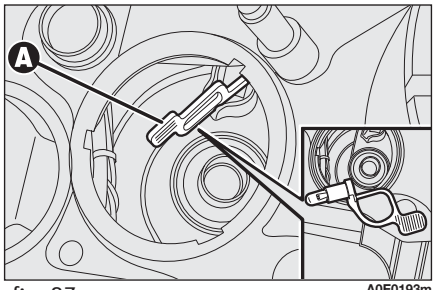


fig. 27

Sidelights

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

❒ turn cover **B-fig. 25** counter-clockwise;

❒ press tab **A-fig. 27**, remove the bulb and replace it;

❒ refit the bulb holder, it shall click into place; look at the light from the outside to check for proper bulb positioning;

❒ refit the protective cover properly.

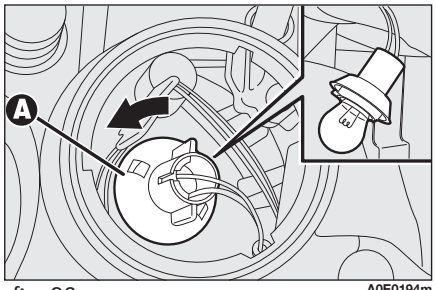


fig. 28

Front direction indicators

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

❒ turn cover **B-fig. 25** counter-clockwise;

❒ turn the bulb holder **A-fig. 28** counterclockwise, remove the bulb and replace it;

❒ refit the bulb holder, it shall click into place; look at the light from the outside to check for proper bulb positioning;

❒ refit the protective cover properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

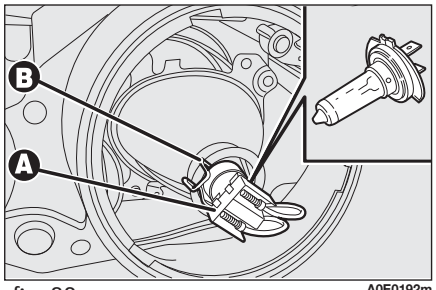


fig. 29 A0E0192m

Dipped beam headlights (halogen bulbs)

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

❒ turn cover **C-fig. 25** counter-clockwise;

❒ disconnect the electric connector **A-fig. 29**;

❒ release the bulb holder catch **B**;

❒ remove the bulb and replace it;

❒ fit the new bulb and refit bulb holder catch **B-fig. 29**;

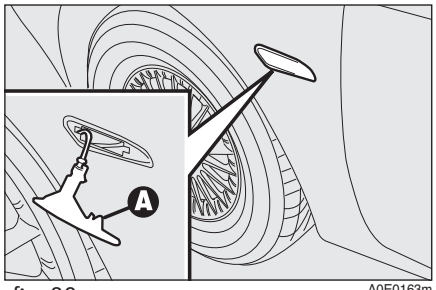


fig. 30 A0E0163m

Gas-discharge dipped beam/main beam headlights (Bixenon) (where provided)

WARNING

Due to high voltage, the bulb of (Bixenon) gas-discharge headlights must only be replaced by experts: danger of death! Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

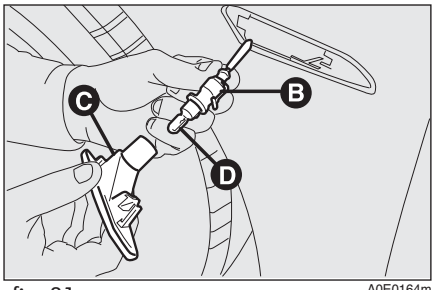


fig. 31 A0E0164m

Side direction indicators

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

❒ push the lens by hand in opposite running direction in order to press the catch **A-fig. 30**. Release the front part and remove the unit;

❒ turn the bulb holder **B-fig. 31** counterclockwise and remove it from lens **C**.

❒ remove bulb **D** and replace it;

❒ fit the bulb holder **B** into the lens **C** then position the unit, the catch shall click into place **A-fig. 30**.

Be careful not to damage the car body or the lens.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

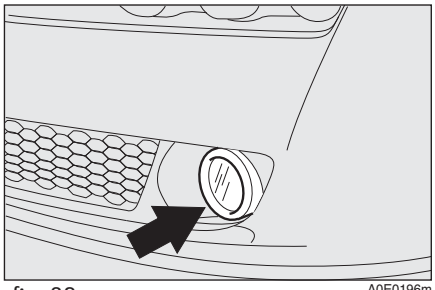


fig. 32 A0E0196m

Front fog lights fig. 32 (where provided)

IMPORTANT Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have front fog lights replaced and adjusted.

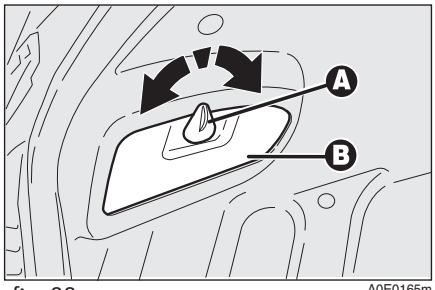


fig. 33 A0E0165m

REAR LIGHT UNITS

Rear light units contain: reversing light, rear fog light, direction indicators, taillights, number plate lights, brake light and third brake light bulbs.

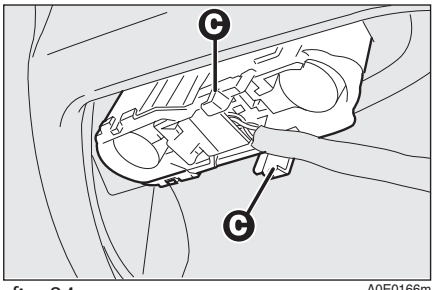


fig. 34 A0E0166m

Reversing light/rear fog lights

To replace the bulbs proceed as follows:

❒ open the tailgate;

❒ turn device **A-fig. 33** to open lid **B**;

❒ lower the lid and remove the bulb holder unit by pressing the retaining tabs **C-fig. 34**;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

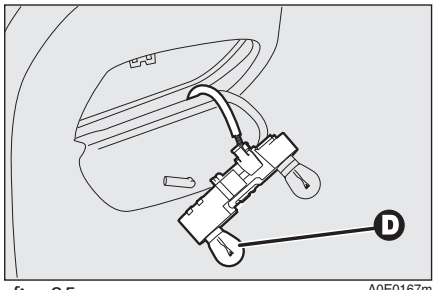


fig. 35 A0E0167m

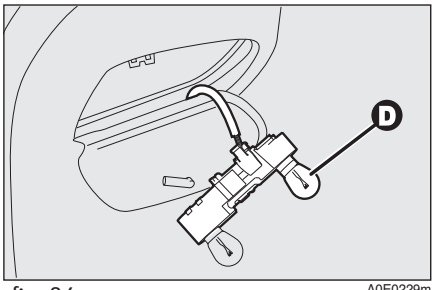


fig. 36 A0E0229m

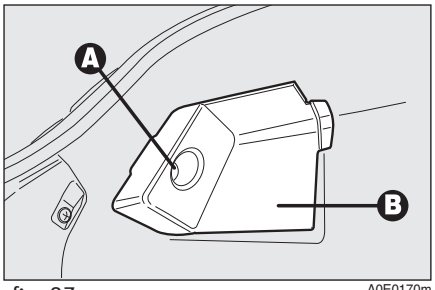


fig. 37 A0E0170m

❒ remove and replace the burnt-out bulb by pressing it slightly and turning it counterclockwise **fig. 35**:

D: reversing light bulb on passenger side (or right side);

D: reversing light bulb on driver side (or left side)

❒ refit the bulb holder unit securing it properly using the retaining tabs **C-fig. 34**;

❒ close lid **B-fig. 33**.

Taillight bulb on tailgate

To replace the bulbs proceed as follows:

❒ open the tailgate;

❒ turn device **A-fig. 33** to open lid **B**;

❒ lower the lid and remove the bulb holder unit by pressing the retaining tabs **C-fig. 34**;

❒ remove and replace the burnt-out bulb by pressing it slightly and turning it counterclockwise **fig. 36**:

D: taillight bulb on right/left headlight

❒ refit the bulb holder unit securing it properly using the retaining tabs **C-fig. 34**;

❒ close lid **B-fig. 33**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

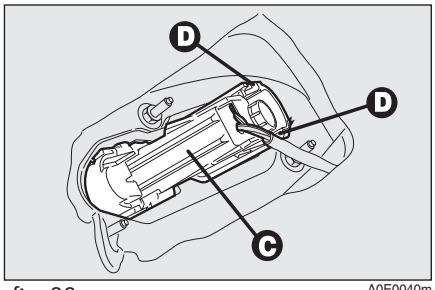


fig. 38 A0E0040m

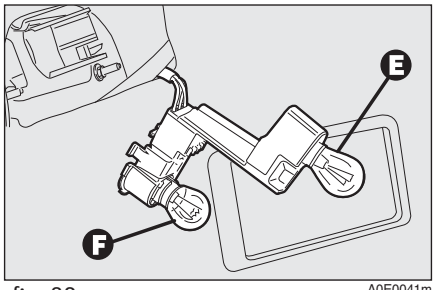


fig. 39 A0E0041m

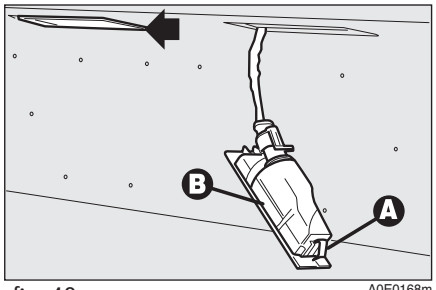


fig. 40 A0E0168m

Direction indicators/ Taillights/Brake lights

To replace the bulbs proceed as follows:

❒ open the tailgate;

❒ loosen screw **A-fig. 37** and remove the protection cover **B**;

❒ remove the bulb holder unit **C-fig. 38** by pressing the retaining tabs **D**.

❒ remove and replace the burnt-out bulb by pressing it slightly and turning it counter-clockwise **fig. 39**:

E taillight/brake light bulb;

F direction indicator bulb.

❒ refit the bulb holder unit securing it properly using the retaining tabs **D-fig. 38**;

❒ refit the protection cover **B-fig. 37** and tighten screw **A**.

Number plate light

To replace the bulbs proceed as follows:

❒ operate with a flat blade screwdriver protected by a soft cloth on device **A-fig. 40** to remove the light unit **B**;

❒ remove the bulb holder **C-fig. 41** by turning it slightly and replace the snap-fitted bulb **D**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

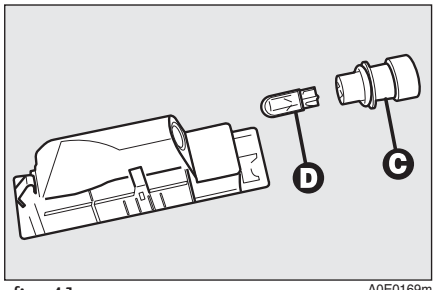


fig. 41 A0E0169m

Additional brake light (third stop)

Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the third brake light replaced.

IF AN INTERIOR LIGHT BURNS OUT

For the type of bulb and power rating, see “When needing to change a bulb”.

FRONT CEILING LIGHT

Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to change the bulb.

REAR CEILING LIGHT

Versions without sunroof

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

❒ remove the front ceiling light working in the points shown by the arrows (see **fig. 42**);

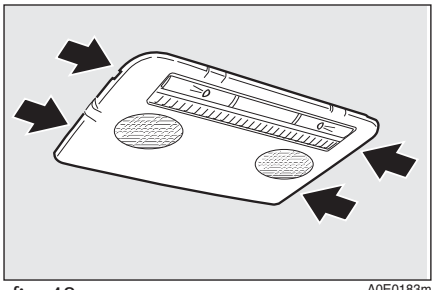


fig. 42 A0E0183m

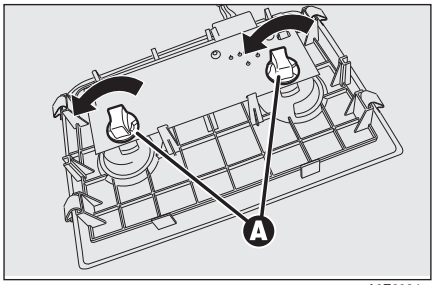


fig. 43 A0E0084m

❒ turn the 2 bulb holders **A-fig. 43** counter-clockwise, remove and replace bulbs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

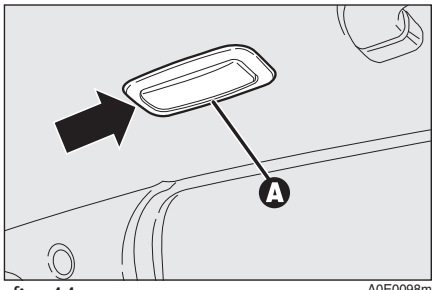


fig. 44 A0E0098m

Versions with sunroof

To replace the bulbs proceed as follows:

❒ remove the ceiling light **A-fig. 44** working in the points shown by the arrows;

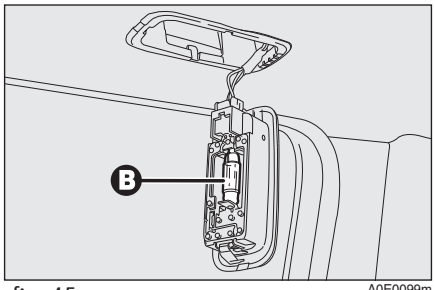


fig. 45 A0E0099m

❒ replace the bulb **B-fig. 45** releasing it from the side contacts making sure that the new bulb is correctly clamped between the contacts.

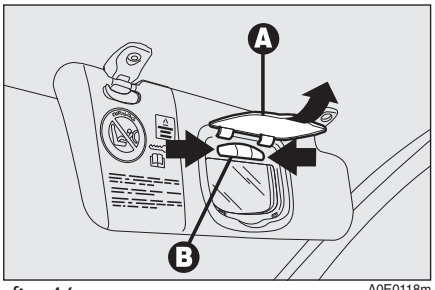


fig. 46 A0E0118m

COURTESY MIRROR LIGHTS (where provided)

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

❒ open the mirror cover **A-fig. 46**;

❒ remove the bulb **B** levering in the points shown by the arrows;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

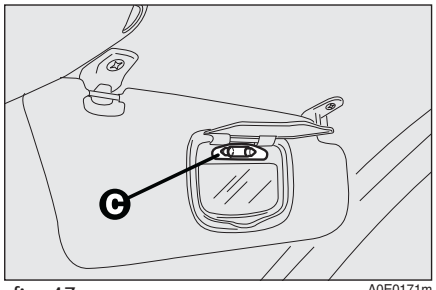


fig. 47 A0E0171m

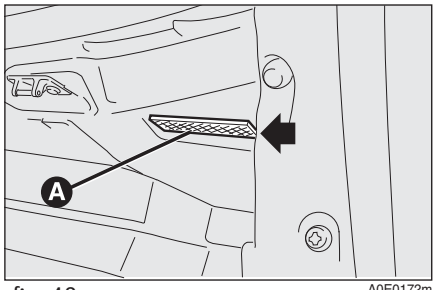


fig. 48 A0E0172m

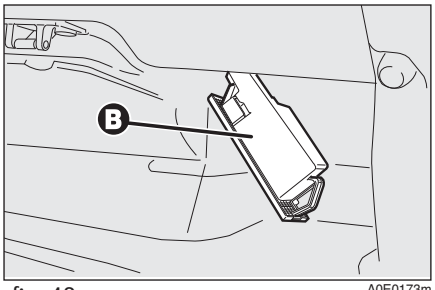


fig. 49 A0E0173m

❒ replace the bulb **C-fig. 47** releasing it from the side contacts making sure that the new bulb is correctly clamped between the contacts.

GLOVEBOX LIGHT

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

❒ open the glovebox;

❒ remove the light unit **A-fig. 48** levering in the point shown by the arrow;

❒ raise protection **B-fig. 49** and replace the snap-fitted bulb;

❒ close protection **B-fig. 49** on light unit **A-fig. 48**;

❒ refit the light unit inserting first one side and then the other one until hearing the locking click.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

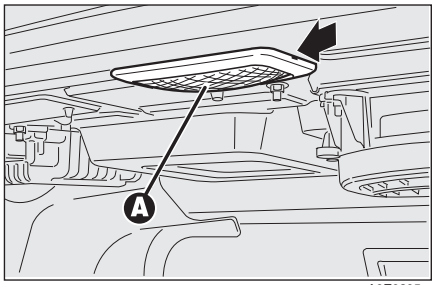


fig. 50 A0E0205m

BOOT LIGHT

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

❒ open the tailgate;

❒ remove the light unit **A-fig. 50** levering in the point shown by the arrow;

❒ open the protection cover **B-fig. 51** and replace the bulb releasing it from the side contacts making sure that the new bulb is correctly clamped between the contacts;

❒ re-close the protective cover **B**;

❒ refit the light unit inserting first one side and then the other one until hearing the locking click.

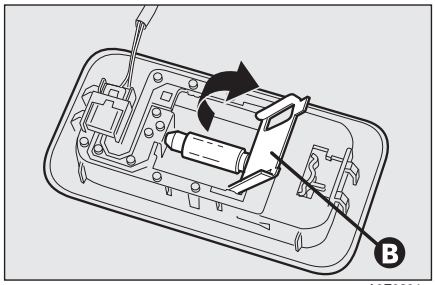


fig. 51 A0E0204m

PUDDLE LIGHT

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

❒ open the door and remove lens **A-fig. 52** levering in the point shown by the arrow;

❒ raise protection **B-fig. 53** and replace the snap-fitted bulb;

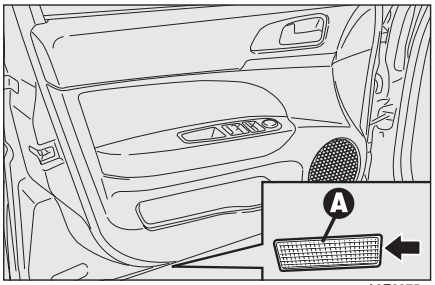


fig. 52 A0E0075m

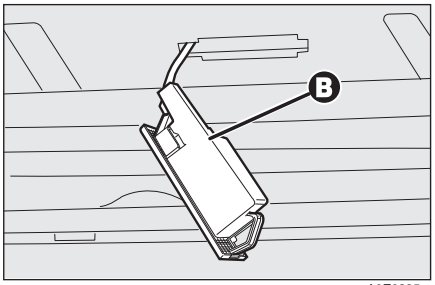


fig. 53 A0E0235m

❒ close protection **B-fig. 53** on light unit **A-fig. 52**;

❒ refit the light unit inserting first one side and then the other one until hearing the locking click.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IF A FUSE BLOWS

GENERAL

The fuse is a protective device for the electric system: it comes into action (i.e. it cuts off) mainly due to a fault or improper action on the system.

When a device does not work, check the efficiency of its fuse. The conductor element must be intact; if not, replace the fuse with one of the same amp rating (same colour).

A: undamaged fuse

B: fuse with damaged filament.

To replace a fuse, use the pliers **C** hooked to the fusebox on the dashboard.

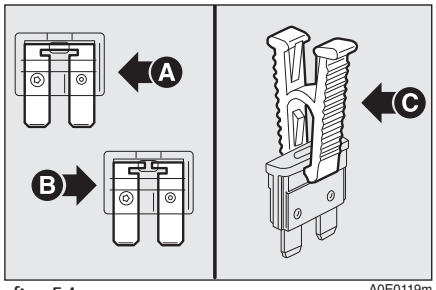


fig. 54

Never replace a broken fuse with anything other than a new fuse.

WARNING

Never change a fuse with another with a higher amp rating, danger of fire.

WARNING

If a general fuse (MEGA-FUSE, MAXI-FUSE) cuts in, do not attempt any repair and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services. Before changing a fuse, check the ignition key has been removed and that all the other electric devices have been turned off/disabled.

WARNING

If the fuse blows again, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

WARNING

If a general protection fuse for safety systems (air bag system, braking system), power unit systems (engine system, transmission system) or steering system is triggered, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

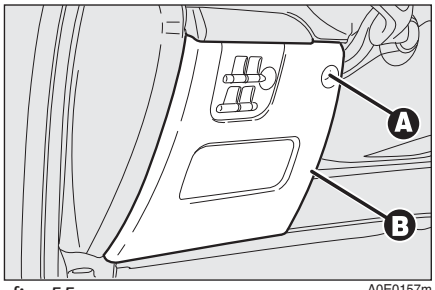


fig. 55 A0E0157m

FUSE LOCATION

Fuses are grouped into four fuse boxes to be found respectively on the dashboard, on the battery positive pole, near the battery and inside the boot (right-hand side).

Fuse box on the dashboard

To gain access to the fuses in the fuse box on the dashboard, loosen the fastening screw **A-fig. 55** and remove the cover **B**.

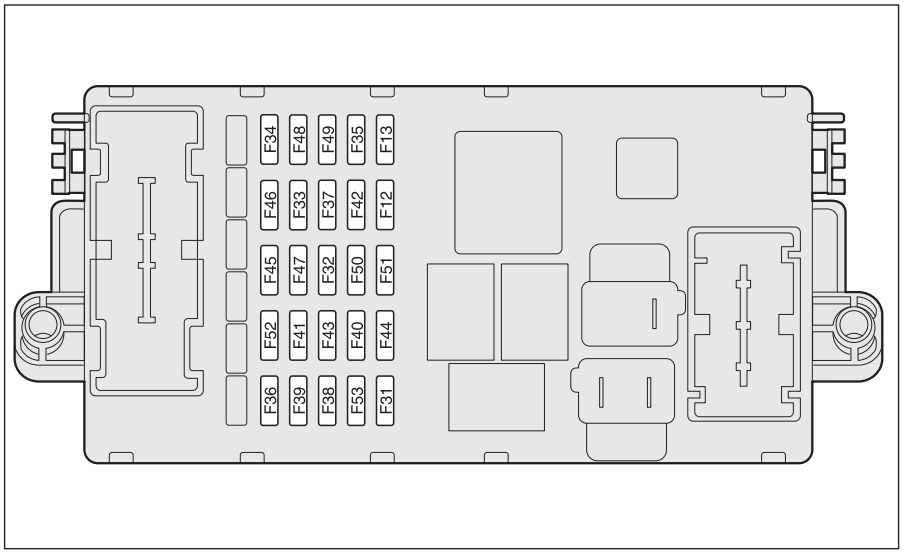


fig. 56 A0E0124m

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

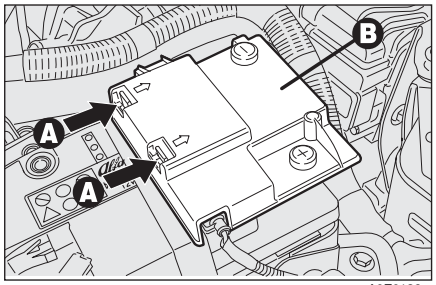


fig. 57 A0E0126m

Fuse box on the battery positive pole

To gain access to the fuses in the fuse box on the battery positive pole press the retainers **A-fig. 57** and remove the protection cover **B**.

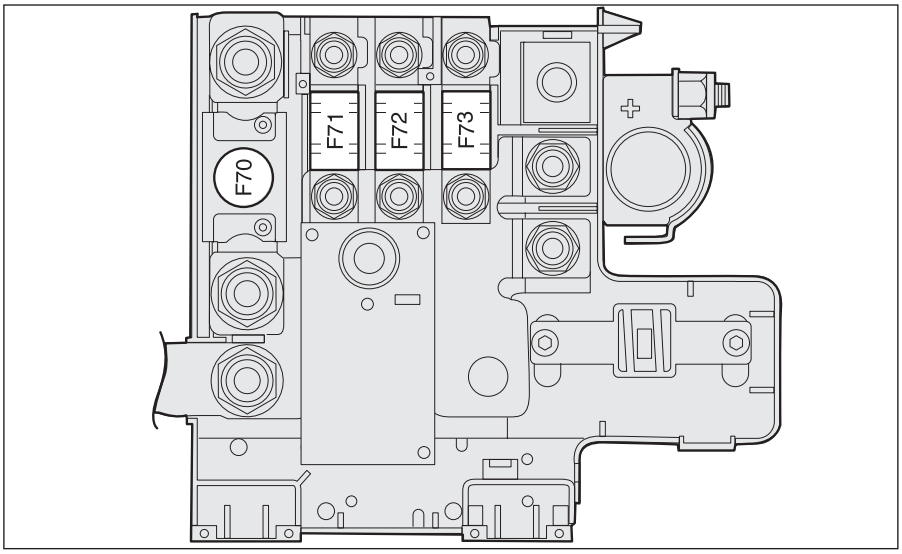


fig. 58 A0E0125m

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

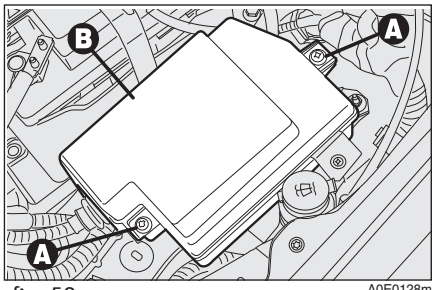


fig. 59 A0E0128m

Fuse box near the battery

To gain access to the fuses, loosen the two fastening screws **A-fig. 59** and remove the protection cover **B**.

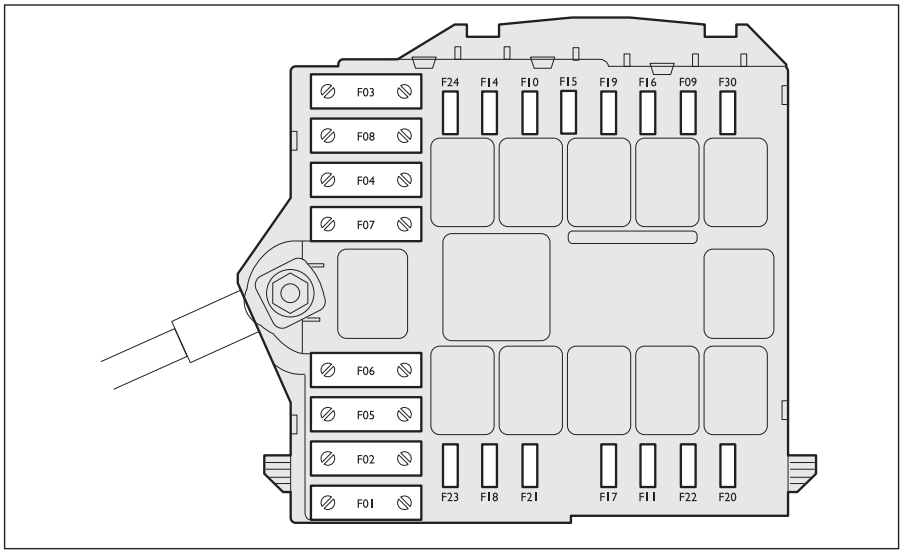


fig. 60 A0E0123m

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

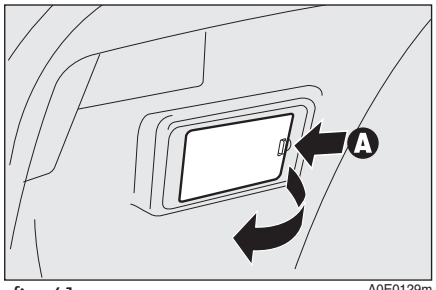


fig. 61 A0E0129m

Fuse box in the boot (left-hand side)

To gain access to the fuses, open the lid on the left side of the boot as shown by the arrow **A-fig. 61**.

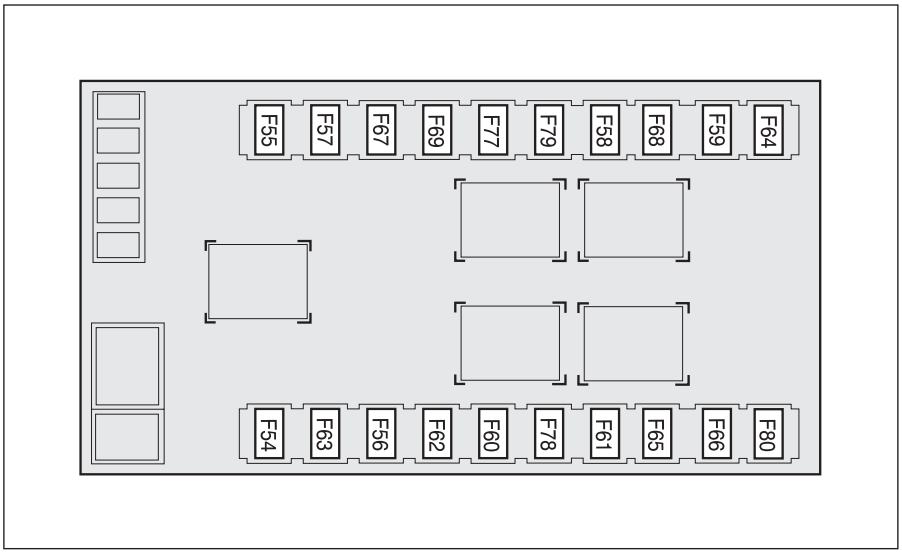


fig. 62 A0E0224m

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FUSE SUMMARY TABLE

LIGTHS	FUSE	AMPERE	FIGURE
Right main beam headlight	F14	7.5	60
Left main beam headlight	F15	7.5	60
Right dipped beam headlight	F12	15	56
Left dipped beam headlight	F13	15	56
Front fog light	F30	15	60
Reversing light/Brake light	F35	7.5	56
Third brake light	F37	7.5	56
Front/rear ceiling light	F39	10	56
Front ceiling light	F49	7.5	56
Direction indicators	F53	10	56
Hazard lights	F53	10	56

USERS	FUSE	AMPERE	FIGURE
Engine housing control unit services	F70 (MEGA-FUSE)	150	58
Instrument panel control unit	F71	70	58
Additional heater (passenger compartment water heating 600W) (diesel versions)	F72	50	58
Plug pre-heating control unit (diesel versions)	F73	60	58
Instrument panel control unit	F01 (MAXI-FUSE)	60	60

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USERS	FUSE	AMPERE	FIGURE
Climate control system fan (1.8 140 HP versions)	F02 (MAXI-FUSE)	40	60
Climate control system fan (2.2 JTS Selespeed versions)	F02 (MAXI-FUSE)	50	60
Electric steering lock	F03 (MAXI-FUSE)	20	60
Brake branch point (pump)	F04 (MAXI-FUSE)	40	60
Brake branch point (solenoid valve) (ABS version)	F05 (MAXI-FUSE)	40	60
Brake branch point (solenoid valve) (VDC version)	F05 (MAXI-FUSE)	20	60
Radiator fan (low speed) (1.8 140 HP, 2.2 JTS Selespeed versions)	F06 (MAXI-FUSE)	40	60
Radiator fan (high speed)	F07 (MAXI-FUSE)	50	60
Additional heater supply (passenger compartment water heating 300W) (diesel versions)	F08	30	60
Headlight washer	F09	20	60
Horns	F10	15	60
Climate control system compressor	F19	7.5	60
Rear window heating	F20	20	60

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USERS	FUSE	AMPERE	FIGURE
Fuel pump supply	F21	20	60
Sound system/radionavigation system power/Blue&Me	F23	15	60
Supply + key for relay coils of engine compartment control unit/ dashboard control unit/Body Computer	F31	7.5	56
Driver's door branch point/passenger's door branch point/ ignition device	F32	15	56
Rear left window control/boot node	F33	20	56
Rear right window control/boot node	F34	20	56
Water in diesel fuel filter sensor/flow meter/Brake light switch/ central console control panel/Cruise Control/AQS sensor	F35	7.5	56
Supply of boot node/locks actuators	F36	20	56
Positive under key for stop lights/third stop/instrument/ lights direction	F37	7.5	56
Boot opening	F38	15	56
Supply + battery for air conditioner, ceiling lights, volumetric alarm, EOBD system diagnostic socket	F39	10	56

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USERS	FUSE	AMPERE	FIGURE
Heated rear window	F40	30	56
Defrosting of external mirrors/heated windshield relay coil	F41	7.5	56
Windshield wiper/washer	F43	30	56
Front cigar lighter on central console	F44	10	56
Supply of socket in the boot	F45	15	56
Sunroof	F46	20	56
Power supply of driver door node	F47	20	56
Power supply of passenger door nodes	F48	30	56
+ Key for wheel node/Sunroof control unit/ Front and rear ceiling lights/Cvs/Blue&Me node/Volumetric/ Left and right seat	F49	7.5	56
Supply under key for Telematic info node/ Automatic gearbox node/Additional heater/ Left dashboard controls/ START/STOP button, Parking sensors control unit/Electrochromatic mirror/ Blue&Me node/Car radio prearrangement/AQS/Cruise Control	F51	7.5	56

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USERS	FUSE	AMPERE	FIGURE
Rear window wiper/Rear lighter	F52	15	56
Instrument panel branch point	F53	10	56
Amplifier Bose audio system	F54	30	62
Front left seat movement control	F56	25	62
Driver's seat warming left	F57	7.5	62
Front right seat movement control	F60	25	62
Amplifier Bose audio system on rear parcel shelf	F61	15	62
Front passenger' seat warming right	F67	7.5	62
Free	F58	–	62
Free	F59	–	62
Free	F62	–	62
Free	F63	–	62
Free	F64	–	62
Free	F66	–	62
Free	F68	–	62
Free	F69	–	62
Free	F77	–	62
Free	F78	–	62
Free	F79	–	62
Free	F80	–	62

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IF THE BATTERY IS FLAT

IMPORTANT The description of the battery charging procedure is described only for informative purposes. This operation should be carried out by Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

Charging should be slow at a low amp rating for 24 hours. Charging for a longer time may damage the battery.

Charge the battery as follows:

❒ disconnect battery negative terminal (–);

❒ connect the charger cables to the battery terminals, observing the poles;

❒ turn on the charger;

❒ when you have finished, turn the charger off before disconnecting the battery;

❒ reconnect battery negative terminal (–).

WARNING

The liquid in the battery is poisonous and corrosive. Do not let it touch the skin or eyes. Recharging the battery should be done in a well ventilated area away from naked flames or possible sources of sparks: explosion and fire risk.

WARNING

Do not attempt to recharge a frozen battery. Thaw it first, otherwise it could explode. If the battery froze, make sure the internal elements are not broken and that the casing is not cracked: risk of spilling the poisonous and corrosive fluid.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

JACKING THE CAR

USING AN ARM LIFT OR WORKSHOP LIFT

Never jack the car from the front side, the car can only be jacked at the sides, jack arms or workshop lift shall be placed as shown in **fig. 63**. In any case, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

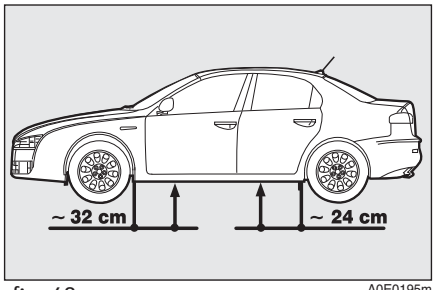


fig. 63 A0E0195m

WITH THE JACK

See instructions given in paragraph "Wheel replacement" in this section

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TOWING THE CAR

The tow hook provided with the car is contained into the Fix&Go automatic container.

PRECAUTIONS FOR TOWING THE CAR

To prevent damaging the transmission components, tow the car only in one of following ways:

❒ with front wheels raised and rear wheels resting on a truck provided for the purpose;

❒ with rear wheels raised and front wheels resting on a truck provided for the purpose;

❒ with front and rear wheels on the flatbed of a wrecker or maintenance vehicle.

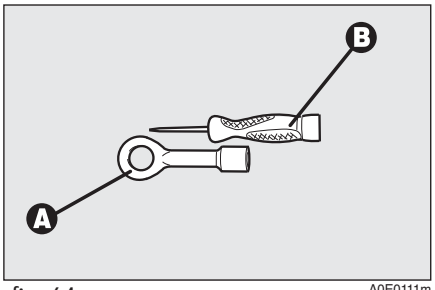


fig. 64 A0E0111m

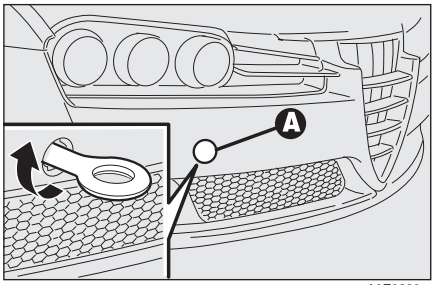


fig. 65 A0E0230m

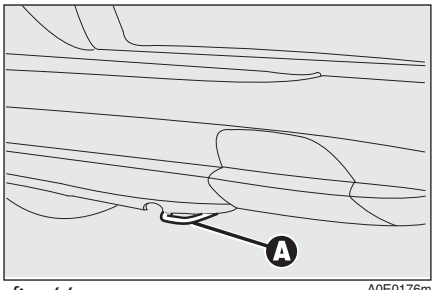


fig. 66 A0E0176m

TOW RING HOOKING

Front

Proceed as follows:

❒ take the tow hook **A-fig. 64** from the Fix&Go automatic container.

❒ remove the snap-fitted plug **A-fig. 65** from the front bumper. If using the flat blade screwdriver **B-fig. 64** provided as standard, protect its tip with a soft cloth to prevent damaging the car.

❒ tighten the tow hook in its seat.

Rear

The tow hook **A-fig. 66** for the rear bumper is fixed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Before fitting the hook, clean accurately its threaded seat. Before starting to tow, make sure to have tighten the hook.

WARNING

Do not start the engine when towing the car.

WARNING

Before starting to tow, disengage the steering lock (see paragraph "Ignition device" in section "Dashboard and controls"). When towing, remember that without the help of the brake booster and power steering, a greater effort is required on the pedal and steering wheel. Do not use flexible cables for towing and avoid jerks. During towing operations make sure that fastening the joint to the car does not damage the components in contact with it. When towing the car, you must comply with the specific traffic regulations regarding the tow ring and how to tow on the road.

WARNING

The front and rear tow hooks must only be used for emergency situations on the road. The vehicle may be towed for short distances when a dedicated device is used in compliance with the Highway Code (rigid bar), in order to move the vehicle on the road in preparation for towing by a tow truck Tow hooks MUST NOT be used to tow vehicles off the road or where there are obstacles and/or for towing operations using cables or other non-rigid devices. Respecting the above conditions, towing must only take place with two vehicles (one towing, the other towed) travelling as far as possible in alignment along the same centreline.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAR MAINTENANCE

SCHEDULED SERVICING 224
SERVICE SCHEDULE 225
PERIODICAL CHECKS 227
USE OF THE CAR UNDER HEAVY CONDITIONS 227
CHECKING FLUID LEVELS 228
AIR FILTER/POLLEN FILTER 237
BATTERY 237
WHEELS AND TYRES 241
RUBBER HOSES 243
WINDSCREEN WIPER 243
BODYWORK 245
INTERIORS 247

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SCHEDULED SERVICING

Correct maintenance is essential for ensuring long car life under the best conditions.

This is why Alfa Romeo has programmed a series of checks and maintenance operations every 35,000 km (or 21,000 mi).

IMPORTANT The actual engine oil and filter change frequency depends on the conditions of use of the car and is signalled by means of a warning light or message (where provided) on the instrument panel.

IMPORTANT At 2,000 km from the scheduled service, the display will show a dedicated message.

It is however important to remember that scheduled servicing does not completely cover all the car's requirements: also in the initial period before 35,000 km (or 21,000 mi) service coupon and later, between one coupon and another, ordinary care is still required such as for example routine check and topping up the level of fluids, tyre pressure check, etc...

IMPORTANT The Programmed Maintenance coupons are specified by the Manufacturer. The failure to have them carried out may invalidate the warranty.

Scheduled Servicing is performed by all Alfa Romeo Authorized Services, at pre-established times.

If during whatever service operation, in addition to the ones programmed, the need arises for further replacements or repairs, these may be carried out only with the explicit agreement of the Customer.

IMPORTANT You are advised to contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services in the event of any minor operating faults, without waiting for the next service coupon.

If your car is used frequently for towing, the interval between one service coupon and the other must be reduced.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SERVICE SCHEDULE

Thousands of km	35	70	105	140	175
Check tyre conditions/wear and adjust pressure if required	●	●	●	●	●
Check light system operation (headlights, direction indicators, hazard lights, boot lights, passenger compartment lights, glovebox lights, warning lights, etc.)	●	●	●	●	●
Check windscreen wiper/washer operation,adjust nozzles if required	●	●	●	●	●
Check windscreen/rear window blade position/wear	●	●	●	●	●
Check front disk brake pad conditions and wear and wear indicator operation	●	●	●	●	●
Check rear disk brake pad conditions and wear	●	●	●	●	●
Sight inspect the conditions of: body external parts, underbody protection, pipes and hoses (exhaust - fuel - brakes), rubber parts (boots, sleeves, bushes, etc.)	●	●	●	●	●
Check cleanness of locks, bonnet and boot and lever cleanness and lubrication	●	●	●	●	●
Check and top up, if required, fluid levels (brakes/hydraulic clutch, power steering, windscreen washer, battery, engine coolant, etc.)	●	●	●	●	●
Check and adjust handbrake lever stroke	●		●		●
Sight inspect accessory drive belt conditions (except 1.8 140 HP version)		●			●
Sight inspect accessory drive belt conditions (1.8 140 HP version)		●			
Sight inspect timing belt conditions (1.8 140 HP version)		●			

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Thousands of km	35	70	105	140	175
Check and adjust tappet clearance (1.9 JTDM 8v version)	●	●	●	●	●
Check and adjust tappet clearance, if required (1.8 140 HP version)				●	
Check exhaust emissions (petrol versions)	●	●	●	●	●
Check exhaust emissions/smoke (diesel versions)	●	●	●	●	●
Check engine control system operation (through diagnosis socket)	●	●	●	●	●
Replace accessory drive belt/s (except 1.8 140 HP version)			●		
Replace accessory drive belt/s (1.8 140 HP version)				●	
Replace timing belt (1.8 140 HP version) (*)				●	
Replace timing belt (1750 TURBO BENZINA version) (*)			●		
Replace timing belt (diesel versions) (*)				●	
Change spark plugs (3.2 JTS and 2.2 JTS Selespeed versions)			●		
Change spark plugs (1.8 140 HP and 1750 TURBO BENZINA versions)		●		●	
Replace diesel fuel filter (diesel versions)		●		●	
Change air cleaner cartridge		●		●	
Change front transmission gear oil (3.2 JTS 4x4 versions)				●	
Change engine oil and oil filter (1.8 140 HP versions) (or every 12 months) △	●	●	●	●	●
Change engine oil and oil filter (1750 TURBO BENZINA versions) (**) (or every 12 months) △					
Change engine oil and oil filter (3.2 JTS and 2.2 JTS Selespeed versions) (or every 24 months) (***) △	●	●	●	●	●
Change engine oil and oil filter (diesel versions with DPF) (**) (or every 24 months) △					
Change engine oil and oil filter (diesel versions without DPF) (or every 24 months) △	●	●	●	●	●
Change brake fluid (or every 24 months)		●		●	
Change pollen filter (or every 24 months)	●	●	●	●	●

(*) Regardless of the km covered, the timing belt shall be replaced every 4 years for particularly demanding use (cold climates, driving in the city, idling for a long time) or in any case every 5 years.

(**) The engine oil and the filter must be changed when the instrument panel warning light comes on (see "Warning lights and Messages" chapter) and in all cases every 24 months.

△ If the car is mainly used for town driving or in particularly harsh climate conditions and has a low annual mileage, the engine oil and filter should be changed every 12 months.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PERIODICAL CHECKS

Every 1,000 km or before long journeys, check and top up if required:

❒ engine coolant fluid level;

❒ brake fluid level;

❒ windscreen washer fluid level;

❒ tyre pressure and conditions.

❒ check light system operation (headlights, direction indicators, hazard lights, etc.);

❒ check windscreen wiper/washer operation and windscreen/rear window blade position/wear;

Every 3,000 km check and top up if required: engine oil level.

You are recommended to use **PETRONAS LUBRICANTS** products, designed and produced specifically for Alfa Romeo cars (see table "Capacities" in section "Technical specifications").

USE OF THE CAR UNDER HEAVY CONDITIONS

Should prevailing use of the car be under one of the following specially heavy conditions:

❒ trailer or caravan towing;

❒ dusty roads;

❒ short distances (less than 7-8 km) and repeated with external temperatures below zero;

❒ frequently idling engines or long distance low speed driving (e.g.: door-to-door deliveries) or in case of a long term inactivity;

❒ urban routes;

carry out checks more frequently than required on Service Schedule:

❒ check front disk brake pad conditions and wear;

❒ check cleanness of bonnet and boot locks and lever cleanness and lubrication;

❒ sight inspect the conditions of: engine, gearbox, transmission, pipes and hoses (exhaust - fuel - brakes), rubber parts (boots, sleeves, bushes, etc.);

❒ check battery charge and fluid level (electrolyte);

❒ visual check on various drive belt conditions;

❒ change engine oil and oil filter, if required;

❒ check and replace pollen filter, if required;

❒ check and replace air cleaner, if required.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHECKING FLUID LEVELS

For refilling amounts refer to Technical Specifications section.

When topping up take care not to confuse the various types of fluids: they are all incompatible with one another and could seriously damage the car.

WARNING

Never smoke while working in the engine compartment; gas and inflammable vapours may be present, with the risk of fire.

1. Engine oil - **2.** Battery
3. Brake fluid - **4.** Windscreen washer fluid - **5.** Engine coolant -
6. Power steering fluid

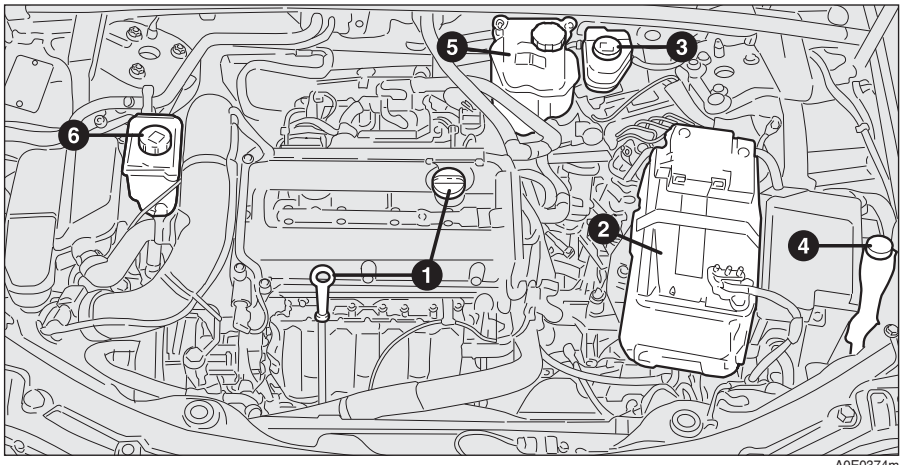


fig. 1 - 1.8 140 HP version

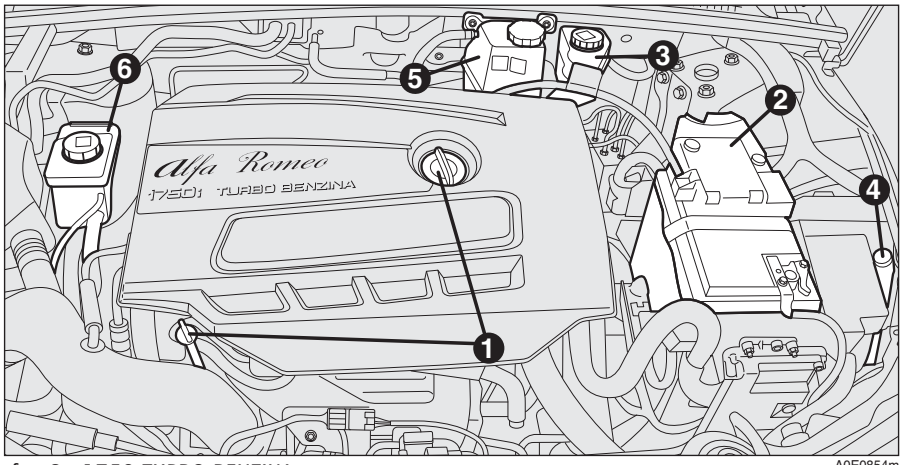
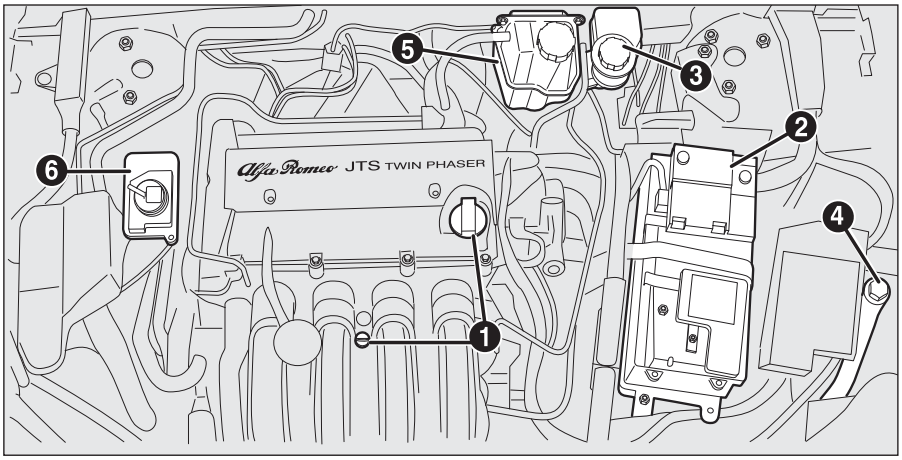


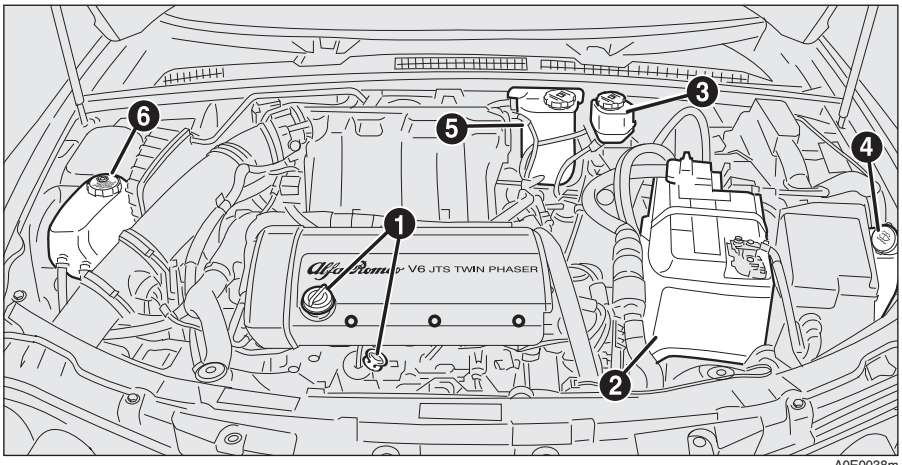
fig. 2 - 1750 TURBO BENZINA version

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



1. Engine oil - **2.** Battery
3. Brake fluid - **4.** Windscreen washer fluid - **5.** Engine coolant
6. Power steering fluid

fig. 3 - 2.2 JTS Selespeed version



1. Engine oil - **2.** Battery
3. Brake fluid - **4.** Windscreen washer fluid - **5.** Engine coolant
6. Power steering fluid

fig. 3/a - 3.2 JTS version

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. Engine oil - **2.** Battery
3. Brake fluid - **4.** Windscreen washer fluid - **5.** Engine coolant
6. Power steering fluid

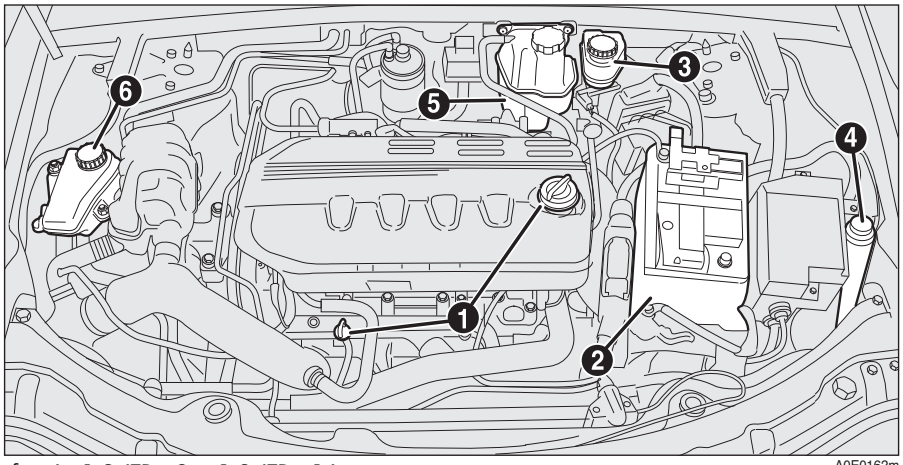


fig. 4 - 1.9 JTDM 8v - 1.9 JTDM 16v versions

A0E0162m

1. Engine oil - **2.** Battery
3. Brake fluid - **4.** Windscreen washer fluid - **5.** Engine coolant
6. Power steering fluid

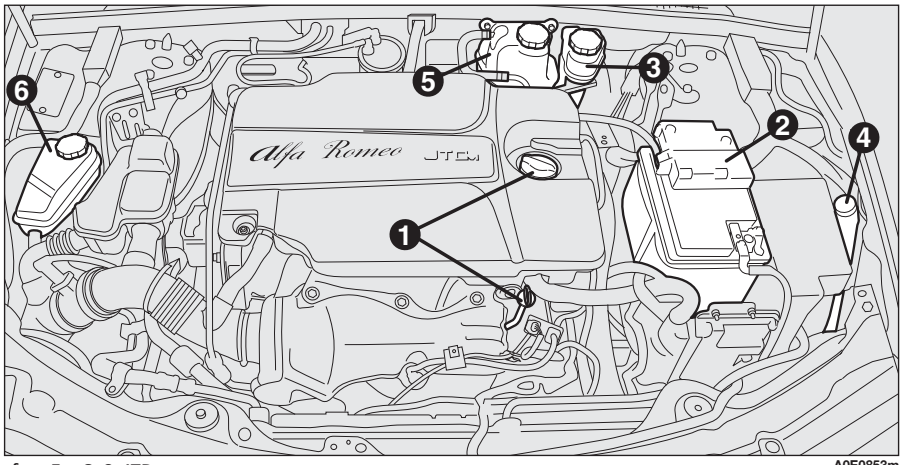


fig. 5 - 2.0 JTDM version

A0E0853m

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

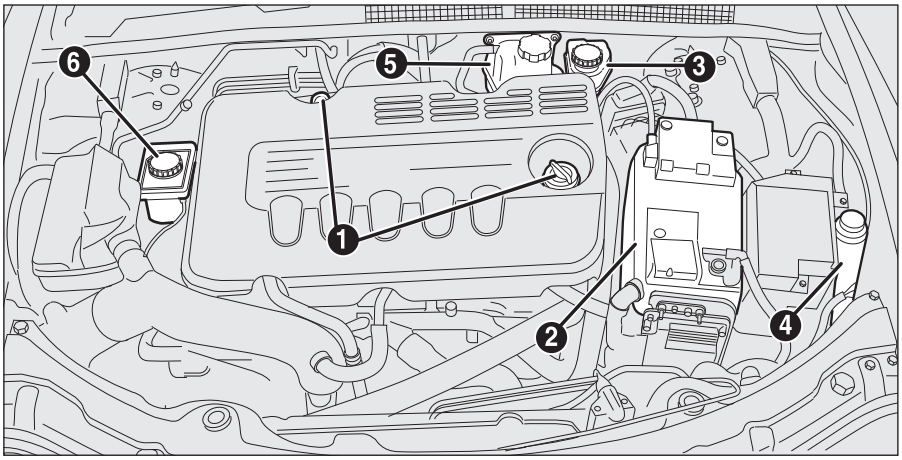


fig. 6 - 2.4 JTDM version

1. Engine oil - **2.** Battery
3. Brake fluid - **4.** Windscreen washer fluid - **5.** Engine coolant
6. Power steering fluid

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

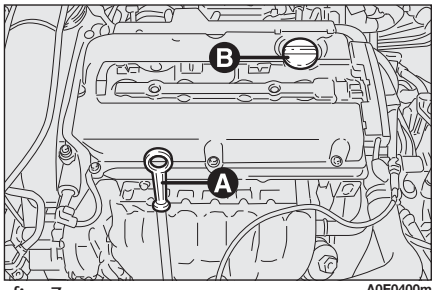


fig. 7 A0E0400m

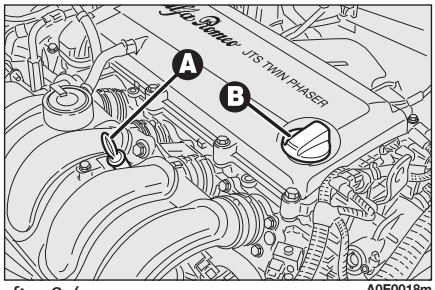


fig. 8/a A0E0018m

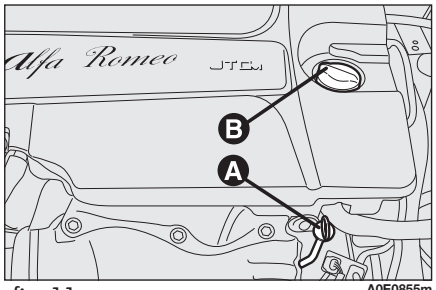


fig. 11 A0E0855m

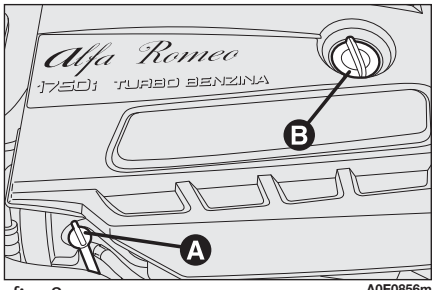


fig. 8 A0E0856m

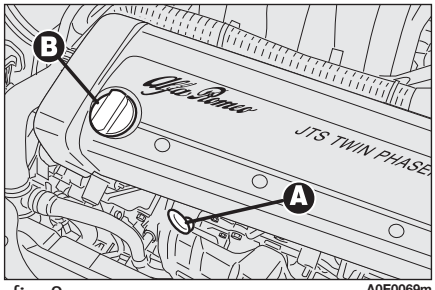


fig. 9 A0E0069m

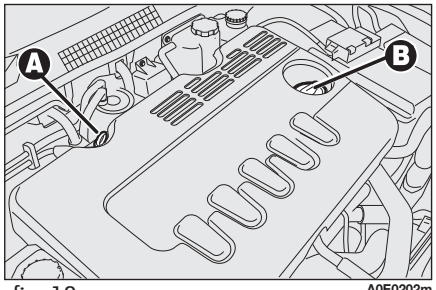


fig. 12 A0E0202m

ENGINE OIL

Fig. 7: 1.8 140 HP version

Fig. 8: 1750 TURBO BENZINA version

Fig. 8/a: 2.2 JTS Selespeed version

Fig. 9: 3.2 JTS version

Fig. 10: 1.9 JTDM 8v - 1.9 JTDM 16v versions

Fig. 11: 2.0 JTDM version

Fig. 12: 2.4 JTDM version

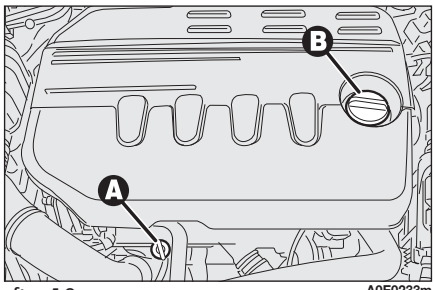


fig. 10 A0E0233m

Checking engine oil

Check the oil level a few minutes (about 5) after the engine has stopped, with the car parked on level ground.

Remove the dipstick **A** and clean it, put it back in completely, remove it and check that the level is within the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the dipstick. The gap between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks corresponds to about one litre of oil.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Topping up engine oil

If the oil level is near or even below the **MIN** mark, add oil through the filler neck **B**, until reaching the **MAX** mark. Oil level shall never exceed the **MAX** mark.

IMPORTANT If a routine check reveals that the oil level is above the **MAX** mark, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the correct level restored.

IMPORTANT After adding or changing the oil, let the engine turn over for a few seconds and wait a few minutes after turning it off before you check the level.

Engine oil consumption

Max engine oil consumption is usually 400 grams every 1000 km.

When the car is new, the engine needs to run in, therefore the engine oil consumption can only be considered stabilised after the first 5000 - 6000 km.

IMPORTANT The oil consumption depends on driving style and the conditions under which the car is used.

IMPORTANT Do not add oil with specifications other than that already in the engine.

WARNING

When the engine is hot, take care when working inside the engine compartment to avoid burns. Remember that when the engine is hot, the fan may cut in: danger of injury. Scarves, ties and other loose clothing might be pulled by moving parts.

Used engine oil and filter contain harmful substances for the environment. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the oil and filter changed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

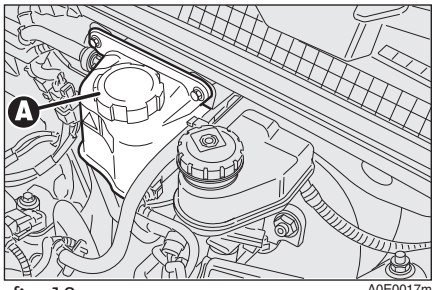


fig. 13 A0E0017m

ENGINE COOLANT FLUID fig. 13

If the level is low, pour slowly a mixture of 50% distilled water and 50% **PARAFLU UP** through the filler neck **A**.

A 50% mixture of distilled water and **PARAFLU UP** gives freeze protection to –35°C.

Unter besonders strengen klimatischen Bedingungen empfehlen wir eine Mischung aus 60% **PARAFLU UP** und 40% demineralisiertem Wasser.

WARNING

Do not remove the reservoir cap when the engine is hot: you risk scalding yourself.

The cooling system uses PARAFLU UP that shall be used for topping up and that cannot be mixed with other types of fluids. Should other fluids be added, do not start the engine and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

WARNING

The cooling system is pressurised. If necessary, replace the cap only with another genuine one, otherwise system efficiency could be compromised.

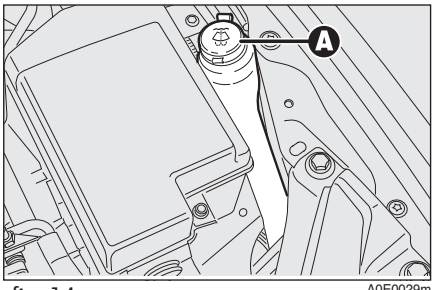


fig. 14 A0E0029m

WINDSCREEN/HEADLIGHT WASHER FLUID fig. 14

To top up, remove the cap **A** and then pour a mixture of water and **TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35**, in the following concentrations:

- ❒ 30% **TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35** and 70% water in summer;
- ❒ 50% **TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35** and 50% water in winter.

In case of temperatures below –20°C, use undiluted **TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Do not travel with the windscreen washer reservoir empty. The windscreen washer is fundamental for improving visibility.

WARNING

Certain commercial additives for windscreen washers are inflammable. The engine compartment contains hot components which may set it on fire.

POWER STEERING FLUID fig. 15-16

Check that the fluid level in the reservoir is at maximum level: this operation shall be carried out with the car on level surface, engine not running and cold.

Check that the fluid level is at the **MAX** mark on the reservoir or at the top mark (maximum level) shown on the dipstick under the reservoir cap.

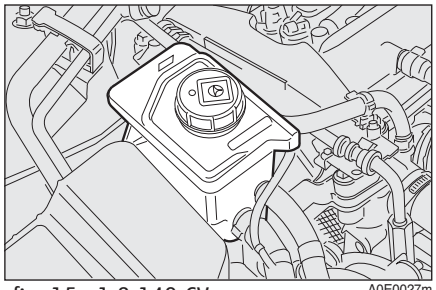


fig. 15 - 1.8 140 CV - 1750 TURBO BENZINA - 2.2 JTS Selespeed - 2.4 JTDM versions

If the fluid level in the reservoir is below the specified level, top up as follows:

- ❒ start the engine and wait until the fluid level in the reservoir has stabilized;
- ❒ with the engine started, turn repeatedly the steering wheel fully rightwards and leftwards;
- ❒ top up until reaching the **MAX** mark then refit the cap.

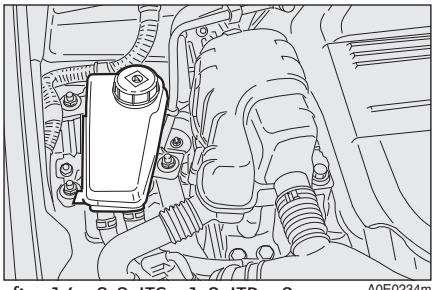


fig. 16 - 3.2 JTS - 1.9 JTDM 8v - 1.9 JTDM 16v - 2.0 JTDM versions

IMPORTANT For this operation it is however recommended to always contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

WARNING

Do not allow the power steering fluid to touch the hot parts of the engine: it is inflammable.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

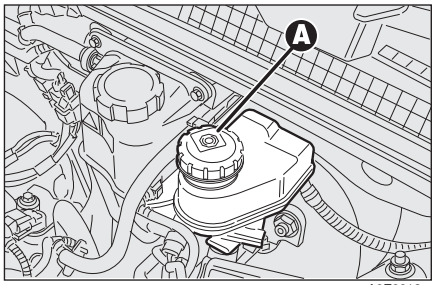


fig. 17

BRAKE FLUID fig. 17

Check that the fluid level in the reservoir is at maximum. Top up with the brake fluid specified in the table "Fluids and lubricants" (see section "Technical Specifications ").

NOTE Clean accurately the tank cap **A** and the surrounding surface. When opening the cap take the utmost care to prevent impurities entering the tank. When topping up, always use a funnel with built-in filter with mesh equal to or lower than 0.12 mm.

IMPORTANT For this operation it is however recommended to contact Alfa Romeo Authorised Services.

From time to time, check the instrument panel warning light (!): pressing on cap **A** (with key fitted into the ignition device) the warning light shall turn on.

IMPORTANT Brake fluid absorbs moisture. For this reason, if the car is mainly used in areas with a high degree of atmospheric humidity, the fluid should be replaced at more frequent intervals than specified in the Service schedule.

Make sure that the highly corrosive brake fluid does not drip onto the paintwork. If it does, wash it off immediately with water.

WARNING

Brake fluid is poisonous and highly corrosive. In the event of accidental contact, wash the parts involved immediately with neutral soap and water, then rinse thoroughly. Call the doctor immediately if the fluid is swallowed.

WARNING

Symbol ◎ on the container indicates synthetic brake fluid, distinguishing it from the mineral kind. Using mineral fluids irreversibly damages the special braking system rubber seals.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AIR FILTER/ POLLEN FILTER

Air cleaner or pollen filter replacement shall be carried out at Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

BATTERY

The battery does not require top ups of distilled water to replenish the electrolyte. A periodic check carried out at an Alfa Romeo Authorised Services is, however, necessary to check efficiency.

IMPORTANT The charge in the battery should be checked at the start of winter to limit the risk of electrolyte freezing. This check should be carried out more frequently if the car is used mainly for short trips, or if it is fitted with accessories that permanently absorb electricity also with the ignition key removed, especially in the case of after market accessories.

After connecting/disconnecting the battery, wait for 3 minutes at least before fitting the electronic key into the ignition device in order to allow the climate control system control unit to reset the positions of the electric actuators that adjust air temperature and distribution.

WARNING

The liquid in the battery is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes and skin. Do not bring naked flames or possible sources of sparks near to the battery: risk of fire and explosion.

WARNING

Running the battery with low fluid level can damage the battery beyond repair and could also cause its explosion.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REPLACING THE BATTERY

If required, replace the battery with a genuine spare part having the same specifications.

If a battery with different specifications is fitted, the service intervals given in the Service schedule in this section will no longer be valid.

Refer therefore to the instructions provided by the battery manufacturer.

Incorrect fitting of electrical and electronic accessories can seriously damage the car. If after buying the car, you want to install electric accessories which require permanent electric supply (alarm, free-hand phone kit, etc.) contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services whose qualified personnel, in addition to suggesting the most suitable devices, will evaluate the overall electric absorption, checking whether the car's electric system is capable of withstanding the load required, or whether it should be integrated with a more powerful battery.

Batteries contain substances that are very harmful for the environment. You are advised to have the battery changed at Alfa Romeo Authorized Services, which is properly equipped for disposing of used batteries respecting nature and the law.

WARNING

If the car is left inactive for long periods at cold, remove the battery and store it in a warm place to prevent freezing.

WARNING

When working on the battery or near it, always wear the proper goggles.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USEFUL ADVICE FOR LENGTHENING THE LIFE OF YOUR BATTERY

To avoid draining your battery and lengthen its life, observe the following indications:

- ❒ when you park the car, ensure the doors, tailgate and bonnet are closed properly;
- ❒ the ceiling lights must be off. The car is however provided with an automatic system for switching off internal lights;
- ❒ do not keep accessories (e.g.: sound system, hazard lights, etc.) switched on for a long time when the engine is not running;
- ❒ before performing any operation on the electrical system, disconnect the battery negative terminal cable;
- ❒ battery terminals shall always be perfectly tightened.

IMPORTANT A battery which is kept at a charge of less than 50% for any length of time will be damaged by sulphation leading to a reduction in cranking power.

Moreover, this might lead to a higher risk of the battery electrolyte freezing (this may even occur at –10°C). If the car is inactive for a long period of time, refer to "Car inactivity", in section "Correct use of the car".

If after buying the car, you want to install electric accessories which require permanent electric supply (alarm, etc.) contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services whose qualified personnel, in addition to suggesting the most suitable devices available at Lineaccessori Alfa Romeo, will evaluate the overall electric absorption, checking whether the car's electric system is capable of withstanding the load required, or whether it should be integrated with a more powerful battery.

In fact, since these devices continue absorbing energy even when the ignition key is off, they gradually run down the battery.

The total intake of these systems (factory and after-market) must be less than 0.6 mA x Ah (of the battery) as shown in the following table:

Battery	Maximum admitted stand-by intake
60 Ah	36 mA
70 Ah	42 mA
90 Ah	54 mA

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WHEELS AND TYRES

Check the pressure of each tyre, including the space-saver spare wheel, every four weeks and before long journeys: pressure should be checked with the tyre rested and cold.

For the correct tyre inflation pressure, see "Wheels" in "Technical specifications" section.

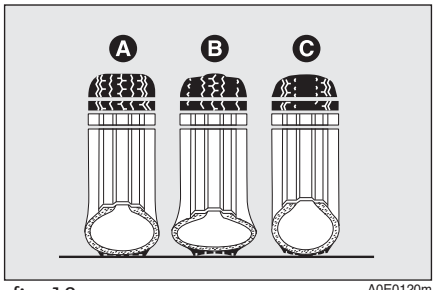


fig. 18 A0E0120m

Incorrect pressure causes abnormal tyre wear **fig. 18**:

A normal pressure: tread evenly worn.

B low pressure: tread particularly worn at the edges.

C high pressure: tread particularly worn in the centre.

Tyres must be replaced when the tread wears down to 1.6 mm. In any case, comply with the laws in the country where the car is being driven.

IMPORTANT NOTES

As far as possible, avoid sharp braking and screech starts, etc. Be careful not to hit the kerb, potholes or other obstacles hard. Driving for long stretches over bumpy roads can damage the tyres.

Periodically check that the tyres have no cuts in the side wall, abnormal swelling or irregular tyre wear. If any of these occur, have the car seen to at Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

Avoid overloading the car when travelling: this may cause serious damage to the wheels and tyres; if a tyre is punctured, stop immediately and change it to avoid damage to the tyre, the rim, suspensions and steering system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tyres age even if they are not used much. Cracks in the tread rubber are a sign of ageing. In any case, if the tyres have been on the car for over 6 years, they should be checked by specialised personnel, to see if they can still be used. Also remember to check the space-saver spare wheel.

In the case of replacement, always fit new tyres, avoiding those of dubious origin.

If a tyre is changed, also change the inflation valve; to allow even wear between the front and rear tyres, it is advisable to change them over every 10-15 thousand kilometres, keeping them on the same side of the car so as to not reverse the direction of rotation.

WARNING

Remember that road holding depends also on the correct tyre inflating pressure.

WARNING

Do not cross switch the tyres, moving them from the right of the car to the left and vice versa.

WARNING

If the pressure is too low the tyre overheats and this can cause it serious damage.

WARNING

Never submit alloy rims to repainting treatments requiring to use temperatures exceeding 150°C since the mechanical properties of the wheels could be impaired.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RUBBER HOSES

As far as the brake system and fuel rubber hoses are concerned, carefully follow the Service schedule in this section.

Indeed ozone, high temperatures and prolonged lack of fluid in the system may cause hardening and cracking of the hoses, with possible leaks. Careful control is therefore necessary.

WINDSCREEN/REAR SCREEN WIPERS

BLADES

Periodically clean the rubber part using special products **TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35** is recommended.

If the rubber blades are bent or worn they should be replaced. In any case they should be changed once a year.

A few simple notions can reduce the possibility of damage to the blades:

❒ if the temperature fall below zero, make sure that ice has not frozen the rubber against glass. If necessary, thaw using an antifreeze product;

❒ remove any snow from the glass: in addition to protecting the blades, this prevents effort on the motor and overheating;

❒ do not operate the windscreen wipers on dry glass.

WARNING

Driving with worn wiper blades is a serious hazard, because visibility is reduced in bad weather.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

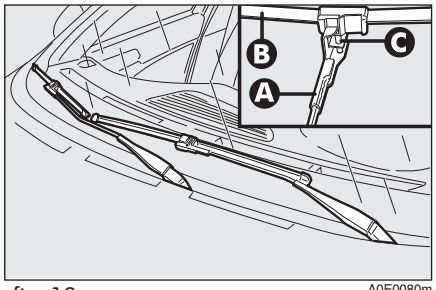


fig. 19

Changing the windscreen wiper blades fig. 19

How to remove the blade:

– raise the windscreen wiper arm **A**;

– turn the blade **B** by 90° around pin **C**, on the final section of the arm;

– remove the blade from the pin **C**.

How to refit the new blade:

– fit pin **C** into the hole in the middle of the blade **B**;

– refit the arm with the blade on the windscreen.

SPRAY NOZZLES

If the jet of fluid is missing, firstly check that there is fluid in the reservoir: see "Checking fluid levels" in this section).

Then check that the nozzle holes are not clogged, if necessary use a needle.

Fluid jets shall be directed at about 1/3 height from the window upper edge.

HEADLIGHT WASHERS

Regularly check that the spray jets are intact and clean.

The headlight washers are automatically switched on when the windscreen washer is operated and the dipped beams are on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BODYWORK

PROTECTION FROM ATMOSPHERIC AGENTS

The main causes of corrosion are the following:

❒ atmospheric pollution;

❒ salty air and humidity (coastal areas, or hot humid climates);

❒ seasonal environment conditions.

Not to be underestimated is also the abrasive action of wind-borne atmospheric dust and sand and mud and gravel raised by other cars.

On your car, Alfa Romeo implemented the best manufacturing technologies to effectively protect the bodywork against corrosion.

These include:

❒ Painting products and systems which give the car particular resistance to corrosion and abrasion;

❒ Use of galvanised (or pretreated) steel sheets, with high resistance to corrosion;

❒ Spraying of plastic parts, with a protective function, in the more exposed points: underdoor, inner fender parts, edges, etc.;

❒ Use of “open” boxed sections to prevent condensation and pockets of moisture from triggering rust inside;

❒ use of special anti-abrasion protective tapes in the most exposed areas (e.g.: rear mudguard, rear door, etc.).

BODY AND UNDERBODY WARRANTY

Your car is covered by warranty against perforation due to rust of any original element of the structure or body. For the general terms of this warranty, refer to the Alfa Romeo Warranty booklet.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ADVICE FOR PRESERVING THE BODYWORK

Paint

Paintwork does not only serve an aestethic purpose, but also protects the underlying sheet metal.

In the case of deep scrapes or scores, you are advised to have the necessary touching up carried out immediately to avoid the formation of rust. Use only original paint products for touching up (see "Bodywork paint identification plate" in section "Technical specification").

Normal paint maintenance consists in washing at intervals depending on the conditions and environment of use. For example, in highly polluted areas, or if the roads are sprayed with salt, it is wise to wash the car more frequently.

To wash the car correctly proceed as follows:

- ❒ remove the aerial from the roof to prevent damage to it if the car is washed in an automatic system;
- ❒ wash the body using a low pressure jet of water;
- ❒ wipe a sponge with a slightly soapy solution over the bodywork, frequently rinsing with the sponge;
- ❒ rinse well with water and dry with a jet of air or a chamois leather.

When drying, take particular care with the less visible parts like door surrounds, bonnet and around the headlights where water may stagnate. The car should not be taken to a closed area immediately, but left in the open so that residual water can evaporate.

Do not wash the car after it has been left in the sun or with the bonnet hot: this may alter the shine of the paintwork.

Detergents cause water pollution. Therefore the car should be washed in areas equipped for collecting and purifying the liquid used in the washing process.

To keep intact the aesthetic properties of the paintwork do not use abrasive and/or polish products for cleaning the car bodywork.

Exterior plastic parts must be cleaned in the same way as the rest of the car.

Where possible, do not park under trees; the resinous substance many species release give the paint a dull appearance and increase the possibility of triggering rust processes.

IMPORTANT Bird droppings must be washed off immediately and thoroughly as the acid they contain is particularly aggressive.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windows

Use specific window cleaner products. Use also clean cloths to avoid scratching the glass or damaging the transparency.

IMPORTANT The inside of the rearscreen should be wiped gently with a cloth in the direction of the filaments to avoid damaging the heating device.

Front headlights

Front headlights shall be washed with soft cloth moistened with water and car detergent.

IMPORTANT Cleaning headlight lenses with a dry cloth will damage the headlights with lack of performance as a consequence. Solvents mat the lenses with lack of performance as a consequence.

IMPORTANT When washing the front headlights with a water monitor nozzle keep at least 2 cm away from the lenses.

Engine compartment

At the end of the winter the engine compartment should be carefully washed, without directing the jet against electronic control units. Contact a specialised workshop to have this done.

IMPORTANT The car should be washed with the engine cold and the key removed from the ignition device. After washing make sure that the various protections (e.g. rubber caps and various covers) have not been damaged or removed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INTERIORS

Periodically check that water is not trapped under the mats (due to water dripping off shoes, umbrellas, etc.) which could cause oxidisation of the sheet metal.

CLEANING SEATS AND FABRIC AND VELVET PARTS

Use a soft brush or vacuum cleaner to remove dust. Velvet is cleaned better if the brush is moistened.

Rub the seats with a sponge moistened with a solution of water and neutral detergent.

LEANING LEATHER SEATS

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Remove dried on dirt with lightly moistened chamois leather or cloth without pressing too hard.

Remove liquid or grease stains with a dry absorbent cloth without rubbing. Then wipe with a soft cloth or chamois leather with water and neutral soap.

If the stain persists, use specific products, carefully following the instructions for use.

IMPORTANT Never use spirit or alcohol-based products.

Upholstery of your car has been designed to withstand wear deriving from common use of the car. You are however recommended to avoid strong and/or continuous scratching with clothing accessories such as metallic buckles, studs, Velcro fastenings and the like, since these items cause circumscribed stress of the cover fabric that could lead to yarn breaking, and damage the cover as a consequence.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INTERIOR PLASTIC PARTS

Clean plastic parts with a cloth moistened with water and non-abrasive neutral detergent. To remove grease or hard stains, use appropriate products designed to preserve the appearance of components.

IMPORTANT Never use spirit or petroleum to clean the instrument panel or other plastic parts.

WARNING

Never use flammable products like oil ether or rectified petrol for cleaning car interiors. Electrostatic discharges generated by rubbing during cleaning operations could cause fire.

WARNING

Do not keep aerosol cans in the car: they might explode. Aerosol cans must never be exposed to a temperature above 50°C. The temperature inside the car exposed to the sun may go well beyond that figure.

STEERING WHEEL/ GEAR LEVER KNOB WITH GENUINE LEATHER COVERING

(for versions/markets, where provided)

These components shall only be cleaned with water and neutral soap. Never use spirit or alcohol-based products.

Before using special products for cleaning interiors, read carefully label instructions and indications to make sure they are free from spirit and/or alcohol-based substances.

If when cleaning the windscreen with special glass products, some drops fall on the leather covering of the steering wheel/gear lever knob remove them immediately and then clean with water and neutral soap.

IMPORTANT Take the utmost care when engaging the steering lock to prevent scratching the leather covering.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

IDENTIFICATION DATA 250
ENGINE CODES - BODYWORK VERSIONS 252
ENGINE 253
FUEL FEED/IGNITION 255
TRANSMISSION 255
BRAKES 256
STEERING 256
SUSPENSIONS 256
WHEELS 257
DIMENSIONS 261
PERFORMANCE 263
WEIGHTS 264
CAPACITIES 266
FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS 267
FUEL CONSUMPTION 269
CO_2 EMISSIONS 270
RADIO FREQUENCY REMOTE CONTROL: MINISTERIAL CERTIFICATIONS 271

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IDENTIFICATION DATA

You are advised to note the identification codes. The identification data stamped and given on the plates and their position are the following **fig. 1**:

1 - Identification label

2 - Body label

3 - Bodywork paint identification label

4 - Engine label.

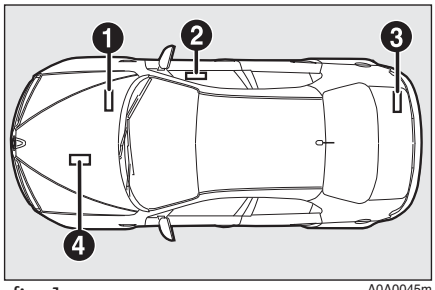


fig. 1 A0A0045m

IDENTIFICATION LABEL

This is to be found in the engine compartment, aside the upper right shock-absorber connection and it bears the following identification data:

A. Space for details of national homologation

B. Space for punching the consecutive chassis number

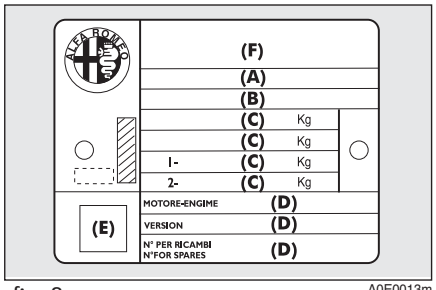


fig. 2 A0E0013m

C. Space available for maximum weights authorised by various national regulations

D.Space for version and any supplementary indications to those specified

E. Space for smoke coefficient (diesel versions only)

F. Space for punching the Manufacturer's name.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

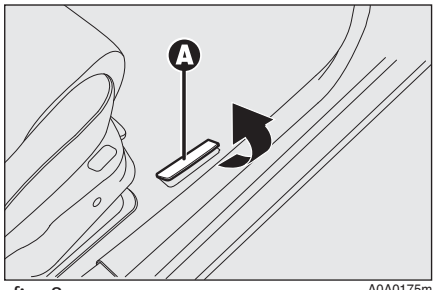


fig. 3 A0A0175m

BODYWORK LABEL

This is located on the passenger compartment floor near the front passenger's seat.

It can be reached by raising cover **A-fig. 3** and it includes:

❒ type of vehicle (ZAR 939000);

❒ Manufacturer's serial number (chassis number).

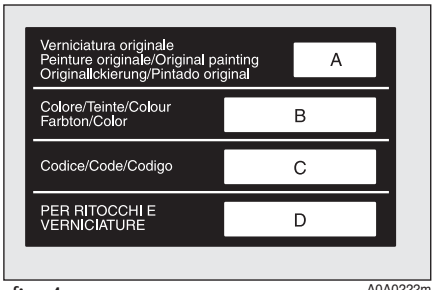


fig. 4 A0A0222m

BODYWORK PAINT IDENTIFICATION LABEL

This is located in the inner side of the tailgate **fig. 4** and it includes:

A. Paint manufacturer

B. Name of colour

C. Colour code.

D. Colour code for touching up and respraying.

ENGINE MARKING

Engine marking is stamped on the gearbox side, on the rear left side.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE CODES - BODYWORK VERSIONS

Versions	Engine code	Bodywork version
1.8 140 HP	939A4000	939AXL1A 21C / 939BXL1A 22C (❒)
1750 TURBO BENZINA (***)	939B1000	939AXN1B 52 (**) / 939BXN1B 53 (❒) (**)
3.2 JTS 4x2	939A000	939AXG1B 44 / 939BXG1B 45 (❒)
3.2 JTS 4x4	939A000	939AXG2B 09B / 939BXG2B 16B (❒)
1.9 JTDM 8v	939A1000 939A7000 (Δ)	939AXE1B 04C 939AXH1B 06D (Δ) 939BXE1B 14C (❒) 939BXH1B 17D (❒)(Δ) 939AXE1B 04D (❍) 939BXE1B 14D (❒) (❍)
1.9 JTDM 16v	939A2000 939A8000 (Δ)	939AXC1B 01E (❍) 939BXC1B 12G (❒) (❍) 939AXC1B 01F (❍) 939BXC1B 12H (❒) (❍) 939AXF1B 05D (❍) (Δ) 939BXF1B 15F (❒) (❍) (Δ)
2.0 JTDM (***)	939B3000	939AXP1B 54 (**) 939AXP1B 54B 939BXP1B 55 (❒) (**) 939BXP1B 55B (❒) 939AXP1B 54C (❍) 939BXP1B 55C (❒) (❍)
2.0 JTDM (***) (Δ)	844A2000	939AXQ1B 62 (❍) / 939BXQ1B 63 (❒) (❍)
2.4 JTDM 4x2	939A9000	939AXM1B 39B / 939BXM1B 40B (❒)
2.4 JTDM 4x4	939A9000	939AXM2B 35B / 939BXM2B 36B (❒)

(❒) Sportwagon versions (Δ) For specific markets (**) Pack TI (***) Euro 5 versions (❍) ECO versions

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE

GENERAL		1.8 140 HP	1750 TURBO BENZINA	2.2 JTS (*)	3.2 JTS
Engine code		939A4000	939B1000	939A5000	939A000
Cycle		Otto	Otto	Otto	Otto
Number and layout of cylinders		4 in line	4 in line	4 in line	6 in 60° V
Valves per cylinder		4	4	4	4
Piston bore and stroke	mm	80.5 x 88.2	83.0 x 80.5	86 X 94.6	89 X 85.6
Total displacement	cm^3	1796	1742	2198	3195
Maximum power (EEC)	kW	103	147	136	191
	HP	140	200	185	260
corresponding ratio	rpm	6500	5000	6500	6200
Maximum torque (EEC)	Nm	175	320	230	322
	kgm	17.8	32.6	23.4	32.8
corresponding ratio	rpm	3800	1400	4500	4500
Spark plugs		BOSCH FQR8 LEU2	NGK ILKAR7D6G	NGKFR5CP	BOSCH HR7MPP152
Fuel		Unleaded petrol 95 RON (Specification EN228)	Unleaded petrol 95 RON (Specification EN228)	Unleaded petrol 95 RON (Specification EN228)	Unleaded petrol 95 RON (Specification EN228)

(*) Selespeed version

To change plugs contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

GENERAL		1.9 JTDM 8v	1.9 JTDM 8v (*)	1.9 JTDM 16v	1.9 JTDM 16v (*)	2.0 JTDM	2.4 JTDM 200 HP (**)	2.4 JTDM 210 HP
Engine code		939A1000	939A7000	939A2000	939A8000	939B3000 844A2000 (*)	939A3000	939A9000
Cycle		Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Number and layout of cylinders		4 in line	4 in line	4 in line	4 in line	4 in line	5 in line	5 in line
Valves per cylinder		2	2	4	4	4	4	4
Piston bore and stroke	mm	82 x 90.4	82 x 90,4	82 x 90.4	82 x 90,4	83.0 x 90.4	82 x 90.4	82 x 90.4
Total displacement	cm^3	1910	1910	1910	1910	1956	2387	2387
Maximum power (EEC)	kW	88	85	110	100	120 (*)/125	147	154
	HP	120	115	150	136	163 (*)/170	200	210
corresponding ratio	rpm	4000	4000	4000	4000	4000	4000	4000
Maximum torque (EEC)	Nm	280	280	320	305	360	400	400
	kgm	28.6	28.6	32.6	31	36.7	40.8	40.8
corresponding ratio	rpm	2000	2000	2000	2000	1750	2000	1500
Spark plugs		–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Fuel		Diesel fuel for motor vehicles (Specification EN590)	Diesel fuel for motor vehicles (Specification EN590)	Diesel fuel for motor vehicles (Specification EN590)	Diesel fuel for motor vehicles (Specification EN590)	Diesel fuel for motor vehicles (Specification EN590)	Diesel fuel for motor vehicles (Specification EN590)	Diesel fuel for motor vehicles (Specification EN590))

(*) For specific markets

(**) QTronic gearbox versions

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FUEL FEED/IGNITION

	1.8 140 HP	1750 TURBO BENZINA 2.2 JTS - 3.2 JTS	1.9 JTDM 8v 1.9 JTDM 16v - 2.0 JTDM 2.4 JTDM
Fuel feed	Multipoint fuel injection	Direct injection	Direct injection, Common Rail

Modifications or repairs to the fuel feed system that are not carried out properly or do not take the system's technical specifications into account can cause malfunctions leading to the risk of fire.

TRANSMISSION

	1.8 140 HP	1750 TURBO BENZINA 3.2 JTS 4x2 - 1.9 JTDM 8v 1.9 JTDM 16v 2.4 JTDM 200 HP 2.0 JTDM - 2.4 JTDM 210 HP	2.4 JTDM 210 HP 4x4 3.2 JTS 4x4
Gearbox	Five forward gears + reverse and synchronisers for speeds	Six forward gears + reverse and synchronisers for speeds	Six forward gears + reverse and synchronisers for speeds
Clutch	Dry single disk with hydraulic control	Dry single disk with hydraulic control	Dry single disk with hydraulic control
Drive	Front	Front	Four-wheel drive

IMPORTANT In the event of difficult disengagement, due to significant difference of grip between front and rear axle, do not insist with heavy accelerations: it is actually more effective an attempt of disengagement at medium slow engine rpm, with pauses of a few seconds if several attempts are necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BRAKES

	1.8 140 HP - 1750 TURBO BENZINA - 2.2 JTS 1.9 JTDM 8v - 1.9 JTDM 16v - 2.0 JTDM	3.2 JTS - 2.4 JTDM
Service brakes:		
– front	Disc, self-ventilating	Disc, self-ventilating
– rear	Disc	Disc, self-ventilating
Parking brake	Controlled by hand lever, it works on rear brakes	

IMPORTANT Water, ice and antifreeze salt on roads may deposit on the brake discs thus reducing braking efficiency at first braking.

STEERING

	1.8 140 HP - 1750 TURBO BENZINA - 2.2 JTS - 3.2 JTS 1.9 JTDM 8v - 1.9 JTDM 16v - 2.0 JTDM - 2.4 JTDM
Type	Rack and pinion with hydraulic power steering
Turning radius (between pavements)	11.1

SUSPENSIONS

	1.8 140 HP - 1750 TURBO BENZINA - 2.2 JTS - 3.2 JTS - 1.9 JTDM 8v 1.9 JTDM 16v - 2.0 JTDM - 2.4 JTDM
Front	High quadrilateral system
Rear	Multi-link system

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WHEELS

RIMS AND TYRES

Pressed steel or alloy rims. Tubeless tyres with radial carcass. The homologated tyres are listed in the Log book.

IMPORTANT In the event of discrepancies between the information provided on this "Owner's Manual" and the "Log book", consider the specifications shown in the log book only.

On cars fitted with four-wheel drive, all four tyres should be the same (brand and track) to prevent damaging the 4-WD system. The efficiency of the 4-WD system however, is not jeopardized if tyres with different wear conditions are fitted.

Attaining to the prescribed size, to ensure safety of the car in movement, it must be fitted with tyres of the same make and type on all wheels.

IMPORTANT Do not use inner tubes with Tubeless tyres.

SPACE-SAVER SPARE WHEEL

Pressed steel rim. Tubeless tyre.

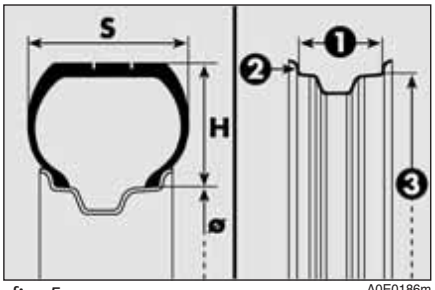


fig. 5

UNDERSTANDING TYRE MARKING fig. 5

Example: 205/55 R 16 91 V

205 = Nominal width (**S**, distance between sidewalls in mm).

55 = Percentage height/width ratio (**H**/**S**).

R = Radial tyre.

16 = Rim diameter in inches. (**Ø**).

91 = Load rating (capacity).

V = Maximum speed index.

Load rating (capacity)

60 = 250 kg
61 = 257 kg
62 = 265 kg
63 = 272 kg
64 = 280 kg
65 = 290 kg
66 = 300 kg
67 = 307 kg
68 = 315 kg
69 = 325 kg
70 = 335 kg
71 = 345 kg
72 = 355 kg
73 = 365 kg
74 = 375 kg
75 = 387 kg
76 = 400 kg
77 = 412 kg
78 = 425 kg
79 = 437 kg
80 = 450 kg
81 = 462 kg
82 = 475 kg
83 = 487 kg
84 = 500 kg
85 = 515 kg
86 = 530 kg
87 = 545 kg
88 = 560 kg
89 = 580 kg
90 = 600 kg
91 = 615 kg
92 = 630 kg
93 = 650 kg
94 = 670 kg
95 = 690 kg
96 = 710 kg
97 = 730 kg
98 = 750 kg
99 = 775 kg
100 = 800 kg
101 = 825 kg
102 = 850 kg
103 = 875 kg
104 = 900 kg
105 = 925 kg
106 = 950 kg

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maximum speed rating

Q = up to 160 km/h.
R = up to 170 km/h.
S = up to 180 km/h.
T = up to 190 km/h.
U = up to 200 km/h.
H = up to 210 km/h.
V = up to 240 km/h.
W = up to 270 km/h.
Y = up to 300 km/h.

Maximum speed rating for snow tyres

Q M + S = up to 160 km/h.
T M + S = up to 190 km/h.
H M + S = up to 210 km/h.

UNDERSTANDING RIM MARKING fig. 5

Example: 7 J x 16 H2 ET 43

7 = rim width in inches **1**.

J = rim drop center outline (side projection where the tyre bead rests) **2**.

16 = rim nominal diameter in inches (corresponds to diameter of the tyre to be mounted) (**3** = **Ø**).

H2 = "hump" shape and number (relief on the circumference holding the Tubeless tyre bead on the rim).

43 = wheel camber angle (distance between the disc/rim supporting plane and the wheel rim centre line).

fig. 6

RIM PROTECTOR TYRES fig. 6

ATTENZIONE

If after-sale tyres with rim protector are used (fig. 6) and the car has integral cups fixed (by springs) to the sheet wheel, DO NOT fit wheel cups. The use of unsuitable tyres and wheel cups could cause a sudden pressure loss of the tyre.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TYRES

		1.8 140 HP 1.9 JTDM 8v 1.9 JTDM 16v 2.0 JTDM	1.9 JTDM 8v ECO 1.9 JTDM 8v (**) 2.0 JTDM ECO 2.0 JTDM (**)	1750 TURBO BENZINA 3.2 JTS - 2.4 JTDM 200 CV 2.4 JTDM 210 CV	TI Versions
Standard tyres	tyre rim	7Jx16" steel 205/55 R16 91V	7Jx16" steel 205/55 R16 91V	7,5Jx17" (*) alloy 225/50 R17 98W	8Jx19" alloy 235/40 ZR19 96Y (▼)
For versions/markets, where provided	tyre rim	7Jx16" steel 215/55 R16 93V	7Jx16" steel 215/55 R16 93V		
	tyre rim	7Jx16" alloy 215/55 R16 93V	7Jx16" alloy 215/55 R16 93V		
Optionals	tyre rim	7,5Jx17" (*) alloy 225/50 R17 98W	7,5Jx17" (*) alloy 225/50 R17 98W		
	tyre rim	8Jx18" alloy 235/45 R18 98W (▼)		8Jx18" alloy 235/45 R18 98W (▼)	
Space-saver spare wheel (for versions/markets, where provided)	tyre rim	4,00B x17" T125/80 R17			

(*) Tyres that cannot be fitted with traditional snow chains. Only "spider" type chains can be used.
(**) For specific markets

IMPORTANT Snow tyres with speed index **H** or superior are recommended.

(▼) Unchainable tyres. When using winter tyres, use 225/50 R17 98 tyres or 235/45 R18 98. Vehicles with TI fittings should not use 16" wheel rims.

Also for 3.2 JTS and 2.4 JTDM 210 HP 4x4 version, snow chains shall be fitted on the FRONT axle of the car.

Traditional snow chains may not be used on tyres type 225/50 R17" only spider type chains can be used. Tyres 235/45 R18" and 235/40 ZR19" cannot be fitted with snow chains due to interference with the fender.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

COLD TYRE INFLATION PRESSURE

		Tyres **205/55 R16 91V**		Tyres **215/55 R16 93V**		Tyres **225/50 R17 98W**		Tyres **235/45 R18 98W** (▼)		Tyres **235/40 ZR19 96Y** (▼)		Space-saver spare wheel **T125/80 R17**
		front	rear	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear	
average load	bar	2.3	2.3	2.3	2.3	2.5	2.5	2.7	2.5	2.7	2.5	4.2
full load	bar	2.6	2.6	2.5	2.5	2.9	2.7	2.9	2.7	3.0	2.8	

(▼) Unchainable tyres. When using winter tyres, use 225/50 ZR17 96 tyres or 235/45 R18 98. Vehicles with TI fittings should not use 16" wheel rims.
Add +0.3 bar to the prescribed inflation pressure when the tyres are warm. Recheck pressure value with cold tyres.
With snow tyres, add +0.2 bar to the inflation pressure value prescribed for standard tyres.

Inflate tyres to full load pressures if driving at continuous speed exceeding 160 km/h.

WHEEL ANGLES

		All types	**TI Versions**	
			4x2 Versions	**4x4 Versions**
Front wheels	– camber	–35′ ± 18′ max. difference right/left: 24′	–1° 1′± 18′ max. difference right/left: 24′	–38′±18′ max. difference right/left: 24′
	– caster	4° 15′ ± 18′ max. difference right/left: 18′	4° 15′± 18′ max. difference right/left: 18′	4° 15′ ± 18′ max. difference right/left: 18′
	– half toe-in (per wheel)	–8′ ± 4′ max. difference right/left: 4′	–7′± 4′ max. difference right/left: 4′	–7′ ± 4′ max. difference right/left: 4′
Rear wheels	– camber	–40′ ± 18′ max. difference right/left: 24′	–1° 3′± 18′ max. difference right/left: 24′	–1° 3′ ± 18′ max. difference right/left: 24′
	– half toe-in (per wheel)	13′ ± 7′ (total toe-in: 26′ ± 7′)	11′± 7′ (total toe-in: 22′± 7′)	11′ ± 7′ (total toe-in: 22′ ± 7′)

VEHICLE GEOMETRY The TI fittings present lower suspensions around of 20 mm with respects to the other versions.

Warning: lowered trim car, pay attention when driving on ramps, humps or on particularly rough routes.

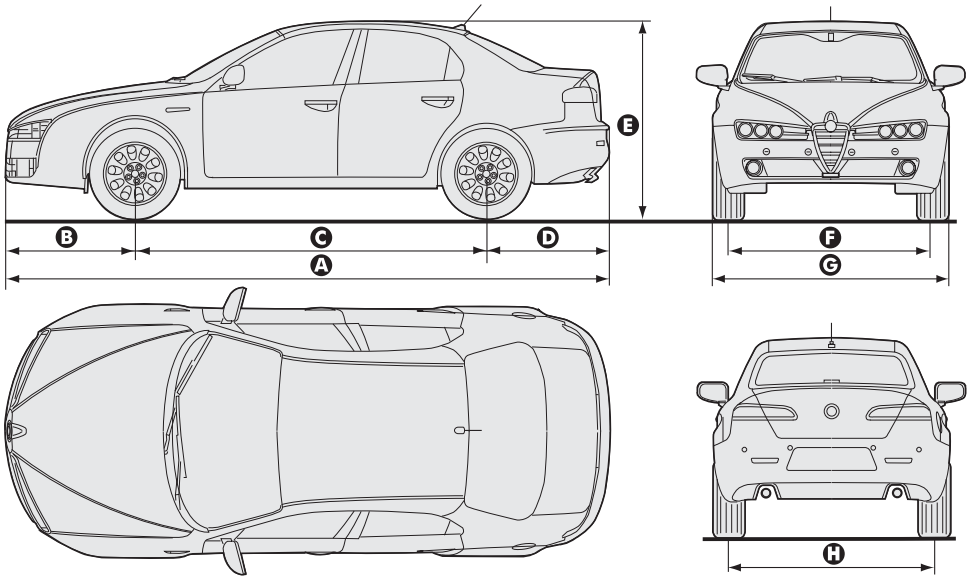
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DIMENSIONS

Dimensions are expressed in mm and refer to the car fitted with standard tyres.

Min. size variations when optional tyres are fitted.

The height refers to the car unladen.



BOOT VOLUME

Boot volume ..... 405 dm^3

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
4660	1000	2700	960	1422 1417 (▪)	1578 1593 (▪)	1828	1555 1573 (▪)

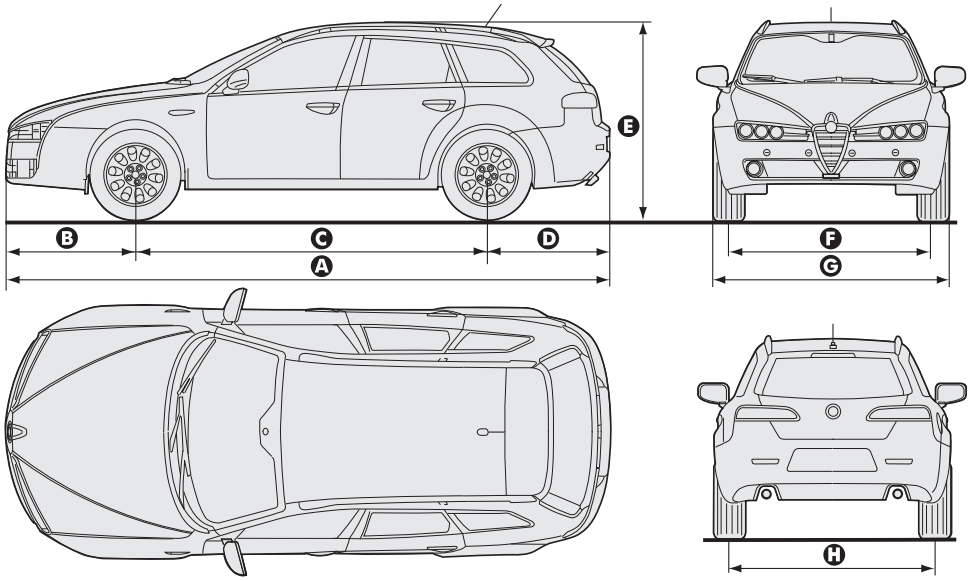
(▪) With tyres 215/55 R16"

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dimensions are expressed in mm and refer to the car fitted with standard tyres.

Min. size variations when optional tyres are fitted.

The height refers to the car unladen.



BOOT VOLUME

Boot volume ..... 445 dm^3

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
4660	1000	2700	960	1422 1417 (■)	1578 1593 (■)	1828	1555 1573 (■)

(■) With tyres 215/55 R16"

(*) With roof racks/ski racks (where provided): 1452/1447 (with 215/55 R16" tyres)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PERFORMANCE

SALOON VERSIONS	Top speed km/h	Acceleration from 0-100 km/h sec.	Kilometer with standing start sec.
1.8 140 HP	208	10.2	31.1
1750 TURBO BENZINA	235	7.7	28.9
3.2 JTS 4x2	250	7.1	27.0
3.2 JTS 4x4	244	7.0	27.3
1.9 JTDM 8v	193	10.7	32.6
1.9 JTDM 8v ECO	197	10.7	32.8
1.9 JTDM 8v ECO (*)	194	11.0	33.2
1.9 JTDM 16v	212	9.2	30.6
2.0 JTDM/2.0 JTDM ECO	218	8.8	30.2
2.0 JTDM ECO (*)	215	9.0	30.5
2.4 JTDM 4x2	231	8.1	28.7
2.4 JTDM 4x4	227	8.3	29.0

(*) For specific markets

SPORTWAGON VERSIONS	Top speed km/h	Acceleration from 0-100 km/h sec.	Kilometer with standing start sec.
1.8 140 HP	206	10.4	31.3
1750 TURBO BENZINA	233	7.9	29.2
3.2 JTS 4x2	248	7.2	27.4
3.2 JTS 4x4	242	7.2	27.7
1.9 JTDM 8v	192	10.9	32.9
1.9 JTDM 8v ECO	196	10.9	33.3
1.9 JTDM 8v ECO (*)	193	11.2	33.7
1.9 JTDM 16v	210	9.4	30.9
2.0 JTDM/2.0 JTDM ECO	216	9.0	30.5
2.0 JTDM ECO (*)	213	9.2	30.8
2.4 JTDM 4x2	229	8.3	29.0
2.4 JTDM 4x4	225	8.5	29.3

(*) For specific markets

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WEIGHTS

Weights (kg) Saloon versions	1.8 140 HP	1750 TURBO BENZINA	3.2 JTS 4x2	3.2 JTS 4x4	1.9 JTDM 8v	1.9 JTDM 16v 2.0 JTDM	2.4 JTDM 4x2	2.4 JTDM 4x4
Weight empty (including fluids, 90% fuel in the tank and no optional)	1385	1430	1540	1610	1480	1490	1585	1645
Maximum admitted load (*)								
— front axle	1100	1100	1220	1220	1150	1130 (△)/1150	1220	1220
— rear axle	1050	1050	1050	1050	1050	1050	1050	1050
— total	1935	1980	2090	2160	2030	2040	2135	2195
Payload including driver (**)	550	550	550	550	550	550	550	550
Towable loads	1400	1500	1700	1700	1500	1500	1500	1500
Max. load on ball	60	60	70	70	60	60	60	60
Maximum load on roof	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50

(*) Loads not to be exceeded. The driver is responsible for arranging the loads in the boot an/or on the roof so that they comply with these limits.

(**) If special equipment is fitted (sunroof, tow hitch etc.) the unladen weight increases, thus reducing the payload as specified in the maximum weight allowed.

(△) 2.0 JTDM versions

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Weights (kg) Sportwagon versions	**1.8 140 HP**	**1750 TURBO BENZINA**	**3.2 JTS 4x2**	**3.2 JTS 4x4**	**1.9 JTDM 8v**	**1.9 JTDM 16v 2.0 JTDM**	**2.4 JTDM 4x2**	**2.4 JTDM 4x4**
Weight empty (including fluids, 90% fuel in the tank and no optional)	1435	1480	1590	1660	1530	1540	1635	1695
Maximum admitted load (*)								
— front axle	1100	1100	1220	1220	1150	1130 (Δ)/1150	1220	1220
— rear axle	1050	1050	1050	1100	1050	1050	1050	1100
— total	1985	2030	2140	2210	2080	2090	2185	2245
Payload including driver (**)	550	550	550	550	550	550	550	550
Towable loads	1400	1500	1800	1800	1500	1500	1500	1500
Max. load on ball	60	60	75	75	60	60	60	60
Maximum load on roof (***)	80	80	80	80	80	80	80	80

(*) Loads not to be exceeded. The driver is responsible for arranging the loads in the boot an/or on the roof so that they comply with these limits.

(**) If special equipment is fitted (sunroof, tow hitch etc.) the unladen weight increases, thus reducing the payload as specified in the maximum weight allowed.

(***) Lineaccessori Alfa Romeo roof rack, max capacity: 50 kg.

(Δ) 2.0 JTDM versions

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAPACITIES

		1.8 140 HP	1750 TURBO BENZINA	3.2 JTS 2.4 JTDM 210 HP 4x4	1.9 JTDM 8v	1.9 JTDM 16v	2.0 JTDM	2.4 JTDM	Specified fuels and original lubricants
Fuel tank:	litres	70 ●	70 ●	70 ●	70 ❍	70 ❍	70 ❍	70 ❍	● Unleaded petrol with no less than 95 R.O.N. (EN228 Specification) ❍ Diesel fuel for motor vehicles (EN590 Specification)
— including a reserve of	litres	10 ●	10 ●	10 ●	10 ❍	10 ❍	10 ❍	10 ❍	
Engine cooling system	litres	8.0	6.6	10.3	7.5	7.5	6.1	7.35	Mixture of 50% water and **PARAFLU^UP^** (▲)
Lubrication system engine	litres	4.5 ■	5.0 ☆	5.4 ■	4.6 ★	4.6 ★	4.9 ★	6.4 ❑	■ **SELENIA StAR** ❑ **SELENIA WR** ☆ **SELENIA StAR P.E.** (1750 TURBO BENZINA versions) ★ **SELENIA WR P.E.**
Mechanical gearbox/ differential	litres	1.6	2.0	2.8 (△)	2.3	2.3	2.8	2.8	**TUTELA CAR MATRYX** **(△) TUTELA MULTIAXLE**
Windscreen/headlight washer fluid reservoir:	litres	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	Mixture of water and liquid **TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35**

(▲) For particularly hard climate conditions, we recommend use of a 60% **PARAFLU^UP^** and 40% demineralized water mixture.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS

RECOMMENDED PRODUCTS AND THEIR SPECIFICATIONS

Use	Fluid and lubricant specifications for correct car operation	Original fluids and lubricants	Change
Lubricants for petrol engines (1.8 140 HP, 2.2 JTS and 3.2 JTS versions)	Synthetic-based oil, grade SAE 5W-40, **FIAT 9.55535-H2** qualification	**SELENIA StAR** Contractual Technical Reference N° F216.D05	According to Service Schedule
Lubricants for petrol engines (1750 TURBO BENZINA versions)	Synthetic-based oil, grade SAE 5W-40, ACEA C3. **FIAT 9.55535-S2** qualification.	**SELENIA StAR P.E.** Contractual Technical Reference N° F603.D08	According to Service Schedule
Lubricants for diesel engines (2.4 JTDM versions)	Synthetic-based oil, grade SAE 5W-40 **FIAT 9.55535-N2** qualification.	**SELENIA WR** Contractual Technical Reference N° F515.D06	According to Service Schedule
Lubricants for diesel engines (1.9 JTDM 8V, 1.9 JTDM 16V, 2.0 JTDM versions)	Synthetic-based oil, grade SAE 5W-30. **FIAT 9.55535-S1** qualification.	**SELENIA WR P.E.** Contractual Technical Reference N° F510.D07	According to Service Schedule

For diesel engines, in emergency cases where genuine products are not available, lubricants with min. performance ACEA B4 and ACEA C2 are accepted. If this is the case, the best engine performance is not guaranteed. We however recommend replacing the lubricant with those recommended by Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

Use of products with low-quality properties than ACEA A3 and ACEA B4 could cause damages to the engine that are not covered by the warranty.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Use	Fluid and lubricant specifications for correct car operation	Original fluids and lubricants	Applications
Lubricants and greases for transmission	Synthetic-based oil, grade SAE 75W-85 that passes API GL 4 specifications. Qualification **FIAT 9.55550-MZ1**	**TUTELA CAR MATRYX** Contractual Technical Reference N° F108.F02	Mechanical gearbox and differential
	Synthetic-based oil, grade SAE 75W-90 that passes API GL-5 specifications, ZF-TE ML 18. Qualification **FIAT 9.55550-DA3**	**TUTELA MULTIAXLE** Contractual Technical Reference N° F426.E06	Rear differential and transmission unit (3.2 JTS 4X4 and 2.4 JTDM 4x4 version)
	Synthetic fluid for hydraulic and electrohydraulic systems. Qualification **FIAT 9.55550-AG3**.	**TUTELA GI/R** Contractual Technical Reference N° F428.H04	Power steering
	Grease containing Molybdenum bisulphide for high temperature appliances. NLGI 1-2 consistency. Qualification **FIAT 9.55580**.	**TUTELA ALL STAR** Contractual Technical Reference N° F702.G07	CV joints on wheel side
	Grease for homokinetic joints with low friction coefficient. NLGI 0-1 consistency. Qualification **FIAT 9.55580**.	**TUTELA STAR 700** Contractual Technical Reference N° F701.C07	CV joints on differential side
Brake fluid	Synthetic fluid for Brake and clutch controls FMVSS n° 116 DOT 4, ISO 4925, SAE J1704, CUNA NC 956-01 Qualification **FIAT 9.55597**.	**TUTELA TOP 4** Contractual Technical Reference N° F001.A93	Brake and clutch hydraulic controls
Protective agent for radiators	Protective with antifreeze action, red colour based on inhibited monoethylen glycol and organic formula, that passes CUNA NC 956-16, ASTM D 3306 specifications. Qualification **FIAT 9.555523**.	**PARAFLUUP** (●) Contractual Technical Reference N° F101.M01	Radiator antifreeze proportion: 50% water and 50% **PARAFLUUP** (❑)
Additive for diesel fluid	Additive for diesel fuel with anti-freeze action, protecting Diesel engines.	**TUTELA DIESEL ART** Contractual Technical Reference N° F601.L06	To be mixed with fuel oil (25 cc per 10 litres)
Windscreen/ headlight washer fluid	Mixture of alcohol and surfactants CUNA NC 956-11. Qualification **FIAT 9.55522**.	**TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35** Contractual Technical Reference N° F201.D02	To be used diluted or undiluted

(●) **IMPORTANT** Do not top up or mix with fluids having different specifications from those described here.

(❑) For particularly hard climate conditions, we recommend use of a 60% **PARAFLUUP** and 40% demineralized water mixture.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FUEL CONSUMPTION

The fuel consumption figures given in the table below are determined on the basis of the homologation tests set down by specific European Directives. The procedures below are followed for measuring consumption:

– **urban cycle**: cold starting followed by driving that simulates urban use of the car;

– **extra-urban cycle**: frequent accelerating in all gears, simulating extraurban use of the car; the speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h;

– **combined consumption**: is calculated weighing about 37% of urban cycle consumption and about 63% of extraurban consumption.

IMPORTANT The type of route, traffic situations, weather conditions, driving style, general conditions of the car, trim level/equipment/accessories, load, climate control system, roof rack, other situations that affect air drag may lead to different fuel consumption levels than those measured.

FUEL CONSUMPTION ACCORDING TO EUROPEAN DIRECTIVE IN FORCE (litres x 100 km)	Urban	Extra-urban	Combined
1.8 140 HP	10.3 (❑) 10.7 (△)	6.0 (❑) 6.1 (△)	7.6 (❑) 7.8 (△)
1750 TURBO BENZINA	11.8 (❑) 12.0 (△)	6.0 (❑) 6.2 (△)	8.1 (❑) 8.3 (△)
3.2 JTS 4x2	16.4 (❑) 16.5 (△)	7.9 (❑) 7.9 (△)	11.0 (❑) 11.0 (△)
3.2 JTS 4x4	16.7 (❑) 17.0 (△)	8.3 (❑) 8.3 (△)	11.4 (❑) 11.5 (△)
1.9 JTDM 8v	7.8 (❑)/6.6 (❑) (❍) 7.9 (△)/6.7 (△) (❍)	4.8 (❑)/4.4 (❑) (❍) 4.9 (△)/4.5 (△) (❍)	5.9 (❑)/5.2 (❑) (❍) 6.0 (△)/5.3 (△) (❍)
1.9 JTDM 16v	7.5 (❑) 7.6 (△)	4.6 (❑) 4.7 (△)	5.7 (❑) 5.8 (△)
2.0 JTDM	7.1 (❑)/6.6 (❑)(❍) 7.2 (△)/6.7 (△)(❍)	4.4 (❑)/4.3 (❑)(❍) 4.5 (△)/4.4 (△)(❍)	5.4 (❑)/5.1 (❑)(❍) 5.5 (△)/5.2 (△)(❍)
2.4 JTDM 4x2	9.2 (❑) 9.2 (△)	5.4 (❑) 5.5 (△)	6.8 (❑) 6.9 (△)
2.4 JTDM 4x4	9.7 (❑) 9.9 (△)	5.8 (❑) 5.9 (△)	7.2 (❑) 7.4 (△)

(❑) Saloon versions (△) Sportwagon versions (❍) ECO versions

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CO_2 EMISSIONS

The CO_2 emission levels given in the following tables refer to combined consumption.

CO_2 EMISSIONS ACCORDING TO EUROPEAN DIRECTIVE IN FORCE (g/km)

Saloon versions

1.8 140 HP	1750 TURBO BENZINA	3.2 JTS 4x2	3.2 JTS 4x4	1.9 JTDM 8v	1.9 JTDM 16v	2.0 JTDM	2.4 JTDM 4x2	2.4 JTDM 4x4
179	189	260	270	157/138 (*)	150	142/136 (*)	179	192

(*) ECO versions

Sportwagon versions

1.8 140 CV	1750 TURBO BENZINA	3.2 JTS 4x2	3.2 JTS 4x4	1.9 JTDM 8v	1.9 JTDM 16v	2.0 JTDM	2.4 JTDM 4x2	2.4 JTDM 4x4
183	194	262	272	159/140 (*)	153	145/139 (*)	181	194

(*) ECO versions

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RADIO FREQUENCY REMOTE CONTROL: Ministerial Certifications

	Certification number	
	T939	**NTR939**
European Union and Countries applying EC directive	CE 0523	CE 0523
Argentina	❐	❐
Australia	—	N15278
Brazil	❐ ANATEL HHHH-AA-FFFF	❐ ANATEL HHHH-AA-FFFF
Bulgaria		
China	CMII ID : 2006DJ0352	CMII ID : 2006DJ0351

❐ Data unavailable at the time of printing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Certification number	
	T939	**NTR939**
Malaysia	❒ DIKECUALIKAN CMA 1998 AA 000000 E	❒ DIKECUALIKAN CMA 1998 AA 000000 E
Mexico	❒ YYYYXXXX-XXX	❒ YYYYXXXX-XXX
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément : MR 2395 ANRT 2006 Date d'agrément : 13/01/2006	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément : MR 2394 ANRT 2006 Date d'agrément : 13/01/2006
Singapore	**Complies with IDA Standards DA 104022**	**Complies with IDA Standards DA 104022**
South Africa	ICASA TA-2005/701 APPROVED	ICASA TA-2005/702 APPROVED
Taiwan	**CCAB06LP4430T9**	**CCAB06LP4440T2**

❒ Data unavailable at the time of printing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Gruppo TRW Automotive
Divisione Body Control Systems Europe & Emerging Markets
TRW Automotive Italia S.p.A.
(Società unipersonale)

Sede Amministrativa e Stabilimento:
Via Miraflores, 20
I-10042 Nichelino – Torino (Italia)
Tel. +39.011.6059211
Fax. +39.011.6055722

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

CE 0523

This declaration is the responsibility of the manufacturer / authorised representative within the Community :

TRW Automotive Italia S.p.A.
BCS Europe and Emerging Markets
Via Miraflores, 20 Nichelino-TO- I-10042 ITALY

(Name / Address)

This certifies that the following designated product

T 939
(Product identification)

complies with the essential protection requirements of R&TTE Directive 1999/5/ EC on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to ***Radio Spectrum Matters, EMC*** and ***Electrical Safety.***

This declaration applies to all specimens manufactured in accordance with the technical documentation described in the annex II. TRW Automotive Italia S.p.A. keep this documentation at the proposal of the relevant national authorities of any Member State for inspection purpose.

Assessment of compliance of the product with the essential requirements according to the Article 3 R&TTE was based on Annex IV of the Directive 1999/5/ EC and the following standards:

Radio Spectrum : EN 300 220-1&3
(Identification of regulations / standards)

EMC : EN 301 489 Part 1&3
(Identification of regulations / standards)

Safety : EN 60950
(Identification of regulations / standards)

The Transmitter **T 939** uses the frequency 433.92MHz which is harmonised throughout the Community. This device is licence exempt and may be distributed in the European countries which apply the R&TTE directive

Nichelino 2005, 14th Mar
(Place, date)

(Signature)

Giuseppe ROSSI
(Name in block letters)

Sede Legale: C.so Stati Uniti,41 – 10129 Torino (Italia)
Codice Fiscale e Registro Imprese di Torino n. 04867880017
Partita IVA n. 04867880017
Cap. Soc. € 10.075.000 interamente versato

Gruppo TRW Automotive
Divisione Body Control Systems Europe & Emerging Markets
TRW Automotive Italia S.p.A.
(Società unipersonale)

Sede Amministrativa e Stabilimento:
Via Miraflores, 20
I-10042 Nichelino – Torino (Italia)
Tel. +39.011.6059211
Fax. +39.011.6055722

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

CE 0523

This declaration is the responsibility of the manufacturer / authorised representative within the Community :

TRW Automotive Italia S.p.A.
BCS Europe and Emerging Markets
Via Miraflores, 20 Nichelino-TO- I-10042 ITALY

(Name / Address)

This certifies that the following designated product

NTR 939
(Product identification)

complies with the essential protection requirements of R&TTE Directive 1999/5/ EC on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to ***Radio Spectrum Matters, EMC*** and ***Electrical Safety.***
This declaration applies to all specimens manufactured in accordance with the technical documentation described in the annex II. TRW ITALIA S.p.A. keep this documentation at the proposal of the relevant national authorities of any Member State for inspection purpose.
Assessment of compliance of the product with the essential requirements according to the Article 3 R&TTE was based on Annex IV of the Directive 1999/5/ EC and the following standards:

Radio Spectrum : EN 300 220-1&3. EN 300 330-2
(Identification of regulations / standards)

EMC : EN 301 489 Part 1&3
(Identification of regulations / standards)

Safety : EN 60950
(Identification of regulations / standards)

The Transceiver **NTR 939** uses the frequencies 433.92MHz & 125kHz which are harmonised throughout the Community. This device is licence exempt and may be distributed in the European countries which apply the R&TTE directive

Nichelino 2005, 14th Mar
(Place, date)

(Signature)

Giuseppe ROSSI
(Name in block letters)

Sede Legale: C.so Stati Uniti,41 – 10129 Torino (Italia)
Codice Fiscale e Registro Imprese di Torino n. 04867880017
Partita IVA n. 04867880017
Cap. Soc. € 10.075.000 interamente versato

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ALFA 159 SPORTWAGON

REARSCREEN WIPER 276
BOOT 277
ROOF RACK/SKI RACK 284
PRESETTING FOR MOUNTING THE "UNIVERSAL ISOFIX" CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM ... 285
IF AN EXTERIOR LIGHT BURNS OUT 288
IF AN INTERIOR LIGHT BURNS OUT 290
IF A FUSE BLOWS 292

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REARSCREEN WIPER

OPERATION

Rear window wiper activation/deactivation

Turning the unstable ring nut **A-fig. 1** to position **ON/OFF** will obtain flick wipe of the rear window wiper. To turn it off, turn the ring nut back to position **ON/OFF**.

The activation of the rear windshield wiper occurs also with the front windshield wipe on and reverse gear inserted.

Rear window "smart" washing

Turning the unstable ring nut **A-fig. 1** to position will obtain rear window washing. Keeping the unstable ring nut at position it will be possible to activate with just one movement both the windscreen wiper and the rear window wiper; the latter comes actually into action automatically when the unstable ring nut is kept at position for over half a second.

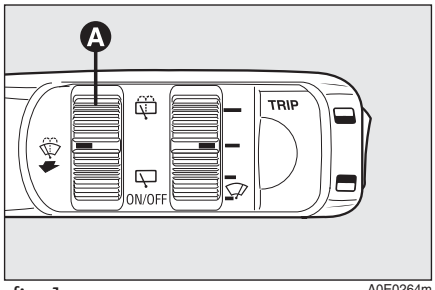


fig. 1 A0E0264m

The rear window wiper stops working a few strokes after releasing the ring nut; a further stroke after about 6 seconds completes the wiping operation.

Never use the wiper to remove ice or snow from the rear window. In these conditions, the wiper is submitted to excessive effort that results in motor protection cutting in and wiper operation inhibition for few seconds as a consequence. Should it be not possible to restore its operation, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Service.

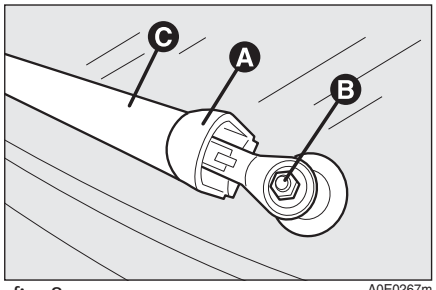


fig. 2 A0E0267m

HANGING THE REARSCREEN WIPER BLADE

Proceed as follows:

- ❒ raise the cover **A-fig. 2**, slacken the nut **B** and remove the arm **C**;
- ❒ position the new arm correctly, fully tighten the nut **B** and then lower the cover **A**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

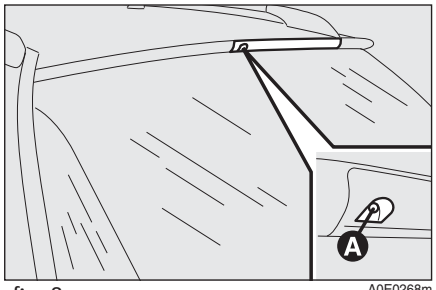


fig. 3 A0E0268m

SPRAY NOZZLE

If the jet of fluid is inadequate, firstly check that there is fluid in the reservoir (see "Checking fluid levels" in section "Car maintenance").

Then check that the nozzle holes **A-fig. 3** are not clogged, if necessary use a needle to clean them.

BOOT

TAILGATE EMERGENCY OPENING FROM THE INSIDE

To open the tailgate from the inside if the battery is flat or the electric tailgate lock is failing, proceed as follows:

- ❒ tilt the rear seats completely (see paragraph "Extending the boot" in section "Dashboard and controls");
- ❒ remove the rear head restraints;
- ❒ take the screwdriver from the tool container and working inside the boot (on the rear part), fit it into seat **A-fig. 4** and then operate lever **B-fig. 5**.

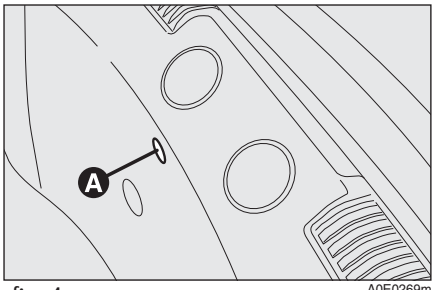


fig. 4 A0E0269m

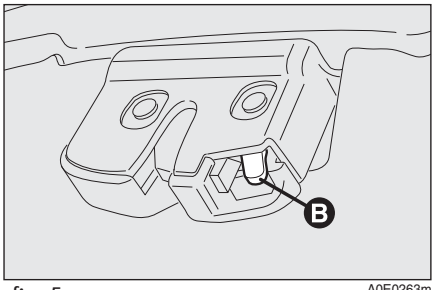


fig. 5 A0E0263m

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EXTENDING THE BOOT

The boot can be partially (1/3 or 2/3) or totally extended splitting the rear seat.

Proceed as follows:

- ❒ lower completely the rear seat head restraints;
- ❒ check that the seat belt is not twisted;
- ❒ lift seat back lever **A-fig. 6** to unlock respectively the left or right section of the backrest and tilt the seat back forward. Lever raising is indicated by a "red band" **B**.

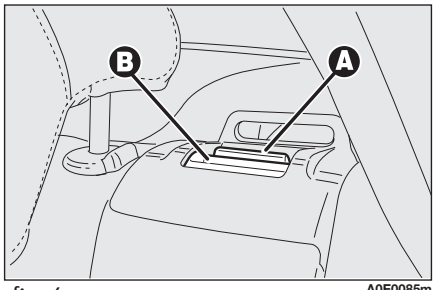


fig. 6

The boot extension to the right makes it possible to carry two passengers on the rear seat left-hand side. The boot extension to the left makes it possible to carry one passenger on the rear seat right-hand side.

IMPORTANT

- ❒ before performing the operation of folding the backrest over, make sure that the rear head restraints are in the "rest" position (completely lowered). The head restraints can be removed to improve the load carrying capacity;
- ❒ before tilting the backrest, ensure that the rear armrest is not lowered. Otherwise, insert it in its seat (see section "Internal equipment" in chapter "Dashboard and controls").

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To return the rear seat back to its original position

Raise the seat backrests and push them back until hearing the locking click of both retainers.

Position seat belt buckles upwards.

IMPORTANT When the backrest is properly secured, the "red band" **B-fig. 6** on levers **A** shall no longer be visible. The "red band" actually indicates that the backrest is not properly secured. Make sure the head restraints are properly positioned.

Make sure the backrest is properly secured at both sides (red bands not visible) to prevent it moves forward in the event of sharp braking causing injuries to passengers.

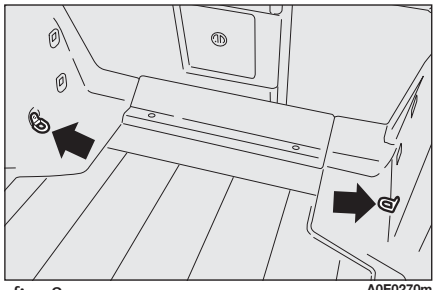


fig. 8

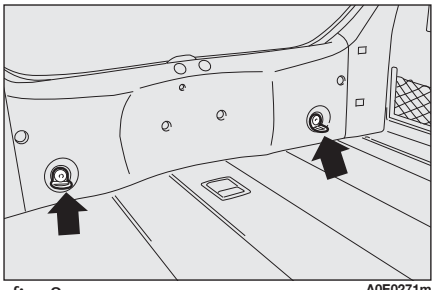


fig. 9

ANCHORING THE LOAD

The boot houses 4 hooks (see **fig. 8** and **fig. 9**) for anchoring ropes in order to guarantee perfect load anchoring.

Hooks shall also be used to secure the luggage retaining net (for versions/markets, where provided where applicable, at Alfa Romeo Authorised Services).

WARNING

A heavy load that has not been secured may cause serious harm.

WARNING

If you want to carry reserve fuel in a can, follow law regulations, only using a certified can, suitably fastened to the load securing eyelets. Even in this way the risk of fire is increased in the case of an accident.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

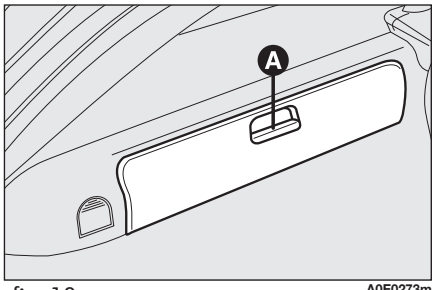


fig. 10 A0E0273m

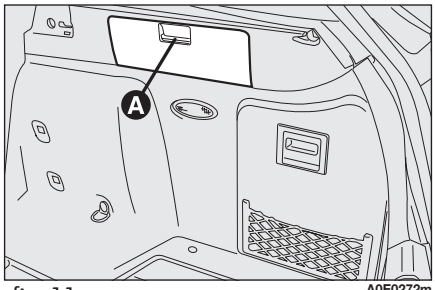


fig. 11 A0E0272m

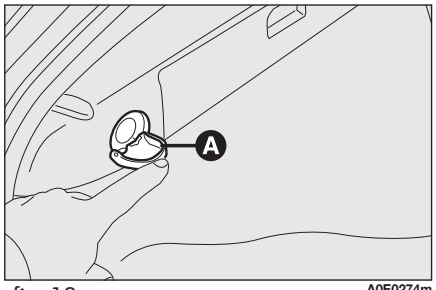


fig. 12 A0E0274m

ODDMENT COMPARTMENTS fig. 10 - 11

The boot sides are equipped with two oddment compartments closed by a cover.

To open the cover press button **A** and turn it downwards.

CURRENT OUTLET

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The current outlet is located on the left side of the boot.

To use the current outlet, open the lid **A-fig. 12**. The current outlet only works with the key fitted into the ignition device and can only be used to power accessories having max. 15A intake (180 W).

Never use the outlet for accessories with power over the max. specified one. Long power intake can run down the battery and inhibit engine starting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

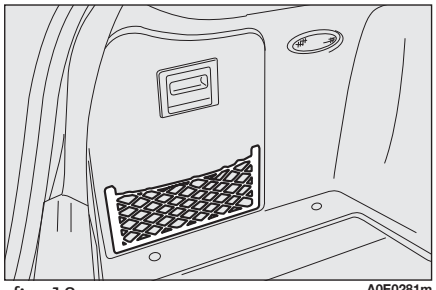


fig. 13 A0E0281m

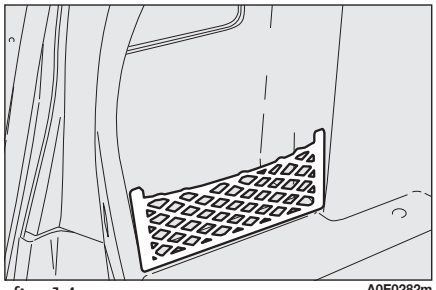


fig. 14 A0E0282m

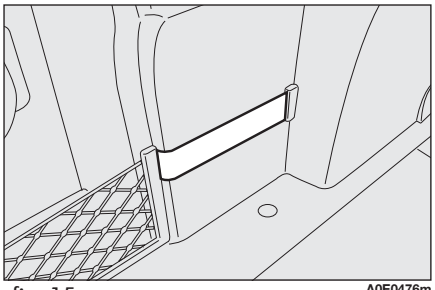


fig. 15 A0E0476m

LUGGAGE NET

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The left and right sides of the boot are quipped with a luggage retainer net.

– **fig. 13** - version with side lid (for versions/markets, where provided)

– **fig. 14** - version without side lid

– **fig. 15** - fixing elastic.

As optional, for versions/markets where applicable, an additional luggage retainer net can be fitted.

Use the seats **A-fig. 16** located in the front part of the boot to hook the net as shown in **fig. 19**.

Using seats **B-fig. 17** to secure the net to the rear side of the boot.

To secure the net, fit hooks **A-fig. 18** into seats **B** and press downwards.

To release the net, take it out upwards while keeping button **C** pressed.

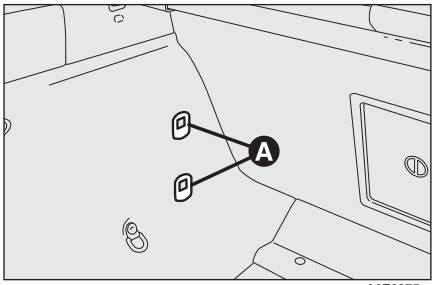


fig. 16 A0E0275m

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

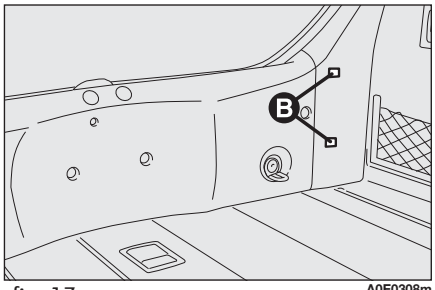


fig. 17 A0E0308m

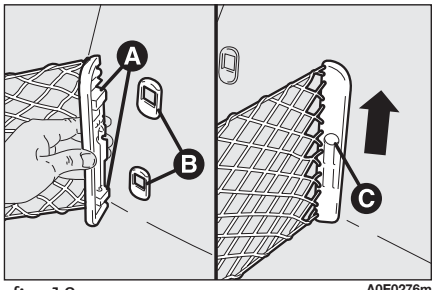


fig. 18 A0E0276m

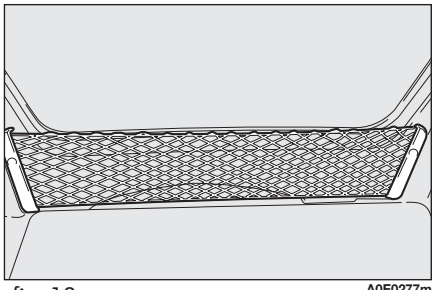


fig. 19 A0E0277m

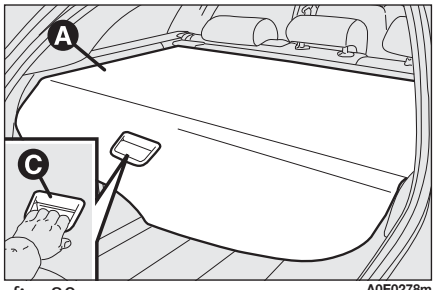


fig. 20 A0E0278m

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER

The luggage compartment cover **A-fig. 20** can be rolled up and removed.

To roll it up remove the two rear pins **B-fig. 21** from their housings.

IMPORTANT Hold the cover by handle **C-fig. 20** and guide it during rolling up.

IMPORTANT To remove the net roll it up and check whether also the passenger's compartment separation net (for versions/markets, where provided) is rolled up (see next paragraph), then pull up lever **D-fig. 23**. Raise the net and take it out from the boot.

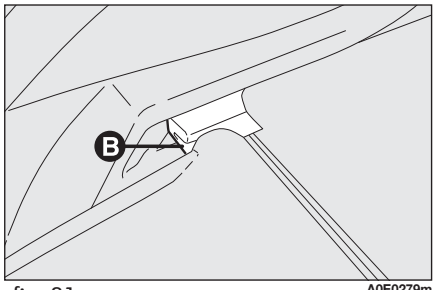


fig. 21 A0E0279m

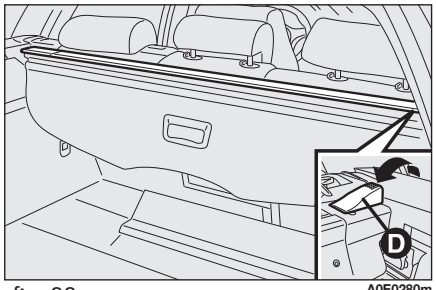


fig. 22 A0E0280m

To refit the net, proceed as follows:

- ❒ fit the net into the proper seat on the left side (side without lever);
- ❒ keep the lever **D-fig. 22** up and fit the net into the proper seat on the right side;
- ❒ release lever **D**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Do not put objects on the cover which may damage it.

WARNING

The objects put on the cover may be thrown forwards and injure passengers should you brake sharply or in the event of an accident. Your are recommended to use the passenger's compartment separation net.

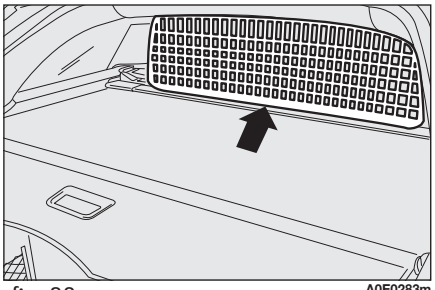


fig. 23

PASSENGER'S COMPARTMENT UPPER SEPARATION NET

(for versions/markets, where provided)

In addition to the luggage compartment cover, certain versions are also fitted with a passenger's compartment upper separation net **fig. 23**.

The net for separating the passenger's compartment from the boot is contained into a special bar.

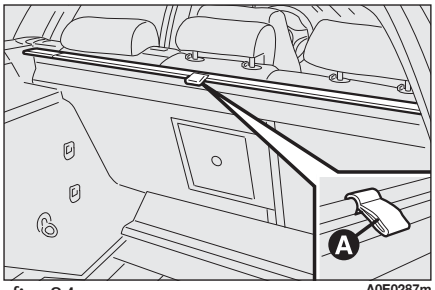


fig. 24

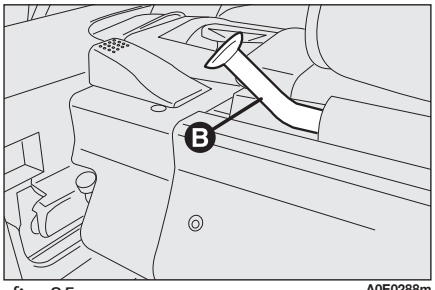


fig. 25

To extend it, take it out of the reel by taking tongue **A-fig. 24** and secure ends **B-fig. 25** into the two housings **C-fig. 26** (one per side) located on the roof of the car.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

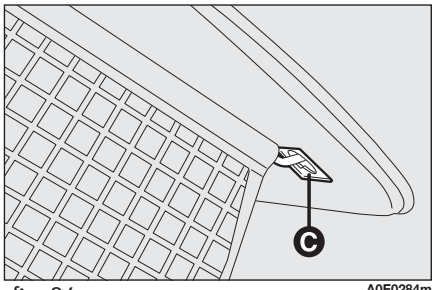


fig. 26 A0E0284m

To roll up the net, release ends **B-fig. 25** from housings **C-fig. 26** and guide it during rolling.

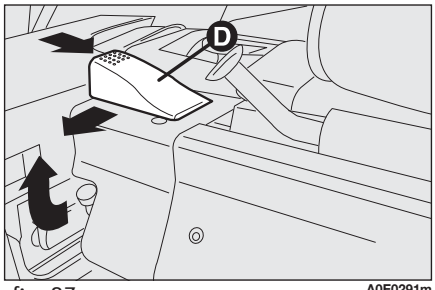


fig. 27 A0E0291m

Passenger's compartment separating net removal/refitting

To remove the net press button **D-fig. 27** as shown in the figure, move the separating net releasing it from its seat, on both left and right side. make the net slide as shown in the figure, removing the pins from their seats.

To refit the net reverse the removal operations described previously.

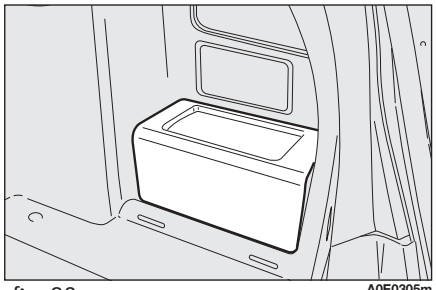


fig. 28 A0E0305m

SOUND SYSTEM

CD Changer (for versions/markets, where provided)

O certain versions, behind the right boot lid, is fitted a CD Changer for 10 discs (see **fig. 28**).

Amplifier (for versions/markets, where provided)

Versions equipped with Bose Hi-Fi system also have an amplifier behind the left boot lid.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

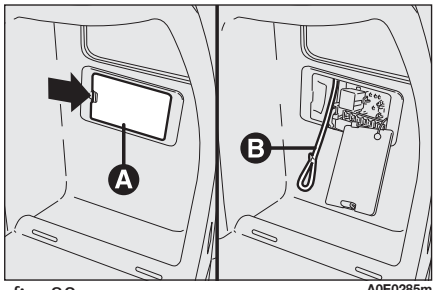


fig. 29

FUEL CAP EMERGENCY OPENING

In the event of a failure, to open the fuel cap proceed as follows:

- open the fuse box lid **A-fig. 29** on the right side of the boot as shown by the arrow;
- pull the string **B** set aside the use box.

ROOF RACK/ SKI RACK

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The car can be fitted with two longitudinal bars **fig. 30** that can be used, by adding special accessories to carry various objects (e.g.: skis, windsurf, etc.)

IMPORTANT Never exceed the max. permissible loads (see section "Technical Specifications").

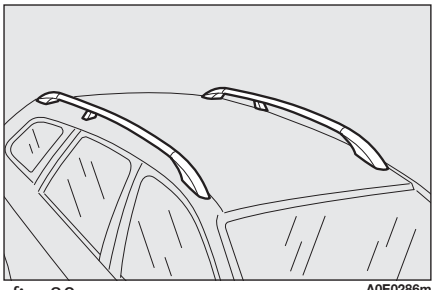


fig. 30

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PRESETTING FOR MOUNTING THE "UNIVERSAL ISOFIX" CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

This car is preset for mounting the Universal Isofix child restraint system, a new European standardised system for carrying children safely. **fig. 31** shows an example of child restraint system. The Universal Isofix child's seat covers weight group 1.

Because of the different attachment system, the child seat must be secured by the specific bottom metal rings **A-fig. 32**, located in the squab upholstery, in the position marked by isofix flags (accessible by opening the zips on the covers) to the specific ring **A-fig. 33** located behind the rear seat squab level with the child seat.

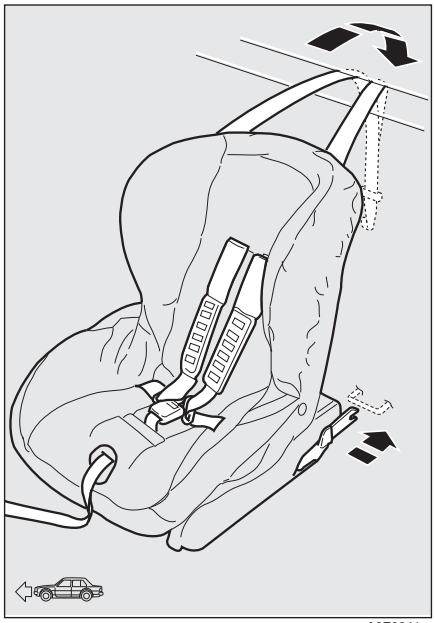


fig. 31

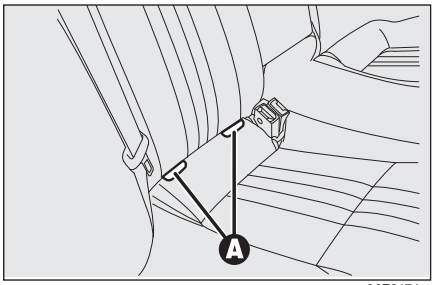


fig. 32

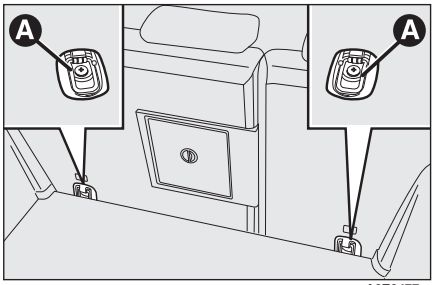


fig. 33

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To use fastener **A-fig. 33**, proceed as follows:

- ❒ tilt the rear set backrest (see paragraph "Extending the boot" in this section);
- ❒ pull up fastener **A** and then secure the belt to the fastener.

It is possible to mount both the traditional restraint system and the "Universal Isofix" one. Remember that in case of Universal Isofix child's seats, you can only use all those seats approved with the ECE R44/03 writing "Universal Isofix".

At Lineaccessori Alfa Romeo you can find the "Universal Isofix" "Duo Plus" child's seat.

For any further detail on installation and/or use, refer to the "Instructions Manual" that must be provided by the child restraint system's Manufacturer.

WARNING

Mount the child restraint system only with the car stationary. The Universal Isofix child restraint system is properly anchored to the mounting brackets when clicks are heard. In any case, keep to the installation instructions that must be provided by the child restraint system's Manufacturer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IF AN EXTERIOR LIGHT BURNS OUT

For the type of bulb and power rating, see paragraph “When needing to change a bulb" in section "In an emergency".

IMPORTANT Before changing a bulb, read carefully the instructions given in section "In an emergency".

REAR LIGHT UNITS

Reversing light/ rear fog lights

To replace the bulbs proceed as follows:

❒ open the tailgate;

❒ remove cover **A-fig. 35** working with a screwdriver in the point indicated by the arrow;

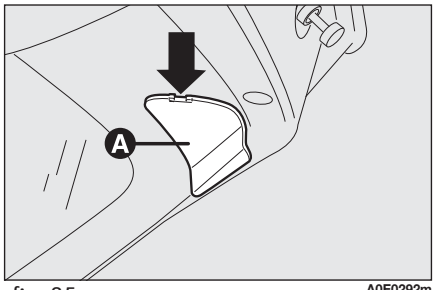


fig. 35 A0E0292m

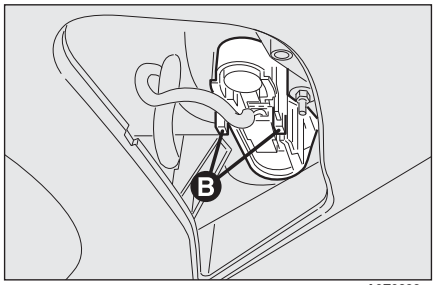


fig. 36 A0E0293m

IMPORTANT To release the inspection lid, protect the screwdriver tip with a cloth to prevent scratching.

❒ remove the bulb holder unit by pressing the retaining tabs **B-fig. 36**;

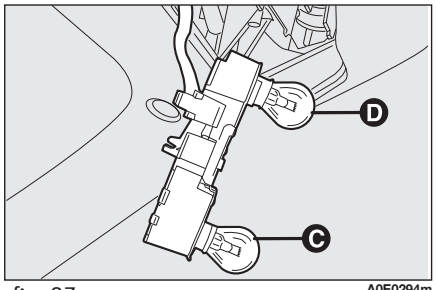


fig. 37 A0E0294m

❒ remove and replace the burnt-out bulb by pressing it slightly and turning it counterclockwise **fig. 37**:

C: reversing light bulb on passenger side or right side;

C: rear fog light bulb on driver side or left side;

❒ refit the bulb holder unit securing it properly using the retaining tabs **B-fig. 36**;

❒ close cover **A-fig. 35**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Taillight bulb on tailgate

To replace the bulbs proceed as follows:

❒ open the tailgate;

❒ remove the cover **A-fig. 35** working in the point shown by the arrow;

❒ remove the bulb holder unit by pressing the retaining tabs **B-fig. 36**;

❒ remove and replace the burnt-out bulb by pressing it slightly and turning it counterclockwise **fig. 37**:

D: taillight bulb on right/left headlight

❒ refit the bulb holder unit securing it properly using the retaining tabs **B-fig. 36**;

❒ close cover **A-fig. 35**.

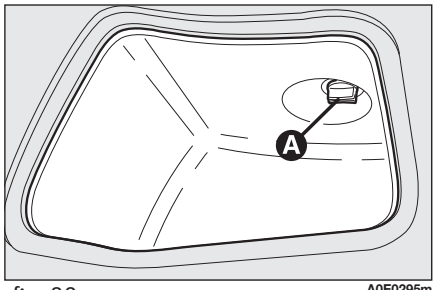


fig. 38 A0E0295m

Direction indicators/ Taillights/Brake lights

To replace the bulbs proceed as follows:

❒ open the tailgate;

❒ on certain versions, open the side lid;

❒ remove the protection cover by operating device **A-fig. 38**;

❒ remove the bulb holder unit by pressing the retaining tabs **B-fig. 39**;

❒ remove and replace the burnt-out bulb by pressing it slightly and turning it counterclockwise **fig. 40**:

E: taillight/brake light bulb;

F: direction indicator bulb

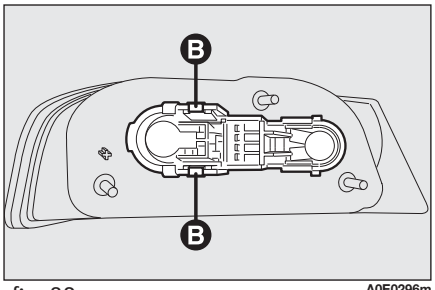


fig. 39 A0E0296m

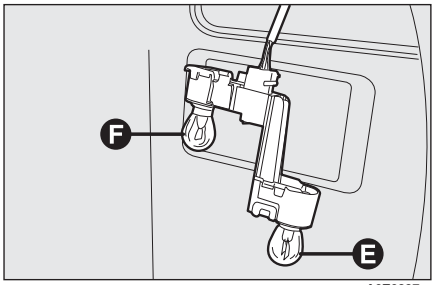


fig. 40 A0E0297m

❒ refit the bulb holder unit securing it properly using the retaining tabs **B-fig. 39**;

❒ refit the protection cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

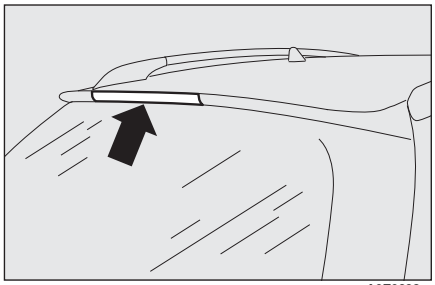


fig. 41 A0E0298m

ADDITIONAL BRAKE LIGHT (THIRD STOP)

The additional brake light is made up of LEDs and it is built into the rear spoiler **fig. 41**.

Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the third brake light replaced.

IF AN INTERIOR LIGHT BURNS OUT

For the type of bulb and power rating, see paragraph “When needing to change a bulb" in section "In an emergency".

IMPORTANT Before changing a bulb, read carefully the instructions given in section "In an emergency".

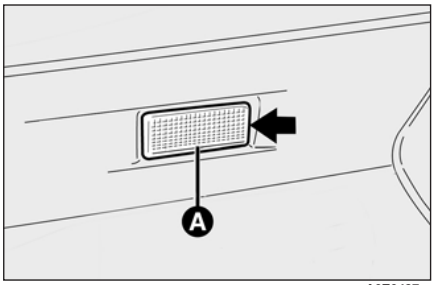


fig. 42 A0E0487m

BOOT LIGHT

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

- ❒ open the tailgate;
- ❒ remove the light unit **A-fig. 42** levering in the point shown by the arrow;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

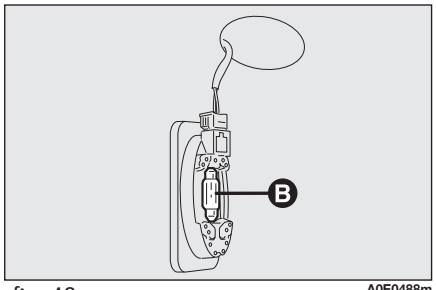


fig. 43 A0E0488m

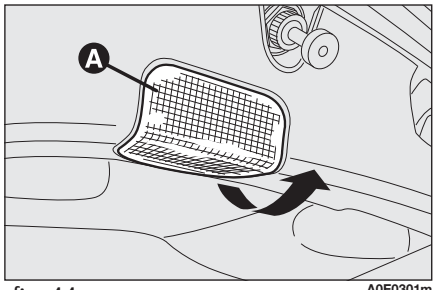


fig. 44 A0E0301m

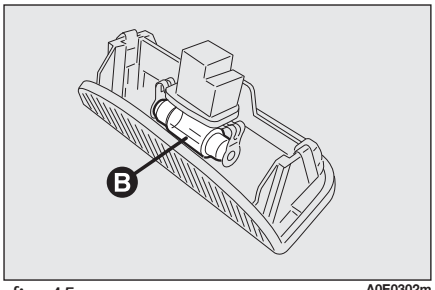


fig. 45 A0E0302m

- ❒ replace the bulb **B-fig. 43** releasing it from the side contacts making sure that the new bulb is correctly clamped between the contacts;
- ❒ refit the light unit inserting first one side and then the other one until hearing the locking click.

TAILGATE LIGHT

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

- ❒ open the tailgate;
- ❒ remove the light unit **A-fig. 44** working in the point shown by the arrow;
- ❒ replace the bulb **B-fig. 45** releasing it from the side contacts making sure that the new bulb is correctly clamped between the contacts;
- ❒ refit the light unit inserting first one side and then the other one until hearing the locking click.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IF A FUSE BLOWS

The fuse specific for the Sportwagon version is located in the fuse box at the right side of the boot (see “In an emergency” chapter).

IMPORTANT Before changing a bulb, read carefully the instructions given in section "In an emergency".

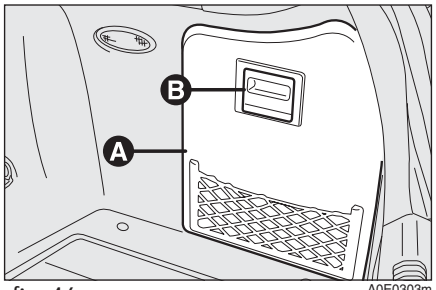


fig. 46

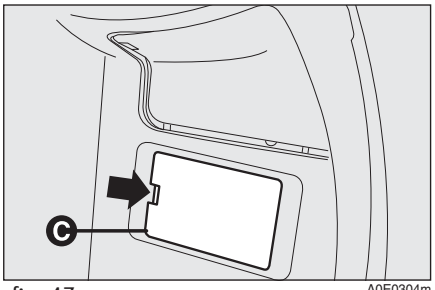


fig. 47

To open the fuse box, proceed as follows:

❒ use handle **B** to open the right lid (for versions/markets, where provided) **A-fig. 46**;

❒ open the fuse box lid **C-fig. 47** working in the point shown by the arrow.

COMPONENT	FUSE	AMPERE
Socket	F55	15

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SOUND SYSTEM

INTRODUCTION 295
Tips 295
- Road safety 295
- Reception conditions 295
- Care and maintenance 295
- CD 296
Technical specifications 297
HI-FI Bose audio system 298

QUICK REFERENCE GUIDE 299
Controls on steering wheel 302
Introduction 303
- Tuner section 303
- CD section 303
- CD MP3 section 303
- Audio section 303
- Media Player section..... 303

FUNCTIONS AND SETTINGS 304
Switching on the car radio 304
Switching off the car radio 304
Selecting the tuner function 304
Selecting CD/CD Changer functions 304
Audio source memory function 304
Volume setting 304
Mute/Pause function 305
Audio settings 305
Tone setting 305
Balance setting 305
Fader setting 306
Loudness function 306
Menu..... 307
Telephone setup 313
Anti-theft protection..... 313

RADIO (Tuner) 314
Introduction 314
Frequency band selection 314
Preset buttons 314
Storing the last station listened to 314
Automatic tuning 315
Manual tuning 315
AutoSTore function 315
Emergency alarm reception 316
EON function 316
Stereo stations 316

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CD PLAYER 317
Introduction 317
Selecting the CD player 317
Loading/ejecting a CD 317
Error messages 318
Display information 318
Track selection 318
Fast forward/backward track selection 318
Pause function 318

MP3 CD PLAYER 319
Introduction 319
MP3 mode 319
Selecting MP3 sessions with hybrid discs 320
Display information 320
Select next/previous folder 320
Structure of the folders 320

CD CHANGER (CDC) 321
Introduction 321
CD Changer selection 321
Error messages 321
CD selection 321

TROUBLESHOOTING 322

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INTRODUCTION

The car radio is equipped with a CD player (radio and CD player) or a CD-MP3 player (radio and CD-MP3) and was designed to combine with the specific features of the passenger compartment. It has a customised design that integrates the style of the dashboard. The size of the car radio is compatible with the car and as it cannot be adapted to any other vehicle, it is fixed.

The car radio is installed in an ergonomically convenient position for the driver and the passenger; the graphics on the front panel help to quickly identify the controls and makes them easier to use.

A CD Changer is available from Lineaccessori Alfa.

The instructions for use are provided below. We recommend that you read them carefully. The instructions also refer to how to operate the CD Changer (if present) using the radio. Refer to the specific manual for instructions on how to use of the CD Changer.

TIPS

Road safety

Learn how to use all different radio functions (e.g. how to save stations) before beginning to drive.

Reception conditions

Reception conditions change constantly while driving. Reception may be disturbed by mountains, buildings or bridges, or when you are far away from the broadcasting station.

WARNING The volume may be increased when receiving traffic reports.

WARNING

Excessively loud volume can be a risk for driver and other people on the road. The volume must therefore always be adjusted so that you can still hear noise from the surroundings (e.g. horns, ambulance sirens, police sirens, etc.).

Care and maintenance

The radio is designed for a long operational life and does not require particular maintenance. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services in case of faults.

Clean the cover with a soft antistatic cloth only. Cleaning and polishing products may damage the surface.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CD

Remember that dirt, scratches or distortions on the CD could cause skipping while it is playing and poor sound quality. Follow these guidelines for optimum playback:

❒ only use branded CDs:

❒ clean each CD carefully to remove fingerprints or dust using a soft cloth. Hold CDs by the outside and clean them from the middle outwards;

❒ never use chemicals (e.g. antistatic products or thinners or sprays) for cleaning as they could damage the surface of the CDs;

❒ after listening to the CDs, put them back in their boxes to avoid them being marked or scratched, which could cause them to skip during playing;

❒ never expose CDs to direct sunlight, high temperatures or moisture for extended periods of time, which could cause them to become distorted;

❒ do not stick labels on the CD surface or write on the recorded surface with pencil or pen.

To remove a CD from its container, press down in the middle and lift up the disc, holding it carefully around the outside.

Always take the CD by holding it around its outside circumference. Never touch the surface.

To remove fingerprints and dust, use a soft cloth starting from the centre of the CD outwards.

Never use CDs that are very scratched, cracked, distorted, etc. Their use could cause damage the player or make it malfunction.

The use of original CDs is required for the best quality audio playback. Correct operation is not guaranteed when CD-R/RW media are used that were not correctly burned and/or with a maximum capacity above 650 Mb.

WARNING Do not use commercially available protective sheets for CDs or discs with stabilisers as these could get stuck in the internal mechanism and damage the disc.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING If a copy-protected CD is used, it may take a few seconds before the system will start to play it. In addition, since many new and different protection methods are continuously being introduced, it is not possible to guarantee that the CD player will be able to play any protected CD. Information regarding copy protection is often stated in fine or difficult to read print on the cover of the CD itself, or indicated by phrases such as, for example, "COPY CONTROL", "COPY PROTECTED", "THIS CD CANNOT BE PLAYED ON A PC/MAC", or identified by symbols such as for example:

In addition, protected disks often do not have the audio disk identifying symbol on the disk (or on the case) itself:

WARNING The CD player can read most of the compression systems currently on the market (e.g.: LAME, BLADE, XING, FRAUNHOFER) but as these systems are continually evolving, playback of all compression formats is not guaranteed.

WARNING If a multisession disc is loaded, only the first session will be played.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Car radio

Maximum power: 4x30 W

Speakers

The system includes:

— 2 tweeter speakers, max. power 30 W each, positioned on the ends of the dashboard;

— 2 mid-woofer speakers, diameter 165 mm, max. power 30 W each, positioned in the front doors;

— 2 tweeter speakers, max. power 30 W each, positioned in the rear doors;

— 2 mid-woofer speakers, diameter 165 mm, max. power 30 W each, positioned in rear doors.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HI-FI BOSE AUDIO SYSTEM

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The BOSE HI-FI audio system was carefully designed to provide the best acoustic performance and reproduce sound like a live concert in all areas of the passenger compartment.

The system faithfully reproduces crystalline high tones and provides full and rich bass tones that make the loudness function superfluous. The full sound range is reproduced throughout the entire passenger compartment so that the occupants are enveloped with the feeling of space experienced when listening to live music.

Components are patented and make use of the most sophisticated technology whilst at the same time being easy to use by even the most inexperienced people.

Technical information

The system consists of:

— 2 tweeter speakers, max. power 50 W each, positioned on the ends of the dashboard;

— 2 mid-woofer speakers, diameter 165 mm, max. power 90 W each, positioned in front doors, designed for optimal medium-to-low frequencies;

— 2 rear tweeter speakers, max. power 50 W each, positioned in the rear doors;

— 2 mid-woofer speakers, diameter 165 mm, max. power 90 W each, positioned in rear doors, designed for optimal medium-to-low frequencies;

— 1 mid-tweeter (Centerfill) speaker, diameter 80 mm, max. power 50 W, positioned in middle of dashboard;

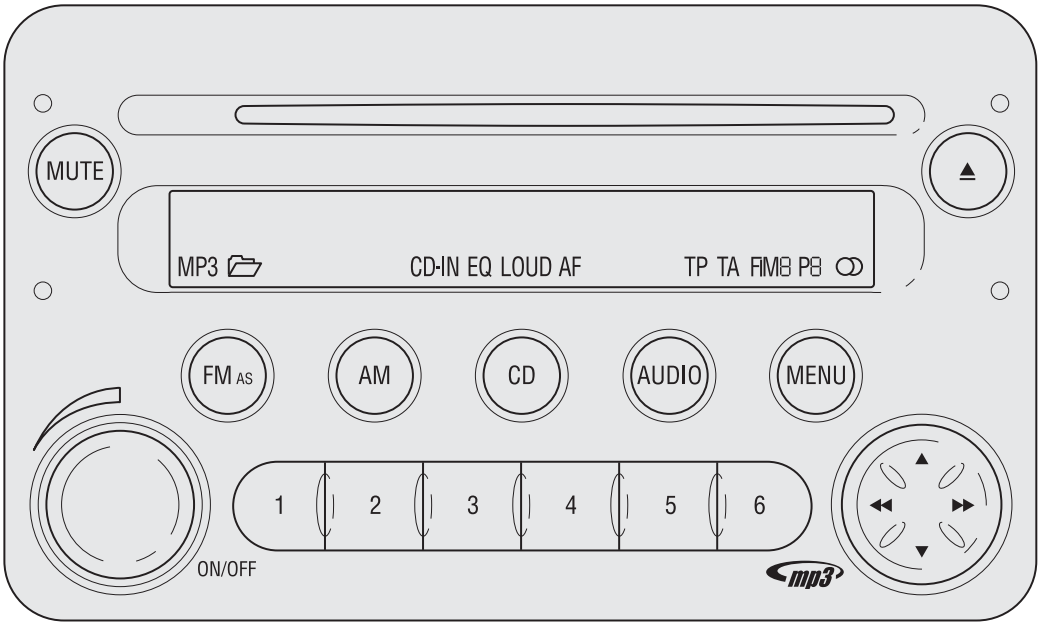
— 1 sub-woofer (Saloon versions), diameter 250 mm, max. power 200 W, positioned on rear window shelf;

— 1 bass-box reflex (Sportwagon versions), diameter 130 mm, max. power 200 W, positioned in boot;

— audio power amplifier, 6 independent channels, positioned on rear window shelf for controlling all speakers in the car.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

QUICK REFERENCE GUIDE



A0F0531m

Button	GENERAL FUNCTIONS	Mode
ON/OFF	On	Brief press on knob
	Off	Long press on knob
	Volume adjustment	Turn knob leftwards/rightwards

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Button	GENERAL FUNCTIONS	Mode
FMAS	FM1, FM2, FM Autostore radio source selection	Repeated brief press on button
AM	MW, MW1, MW2 radio source selection	Repeated brief press on button
CD	Radio CD/CD-Changer/Media Player source selection (with Blue&Me™ only)	Repeated brief press on button
MUTE	Volume on/off (MUTE/PAUSE)	Brief press on button
AUDIO	Audio settings: low tones (BASS), high tones (TREBLE), left/right balance (BALANCE), front/rear balance (FADER)	Activate menu: brief press on button Select setting type: press buttons ▲ or ▼ Adjust settings: press buttons ◀◀ or ▶▶
MENU	Advanced functions settings	Activate menu: brief press on button Select setting type: press buttons ▲ or ▼ Adjust settings: press buttons ◀◀ or ▶▶

Button	TUNER FUNCTIONS	Mode
▲ ◀◀ ▶▶ ▼	Search radio station: • Automatic search • Manual search	Automatic search: press buttons ◀◀ or ▶▶ (hold pressed to fast forward) Manual search: press buttons ▲ or ▼ (hold pressed to fast forward)
1 2 3 4 5 6	Store current radio station	Long press on buttons for memory preset 1 to 6
	Recall stored station	Brief press on buttons for memory preset 1 to 6

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

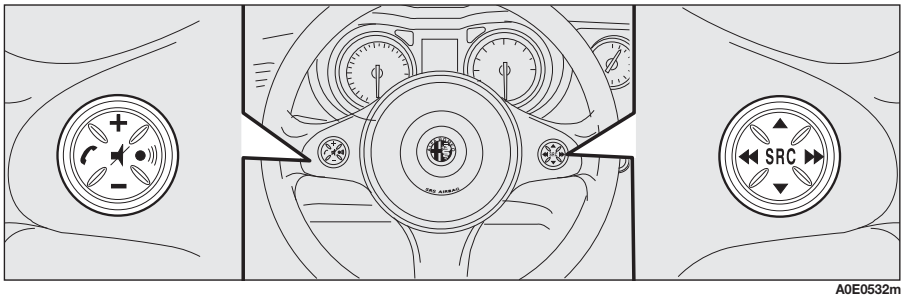
Button	CD FUNCTIONS	Mode
⏏	Eject CD	Brief press on button
◀◀ ▶▶	Play previous/next track	Brief press on buttons ◀◀ or ▶▶
	CD track fast forward/backward	Long press on buttons ◀◀ or ▶▶
▲	Play previous/next disc (for CD-Changer)	Brief press on buttons ▲ or ▼
▼	Play previous/next folder (for CD-MP3)	Brief press on buttons ▲ or ▼
▲ ▼	Select previous/next folder/artist/genre/album according to active selection mode	Brief press on button
◀◀ ▶▶	Play previous/next track	Brief press on button

Button	Media Player FUNCTIONS (with Blue&Me™ only)	Mode
▲ ▼	Select folder/artist/genre/previous/next album according to the active selection mode	Brief press on button
◀◀ ▶▶	Play previous/next track	Brief press on button

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CONTROLS ON STEERING WHEEL

(for versions/markets, where provided)



A0E0532m

Button	FUNCTION	Mode
🔇	AudioMute on/off (Radio mode) or Pause (Media Player mode - with Blue&Me™ only)	Brief press on button
+	Volume up	Press button
–	Volume down	Press button
SRC	Select radio frequency range (FM1, FM2, FMT, FMA, MW) or audio source: Radio - CD - MP3 - CD Changer or Media Player (with Blue&Me™ only)	Press button
▲	Radio: recall pre-selected stations (from 1 to 6) MP3: select next folder CD Changer: select next CD in CD Changer	Press button
▼	Radio: recall pre-selected stations (from 6 to 1) MP3: select previous folder CD Changer: select previous CD in CD Changer	Press button
◀◀	Radio: autosearch previous station CD player: select previous track CD Changer: select previous track	Press button
▶▶	Radio: autosearch next station CD player: select next track CD Changer: select next track	Press button

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INTRODUCTION

The device offers the following functions:

Tuner section

- ❒ PLL tuning in frequency bands FM/AM/MW;
- ❒ RDS (Radio Data System) with TA (traffic information) - TP (traffic programmes) EON (Enhanced Other Network) - REG (regional programmes) functions;
- ❒ AF: alternative frequency search selection in RDS mode;
- ❒ emergency alarm set up;
- ❒ automatic/manual station tuning;
- ❒ FM Multipath detector;
- ❒ manual storing of 30 stations: 18 in FM band (6 in FM1, 6 in FM2, 6 in FMT), 12 in MW band (6 in MW1, 6 in MW2);
- ❒ automatic storing (AUTOSTORE function) of 6 stations in the dedicated FM band;
- ❒ SPEED VOLUME function (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system): speed-dependent automatic volume adjustment;
- ❒ automatic Stereo/Mono selection.

CD section

- ❒ Direct disc select;
- ❒ Track select (forward/backward);
- ❒ Fast track search (forward/backward);
- ❒ CD Display function: disc name/time elapsed since the start of the track;
- ❒ Play audio CD, CD-R and CD-RW.

Multimedia CDs include data tracks in addition to the audio tracks. Playing this type of CD could cause hissing at a volume that could jeopardise road safety as well as damage the output stages and the speakers.

CD MP3 section

- ❒ MP3-Info function (ID3-TAG);
- ❒ Select folder (previous/next);
- ❒ Select track (forward/backward);
- ❒ Fast track search (forward/backward);
- ❒ MP3 Display function: name of folder, ID3-TAG information, time elapsed since start of track, file name;
- ❒ Play audio or data CD, CD-R and CD-RW.

Audio section

- ❒ Mute/Pause function;
- ❒ Soft Mute function;
- ❒ Loudness function (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system);
- ❒ 7 band graphic equalizer (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system);
- ❒ Separate bass/treble adjustment;
- ❒ Right/left channel balancing.

Media Player section (with Blue&Me™ only)

See description in the Blue&Me™ supplement for Media Player operations.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FUNCTIONS AND SETTINGS

SWITCHING ON THE CAR RADIO

The car radio comes on when the ON/OFF button/knob is briefly pressed.

When the car radio is turned on the volume is limited to 5 if the value was higher than this when the radio was last used.

When the radio is switched on with the key off, it switches off automatically after about 20 minutes. After the radio has switched itself off automatically it can be turned on for a further 20 minutes by pressing the ON/OFF button/knob.

SWITCHING OFF THE CAR RADIO

Keep the ON/OFF button/knob pressed.

SELECTING THE TUNER FUNCTION

Pressing the FMAS button quickly and repeatedly to cyclically select the following audio sources:

❒ TUNER (“FM1”, “FM2”, “FMT”);

Press the AM button quickly and repeatedly to cyclically select the following audio sources:

❒ TUNER (“MW1”, “MW2”).

SELECTING CD/CD CHANGER FUNCTIONS

Press the CD button briefly and repeatedly to cyclically select the following audio sources:

❒ CD (only if a CD is inserted);

❒ CHANGER (CD Changer - only if the CD Changer is connected).

AUDIO SOURCE MEMORY FUNCTION

If another function (e.g. the radio) is selected whilst listening to a CD, playback is interrupted and is resumed from the same point when returning to the CD source.

If another function is selected whilst listening to the radio, the last station selected is tuned into when returning to the Radio source.

VOLUME SETTING

Turn the ON/OFF button/knob to adjust the volume.

If the volume level is changed during the transmission of traffic news, the new setting will only be maintained until the update is over.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MUTE/PAUSE FUNCTION (zeroing the volume)

Press the MUTE button briefly to activate the Mute function. The volume will gradually decrease and the words "RADIO Mute" will appear on the display (in tuner mode) or "PAUSE" (in CD or CD-Changer mode).

Press the MUTE button again to deactivate the Mute function. The volume will gradually increase until it reaches the level set previously.

When the volume is changed using the dedicated controls, the Mute function is deactivated and the volume is adjusted to the new selected level.

Mute will be ignored when there is an incoming traffic alert (if the TA function is activated) or if an emergency alarm is received. The function will be reactivated when the alert is over.

AUDIO SETTINGS

The audio menu functions depend on the activated function: AM/FM/CD/CDC/Media Player (with Blue&Me™ only).

Press the AUDIO button briefly to change the Audio functions. After the AUDIO button is first pressed, the display will show the bass level value for the source activated at that time (e.g. in FM mode the display will show "FM Bass + 2").

To scroll through the Menu functions use button ▲ or ▼. To change the setting of the selected function, use the ◀◀ or ▶▶ buttons.

The current status of the function selected will be shown on the display.

The functions managed by the Menu are:

❒ BASS (bass adjustment);

❒ TREBLE (treble adjustment);

❒ BALANCE (right/left balance adjustment);

❒ FADER (front/rear balance adjustment);

❒ LOUDNESS (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system) (LOUDNESS function on/off);

❒ EQUALIZER (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system) (activation and selection of factory equalizer settings);

❒ USER EQUALIZER (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI) (customised equalizer settings).

TONE SETTING (bass/treble)

Proceed as follows:

❒ Use button ▲ or ▼ to set the "Bass" or "Treble" in the AUDIO menu;

❒ press the button ◀◀ or ▶▶ to increase/decrease the bass or treble settings.

By pressing the buttons briefly, the levels will change progressively. Hold pressed to adjust the levels faster.

BALANCE SETTING

Proceed as follows:

❒ Use the ▲ or ▼ button to set the "Balance" in the AUDIO menu;

❒ press the ◀◀ button to turn up the sound from the right speakers or the ▶▶ button to turn up the sound from the left speakers.

By pressing the buttons briefly, the levels will change progressively. By pressing them for longer, the levels will change quickly.

Select the "◀◀ or ▶▶" value to set the right and left audio outputs at the same value.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FADER SETTING

Proceed as follows:

❒ Use the ▲ or ▼button to set the "Fader" in the AUDIO menu;

❒ press the ◀◀ button to turn up the sound coming from the rear speakers or the ▶▶ button to turn up the sound coming from the front speakers.

By pressing the buttons briefly, the levels will change progressively. Hold pressed to adjust the levels faster.

Select the "◀◀ or ▶▶" value to set the same level for the front and rear audio outputs.

LOUDNESS FUNCTION (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system)

The Loudness function improves the volume of the sound whilst listening at low volumes, increasing the bass and treble.

To turn the function on/off, select "Loudness" in the the AUDIO menu using the ▲ or ▼ button. The function status (on or off) is shown on the display for a few seconds by the words "Loudness On" or "Loudness Off".

PRESET/USER*/ CLASSIC/ ROCK/JAZZ functions (equalizer on/off) (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system)

The built-in equalizer can be activated/deactivated. When the equalizer function is off, the audio settings can only be changed by adjusting the bass and treble settings, whereas when the function is on, the acoustic curves can be adjusted.

To turn the equalizer off, select the "EQ Preset" function using the ◀◀ or ▶▶ buttons.

To turn the equalizer on, use the ◀◀ or ▶▶ buttons to select one of the settings:

❒ "FM/AM/CD...EQ User" (adjustment of 7 equalizer bands that can be changed by the user);

❒ "Classic" (optimal equalizer presetting for classical music);

❒ "Rock" (optimal equalizer presetting for rock and pop music);

❒ "Jazz" (optimal equalizer presetting for jazz music);

"EQ" will appear on the display when one of the equaliser presets is active.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

*USER EQ SETTINGS function (equalizer settings only if the USER settings function is selected) (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system)

To set a personalized equalizer adjustment, point to USER using button ▲ or ▼ and press button ▼ for a while.

A graph with 7 bars will appear on the display, where each bar represents a frequency. Select the bar to adjust using the ◀◀ or ▶▶ buttons; the bar selected will start flashing and can be adjusted using the ▲ or ▼ buttons.

Press the AUDIO button again to store the setting. The display will show the source activated at the time followed by the word User. If the mode is, for example, FM, then the display will show "FM EQ User".

MENU

MENU button functions

Press the MENU button briefly to activate the Menu function. The display will show the first menu item that can be adjusted (AF) ("AF Switching On" on the display).

To scroll through the Menu functions use button ▲ or ▼. To change the setting of the selected function, use the ◀◀ or ▶▶ buttons.

The current status of the function selected will be shown on the display.

The functions managed by the Menu are:

❒ AF SWITCHING (ON/OFF)

❒ TRAFFIC INFORMATION (ON/OFF)

❒ REGIONAL MODE regional programmes (ON/OFF)

❒ MP3 DISPLAY (CD MP3 display setting)

❒ SPEED VOLUME (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system) (volume setting according to speed)

❒ RADIO ON VOLUME (radio volume maximum limit on/off)

❒ EXTERNAL AUDIO (telephone volume)

❒ RADIO OFF (off mode)

❒ SYSTEM RESET.

Press the MENU button again to exit the Menu function.

IMPORTANT AF SWITCHING, TRAFFIC INFORMATION and REGIONAL MODE adjustments are only possible in FM mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AF SWITCHING function (alternative frequency search)

The radio can operate in two different modes in the RDS mode:

❒ "AF Switching On" - search for alternative frequencies activated (the letters "AF" appear on the display);

❒ "AF Switching Off" - search for alternative frequencies not activated.

Proceed as follows to switch the function on/off:

❒ press the MENU button and select "AF Switching On";

❒ briefly press the ◀◀/▶▶ buttons to turn the function on/off.

With the function on, the radio automatically tunes into the station with the strongest signal broadcasting the same programme. In this way when driving you can continue listening to the same station without having to change the frequency when you change areas.

Obviously, it must be possible to receive the station that you are listening to in the area you are driving through.

"AF" will light up in the display when the AF function is on.

If the AF function has been activated and the radio is not able to receive the tuned station, the radio activates the automatic search, during which "FM Search" appears on the display (for versions/markets, where provided).

With the AF function deactivated, the remaining RDS functions, such as the display of the station name, still remain active.

The AF function can only be activated on FM bands.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TRAFFIC INFORMATION function (traffic announcements)

Some stations on the FM band (FM1, FM2 and FMA) can transmit information about traffic conditions. The letters "TA" will appear in the display in this case.

Proceed as follows to switch the TA function on/off:

❒ press the MENU button and select "Traffic Info";

❒ briefly press the ◀◀/▶▶ buttons to turn the function on/off.

If the TA function is activated, "TA" will light up on the display.

IMPORTANT If the TA function is activated with an audio source other than Tuner (Radio) (CD, MP3, Telephone or Mute/Pause), the radio can carry out an automatic search and therefore the frequency tuned into may be different from the one set previously when selecting the Tuner (Radio) source again.

With the TA function:

❒ search only for RDS stations that transmit on the FM band, which are enabled to transmit traffic information;

❒ receive traffic information even if the CD player/CD Changer function is on;

❒ receive traffic information at a minimum preset volume even with the radio volume off.

IMPORTANT In some countries there are radio stations that do not broadcast traffic information even with the TA function activated ("TA" on the display).

If the radio is tuned to a station in the AM band, when TA is activated it will tune to the last selected station in the FM1 band.

The volume at which the traffic news is transmitted depends on the listening volume:

❒ listening volume below 5: traffic news volume 5 (fixed value);

❒ listening volume above 5: traffic news volume equal to listening volume +1.

If the volume is changed during a traffic update, the level will not be shown on the display; the new level will only be maintained during the update.

While traffic information is being received, "TRAFFIC INFORMATION" will appear on the display.

The TA function can be interrupted by pressing any button on the car radio.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REGIONAL MODE function (reception of regional broadcasts)

Some national broadcasters will transmit regional programmes at certain times of the day (that vary from region to region). This function makes it possible to tune into local (regional) broadcasters automatically (see EON function paragraph).

If you want the radio to automatically tune into the regional stations being broadcast on the network selected, the function must be activated.

To turn the function on/off, use the ◀◀ or ▶▶ buttons.

The current status of the function will appear on the display:

❒ "Regional Mode: On" - function on.

❒ "Regional Mode: Off" - function off.

If the function is deactivated and you have tuned into a regional station working in a given area and you enter a different area, then the regional station received in the new area will be broadcast.

IMPORTANT If the AF and REG functions are on at the same time, once a border between two regions is crossed, the radio may not switch correctly to a valid alternative frequency.

MP3 DISPLAY function (display of MP3 Compact Disc information)

This function is used to select the information shown by the display when listening to a CD containing MP3 tracks.

The function can only be selected if a CD MP3 is inserted: in this case "MP3 Display" will appear on the display.

To change the function, use the ◀◀ or ▶▶ buttons.

There are six available settings:

❒ "Title" (if ID3-TAG is available)

❒ "Author" (if ID3-TAG is available)

❒ "Album" (if ID3-TAG is available)

❒ "Folder" name

❒ "File" name

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SPEED VOLUME function (volume setting according to speed) (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system)

This function automatically adapts the volume level to the speed of the car, turning up the volume when the speed increases to maintain the ratio with the noise level inside the passenger compartment.

To turn the function on/off, use the ◀◀ or ▶▶ buttons. The current status of the function will appear on the display:

❒ Off: function off

❒ Low: function on (low setting)

❒ High: function on (high setting).

RADIO ON VOLUME function (radio volume maximum limit activation/deactivation)

This function is used to turn the maximum volume limit on/off when turning the radio on.

The display shows the function status:

❒ "On volume limit: on" - when the radio is switched on the volume level will be:
- the maximum volume if the volume level is equal to or higher than the maximum value;
- the same as before it was switched off if the volume level is between the minimum and maximum values;
- minimum volume if the volume level is equal to or lower than the minimum.

❒ "On volume limit: off" - the radio will come on at the volume level it was at before switching off. The volume may be between 0 and 40.

Use the ◀◀/▶▶ buttons to change the setting.

NOTES

❒ The menu can only be used to turn the function on/off and not to set the minimum or maximum volume.

❒ If the "TA" or "TEL" functions or an outside audio source are activated when the radio is turned on, the radio will come on at the volume set for these sources. When the outside audio source is deactivated, the volume can be adjusted between the minimum and maximum levels.

❒ If the battery charge is low, it will not be possible to adjust the volume between the minimum and maximum levels.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EXTERNAL AUDIO function (telephone volume adjustment)

Turn the ON/OFF button/knob or press the ◀◀/▶▶ buttons to adjust (settings from 1 to 40) or mute (OFF setting) the volume of the telephone and the Blue&Me™ (except the Media Player function).

The display shows the current function status:

❒ "Extern audio: Off" - function off.

❒ "Extern volume: 23" - function on with volume setting 23.

RADIO OFF function (on and off mode)

This function is used to select the mode for switching off the radio between two different procedures. To activate the function, use the ◀◀ or ▶▶ buttons.

The selected mode will appear on the display:

❒ "Radio off: 00 min": the radio is turned off by the ignition key automatically as soon as the key is extracted;

❒ "Radio off: 20 min": the radio turns off independently of the ignition key; it remains on for a maximum period of 20 minutes after the key has been extracted.

IMPORTANT If the radio is turned off automatically after the ignition key is extracted (immediately or with a delay of 20 minutes), it will come on again automatically when the key is inserted in the switch again. On the contrary, if the radio is turned off by pushing the ON/OFF button, it will remain off when the key is inserted in the ignition switch.

SYSTEM RESET function

This function is used to restore all settings to their preset factory values. The options are:

❒ NO: no restore intervention;

❒ YES: the default parameters are restored. During this operation, the message "Resetting" will appear on the display. At the end of the operation, the source does not change and the previous situation will be displayed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TELEPHONE SETUP

If a hands-free kit is installed on the car, when there is an incoming phone call the car radio audio will be connected to the telephone output. The incoming telephone sound is always at a fixed volume, but it can be adjusted during the conversation using the ON/OFF button/knob.

The fixed telephone audio volume can be adjusted using the External audio function in the Menu. The word PHONE will appear on the display when the audio is muted for the phone call.

ANTI-THEFT PROTECTION

The radio is equipped with an anti-theft protection system based on the exchange of information between the car radio and the electronic control unit (Body Computer) on the vehicle.

This system guarantees maximum security and avoids having to enter the secret code every time the radio power supply is disconnected.

If the outcome of the check is positive, the radio will start to work, whilst if the codes compared are not the same or if the electronic control unit (Body Computer) is replaced, the equipment will notify the user of the need to enter the secret code following the procedure in the paragraph below.

Entering the secret code

When the radio is switched on, if the secret code is requested, the display will show the word "Code" for about 2 seconds followed by four dashes "- - - -".

The code is made up of four digits from 1 to 6, each corresponding to one of the dashes.

To enter the first digit, press the corresponding button of the preset stations (from 1 to 6). Enter the other code numbers in the same way.

If the four digits are not entered within 20 seconds, the message "Enter code - - -" will appear again on the display for 2 seconds, followed by four dashes "- - - -". This event is not considered an incorrect entering of the code.

After entering the fourth digit (within 20 seconds), the car radio will start to work.

If an incorrect code is entered, the radio will emit a sound and the display will show "Radio blocked/wait" to notify the user of the need to enter the correct code.

Each time the user enters an incorrect code, the waiting time will gradually increase (1 min, 2 min, 4 min, 8 min, 16 min, 30 min, 1 h, 2 h, 4 h, 8 h, 16 h, 24 h) up to a maximum of 24 hours. The waiting time will be shown on the display by "Radio blocked/wait". After the message disappears, the code entering procedure may be started again.

Code Card

This document certifies ownership of the car radio. The Code Card contains the model of the radio, the serial number and the secret code.

IMPORTANT Keep the Code Card somewhere safe so that the authorities can be supplied with the relevant information if the radio is stolen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RADIO (TUNER)

INTRODUCTION

When the radio is turned on the last function selected before it was switched off is activated: Radio, CD, CD MP3 or Media Player (solo con Blue&Me™).

To select the Radio function whilst listening to another audio source, press the FMAS or AM buttons briefly, depending on the desired band.

Once the Radio mode has been activated, the display will show the name (only RDS stations) and the frequency of the selected radio station, the frequency band selected (ex. FM1) and the preset button number (ex. P1).

FREQUENCY BAND SELECTION

With the Radio mode activated, press the FMAS or AM button briefly and repeatedly to select the desired reception band.

Each time the button is pressed the following bands are selected cyclically:

❒ Pressing the FMAS button: "FM1", "FM2", "FMA";

❒ Pressing the AM button: "MW1" and "MW2".

Each band is identified by the respective wording on the display.

The last station selected on the respective frequency band will be tuned into.

The FM band is divided into sections: FM1, FM2 and FMA; the FMA reception band is reserved for stations stored automatically using the Autostore function.

PRESET BUTTONS

The buttons numbered from 1 to 6 can used to set the following presettings:

❒ 18 in the FM band FM (6 in FM1, 6 in FM2, 6 in FMT or "FMA" on some versions);

❒ 12 in the MW band (6 in MW1, 6 in MW2).

To listen to a preset station, select the desired frequency band and then briefly press the corresponding preset button (from 1 to 6).

By pressing the preset button for more than 2 seconds, the station tuned into will be stored. The storing phase is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

STORING THE LAST STATION LISTENED TO

The radio automatically stores the last station that was selected for each reception band, which is then tuned into when the radio is turned on or when the reception band is changed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AUTOMATIC TUNING

Briefly press the ◀◀ or ▶▶ button to start the automatic tuning search for the next station that can be received in the selected direction.

If the button ◀◀ or ▶▶ is pressed down longer, the fast search starts. When the button is released, the tuning will stop at the next station that can be received.

If the TA function (traffic information) is on, the tuner will only search for stations that broadcast traffic updates.

MANUAL TUNING

This is used to manually search for stations in the preselected band.

Select the desired frequency band and then press the ▲ or ▼ buttons briefly and repeatedly to start the search in the desired direction. If the ▲ or ▼ button is pressed longer, the fast search will start and then stop when the button is released.

AUTOSTORE FUNCTION (automatic station storing)

To activate the Autostore function, keep the FMAS button pressed until the acoustic confirmation signal. With this function, the radio automatically stores the 6 stations with the strongest signal in a decreasing order on the FMA frequency band.

During the automatic storing process, "Autostore" will appear flashing on the display.

To interrupt the Autostore function, press the FMAS button again: the radio will again tune into the station listened to before the function was activated.

When the Autostore scan is concluded, the radio will automatically tune into the first preset station on the FMA band (preset 1).

The stations that have a strong signal at that moment are then automatically stored in the preselected band in the buttons numbered 1 to 6.

When the Autostore function is activated in the MW1 o MW2 band, the FMA band is automatically selected and the scan is started.

IMPORTANT Sometimes Autostore cannot find six stations with a strong signal. In this case, the strongest stations will be duplicated in the free preset buttons.

IMPORTANT When the Autostore function is activated, the stations that were previously stored on the FMA band are deleted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EMERGENCY ALARM RECEPTION

The radio can receive emergency alerts in RDS mode in exceptional circumstances or when dangerous situations are threatened (earthquakes, floods, etc.) if these are being transmitted by the broadcaster tuned into.

This function is activated automatically and cannot be turned off.

The word ALARM will be shown in the display during the transmission of an emergency announcement. The volume of the radio will change during this announcement in the same way as during a traffic bulletin.

EON FUNCTION (Enhanced Other Network)

In some countries, there are circuits that group multiple broadcasters that transmit traffic information together. In this case, the programme on the station that is being listened to will be temporarily interrupted to:

❒ receive traffic information (only with the TA function on);

❒ listen to regional transmissions each time they are transmitted by one of the broadcasters in the same circuit.

STEREO STATIONS

If the incoming signal is weak, the reproduction is automatically switched from Stereo to Mono.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CD PLAYER

INTRODUCTION

This chapter describes the variants regarding the operation of the CD player: as far as the operation of the radio is concerned, refer to the description in the "Functions and settings" chapter.

SELECTING THE CD PLAYER

To activate the CD player built-into the equipment, proceed as follows:

❒ load a CD with the equipment switched on: the first track will start to play;

or

❒ if a CD has already been loaded, turn on the car radio and then briefly press the CD button to select the "CD" operating mode: the last track listened to will start to play.

It is advisable to use original CDs to ensure optimum playback. If CD-R/RWs are used, we recommend using good quality disc burnt at the slowest speed possible.

LOADING/EJECTING A CD

To load the CD, insert it gently into the slot to activate the motorised loading system, which will position it correctly.

The CD can be loaded with the radio switched off and the ignition key in the MAR-on position: in this case the radio will remain off. When the car radio is turned on, the last source listened to prior to switching off will be activated.

When a CD is loaded the display will show "CD-IN" and the words "CD Reading". They will remain displayed for the entire time required for the radio to read the CD tracks. When this time has elapsed the radio will automatically start to play the first track.

Press the ▲ button, with the device turned on, to activate the CD motorised ejecting system. After ejection, the last audio source listened to before playing the CD will be heard.

If the CD is not removed from the car radio, it will automatically be reloaded about 20 seconds later and the Tuner mode will be tuned into (Radio).

The CD cannot be ejected if the car radio is off.

If the ejected CD is loaded without having removed it completely from the slot, the radio will not switch to the CD source.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ERROR MESSAGES

If the CD cannot be read (for example a CD-ROM was loaded or a CD was loaded upside down or there is a playback error), the message "CD Disc error" will appear on the display for approximately 2 seconds.

The CD will then be ejected and the audio source activated prior to the CD mode selection will be heard.

With an external audio source activated (TA, ALARM or Phone), the CD that cannot be read will not be ejected until these functions have ended. At the end, with the CD mode activated, the display will show the words "CD Disc error" for a few seconds and then the CD will be ejected.

DISPLAY INFORMATION

When the CD player is operating, the following information will appear on the display that has the following meaning:

"CD Track 5": indicates the CD track number;

"03:42": indicates the time elapsed since the start of the track (if the respective Menu function is activated).

TRACK SELECTION (forward/backward)

Briefly press the ◀◀ button to play the previous CD track and the ▶▶ button to play the next track. The tracks are selected cyclically: the first track is selected after the last track and vice versa.

If the track has been played for more than 3 seconds, pressing the ◀◀ button will cause the track to be started again from the beginning. In this case, if you want to play the previous track, press the button twice consecutively.

FAST FORWARD/BACKWARD TRACK SELECTION

Keep the ▶▶ button pressed down to fast forward the selected track and keep the ◀◀ button pressed down to play the track fast backward. The fast forward/backward function will stop once the button is released.

PAUSE FUNCTION

To pause the CD player, press the MUTE button. The words "CD Pause" will appear on the display.

To resume listening to the track, press the MUTE button again.

If another audio source is selected, the pause function is turned off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MP3 CD PLAYER

INTRODUCTION

This chapter describes the operation of the CD MP3 player variants only. Refer to the description in the "Functions and Settings" chapter as far as the operation of the radio is concerned.

NOTE MPEG Layer-3 audio decoding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson multimedia.

MP3 MODE

In addition to playing normal audio CDs, the car radio can also play CD-ROMs on which MP3 format compressed audio files are recorded. The radio works according to the methods described previously ("CD player") when an audio CD is inserted.

The use of good quality disc burnt at the slowest possible speed is recommended for optimum quality.

The files on the MP3 CD are in folders, with sequential lists of all the folders containing MP3 tracks (folders and sub-folders are all displayed on the same level) and folders that do not contain MP3 tracks cannot be selected.

The operating conditions and specifications for playing MP3 files are as follows:

- ❒ the CD-ROMs used must be burnt in compliance with the ISO9660 Specification;
- ❒ the music files must have an ".mp3" extension: files with a different extension cannot be played;
- ❒ the following sampling frequencies can be played: 44.1 kHz, stereo (96 to 320 kbit/s) - 22.05 kHz, mono or stereo (32 to 80 kbit/s);
- ❒ tracks with variable bit-rates can be played.

IMPORTANT The names of tracks must not contain the following characters: spaces, ' (apostrophes), (and) (open and close brackets). When a CD MP3 is being burnt, make sure that the file names do not contain these characters; otherwise, the car radio will not be able to play those tracks.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SELECTING MP3 SESSIONS WITH HYBRID DISCS

If a hybrid disc is inserted (Mixed Mode, Enhanced, CD-Extra) also containing MP3 files, the radio automatically starts playing the audio session. It is possible to move to the MP3 session whilst playing by keeping the CD button pressed for more than 2 seconds.

IMPORTANT When the function is activated the radio may take a few seconds to start playback. Whilst checking the disc the display will show "CD Reading": if no MP3 files are detected, the radio will resume playing the audio session from the point where it was interrupted.

DISPLAY INFORMATION

ID3-tag information displaying

In addition to the information relating to the time elapsed, the name of the folder and the name of the file, the car radio can display ID3-TAG information relating to the track title, artist and author.

The name of the MP3 folder shown on the display corresponds to the name with which the folder was stored on the CD, followed by an asterisk.

Example of a complete MP3 folder name: BEST OF *.

If you wish to display ID3-TAG information (Title, Artist, Album) and this information has not been recorded for the track played, the information will be replaced by information relating to the name of the file.

SELECT NEXT/PREVIOUS FOLDER

Press the ▲ button to select the next folder or the ▼ button to select the previous folder. The name of the selected folder will be shown on the display.

The folders are selected cyclically: the first folder is selected after the last folder and vice versa.

If no other folder/track is selected during the next two seconds, the first track contained in the new folder will be played.

If the last track contained in the currently selected folder is played, the next folder will be played.

STRUCTURE OF THE FOLDERS

The radio with MP3 player:

- ❒ only recognises the folders that effectively contain MP3 format files
- ❒ if the MP3 files on a CD-ROM are structured in "sub-folders", their structure is compressed to a single level structure where the "sub-folders" are taken to the level of the main folders.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CD CHANGER (CDC)

To install and connect a Lineaccessori CD Changer contact only a Alfa Romeo Dealership.

INTRODUCTION

This chapter describes the operation of the CD Changer player variants only (for versions/markets, where provided); refer to the description in the "Functions and Settings" chapter as far as the operation of the radio is concerned.

CD CHANGER SELECTION

Turn the radio on and briefly and repeatedly press the CD button until the "CD Changer" function is selected.

ERROR MESSAGES

Error messages are shown in the following cases:

- ❒ no CD is inserted in the CD Changer: the words "NO CD" will appear in the display until the listening source is changed;
- ❒ the CD selected cannot be read (the CD is not in the position selected or the CD has been incorrectly loaded) the number of the CD selected followed by the words "CD error" will appear on the display. The next CD is then selected; if there are no other CDs or these cannot be read either, the display will show the words "NO CD" until the listening source is changed;
- ❒ CD reading error: the words "CDC error" will appear on the display. The next CD is then selected; if there are no other CDs in the CD Changer (after the last CD the search begins again from the first) or these also cannot be read, the display will show the words "NO CD" until the listening source is changed;
- ❒ a CD-ROM is inserted: the next available CD will be selected.

CD SELECTION

Press the ▲ button to select the next CD or the ▼ button to select the previous CD.

If there is no disc present in the CD changer in the selected position, the words "NO CD" will appear briefly on the display. The next disc will then automatically be played.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TROUBLESHOOTING

GENERAL SECTION

Low volume

The Fader function should be adjusted to "F" (front) values to prevent the reduction of radio output power and the cancelling of the volume if the Fader level adjustment is R+9.

Source cannot be selected

Nothing has been loaded. Load the CD or MP3 CD to be played.

CD PLAYER

The CD does not play

The CD is dirty. Clean the CD.
The CD is scratched. Try and use another CD.

The CD cannot be loaded

A CD is already loaded. Press ▲ and remove the CD.

MP3 FILE READING

Skips tracks whilst playing MP3 files.

The CD is scratched or dirty. Clean the CD, referring to what is described in the paragraph "CD" in the chapter "Introduction".

The time of the MP3 tracks is not correctly displayed

In some cases (due to the recording mode) the duration of the MP3 tracks may be displayed incorrectly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INDEX

ABS system 108
Accessories purchased
by the owner 116
Additional heater 69
Air bags 141-145
Air/pollen filter 237
Air vents 54
Alarm 17
Alfa Romeo CODE system 10
Alfa 159 Sportwagon 275
Armrest
— central 82
— rear 83-84
Ashtray 87
ASR system 112
At the filling station 125
Automatic headlight sensor 71
Automatic two/three-zone
climate control system 58

Battery
— checking the charge 237
— jump starting 182
— recharging 219
— replacing 238
— useful advice for
lengthening the life 239
Bodywork (cleaning) 244
Bonnet 105
Boot 101-277
— light replacement 208
Brakes 256
Bulb (replacement) 196
— general instructions 196
— types of bulbs 197

Capacities 266
Car inactivity 164
Car maintenance 223
— periodical checks 227
— use of the car under heavy
conditions 227
— service Schedule 225
— scheduled service 224
Carrying children safely 135
— child restraint systems 138
— passenger's seat compliance .. 138
— presetting for mounting the
"Universal Isofix" child
restraint system 140-285
Ceiling lights
— front 78
— rear 80
Checking fluid levels 228
Child lock device 97
Cigar lighter 85
Climate control system 53
— automatic two-/three-zone .. 58
— manual 55
CO_2 emissions 270

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CODE card 12
Containing running costs 157
Controls 81
Correct use of the car 149
Courtesy mirror light
— bulb replacement 206
Cruise Control 76

Dashboard and controls 6
Dashboard buttons 72
Dimensions 261
Dipped beam headlights
— bulb replacement 201
— control 70
Direction indicators
— bulb replacement 200-201-204
— control 70
Doors 96

Electronic key 12
Engine
— identification code 252
— marking 251
— technical data 253
Engine oil
— consumption 232
— level check 231
— specifications 266
Engine starting 150
Environment protection 127
EOBD system 115
External lights 70
Eyeglasses holder 87

Fix&Go automatic (device) 190
Flashing the headlights 70
Fluid level checks 230
Fluids and lubricants 267
Follow me home (device) 71
Front ceiling lights
— bulb replacement 205
— control 78
Front fog lights
— bulb replacement 202
— control 72
Fuel
— consumption 269
— fuel cut-off switch 81
— fuel gauge 22
Fuel cut-off and power supply switches 81
Fuel feed 255
Fuel filler cap 126
Fuses (replacement) 209-292

Gearbox (use) 156
Glass/can holder 87
Glove compartment 85
Glove compartment light
— bulb replacement 207

Handbrake 155
Hazard lights 72
Head restraints 48-49
Headlight washer
— control 73
— fluid level 232

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Headlights 65
— adjusting headlight beam 106
— headlight adjustment abroad 107
— headlight aiming device 106
— front fog light adjustment 107
Hill Holder system 111
Homelink 89

Identification data 250
If an exterior light burns out .. 196-288
If an interior light burns out .. 205-290
Ignition device 19
In an emergency 181
Inactivity of the car 164
Inertial fuel cut-off switch 80
Installation of electric/ electronic devices 117
Instrument panel 7-8
Instruments 21
Interior fittings 83
Interiors 247

Isofix universal (child's seat) 140-286

Jacking the car 220

Labels
— identification data 250
— bodywork paint 251
Level checks 230

Main beam headlights
— bulb replacement 199
— control 70
Manual climate control system ... 55
MSR system 114
Multifunction display 25

Number plate light 204

Oddments compartments 88

Paint 246
Parking 155
Parking lights
— control 72
Parking sensors 118
Performance 263
Power windows 99
Pretensioners 132
Protecting the environment 127
Puddle light
— bulb replacement 208

Quick tyre repair kit Fix&Go automatic 190

Radio frequency remote control: ministerial certifications 271
Radio transmitters and cellular telephones 117
Rain sensor 74
Rear ceiling lights
— bulb replacement 205
— control 80

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear fog lights
— bulb replacement 202
— control 72
Rearview mirrors 50
Reconfigurable multifunction display 30
Rev counter 21
Reverse light
— bulb replacement 202
Right hand drive version .. 297
Rim Protector 258
Rims
— understanding rim marking ... 258
Roof rack/ski rack 106-284
Rubber hoses 242

Safe lock device 14
Safety devices 129
S.B.R. system 131
Seat belts 130
Seats 45
Side/taillights
— bulb replacement 200-203
— control 70
Ski tunnel 84
Smart washing 74
Snow chains 163
Sound system 293
Steering 256
Steering lock 21
Steering wheel (adjustment) 49
Sun curtains 88
Sun visors 88
Sunroof 93
Suspensions 256
Symbols 10

Technical Specifications 249
Third brake light 204
Top speeds 263
Towing the car 221
Towing trailers
— installing the tow hook 159
T.P.M.S. system 122
Transmission 255
Tyres
— changing 183
— inflation pressures 260
— snow tyres 162
— Rim Protector 258
— standard tyres 259
— understanding tyre marking .. 257

VDC system 110

Warning lights and messages 165
Weights 264
Wheel geometry 260
Wheel rims
— understanding rim marking ... 258
Wheels
— changing 183
— technical data 257
Wheels and tyres 240
Windows (cleaning) 246

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windscreen washer
– control 75
– fluid level 232
Windscreen wiper
– blades 242
– control 73
– nozzle 243

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PROVISIONS FOR THE PROCESSING OF A VEHICLE AT THE END OF ITS LIFE-CYCLE

For years now Alfa Romeo has been developing its global commitment towards the safeguarding and protection of the Environment through the continuous improvement of its production processes and the making of increasingly more "eco friendly" products. With a view to guaranteeing the best possible service to clients in full observance of environmental standards and in response to the obligations imposed by European Directive 2000/53/EC on end-of-life vehicles, Alfa Romeo offers its clients the possibility to hand in their vehicle* at the end of its life span without additional costs.

The European Directive, in fact, provides for the take-back of the vehicle without the last holder or owner of the same incurring expenses due to the fact that the market value of the vehicle is zero or negative. In particular, in almost all of the countries of the European Union, up until 1st January 2007, take-back of the vehicle free of charge only applies to vehicles registered from 1 July 2002 on, while, from 2007 on, take-back will be carried out free of charge, independently of the year of registration, provided that the vehicle still contains all its essential component parts (especially engine and body) and is free from additional waste materials.

Our contracted network of authorised treatment facilities has been carefully selected in order to provide a quality service to our customers by de-polluting and recycling "End of Life Vehicles" to approved environmental standards. To find out the location of your nearest authorised treatment facility, offering free of charge take-back, simply contact one of our dealers or refer to the Alfa Romeo web site or call the toll free number 00800 2532 0000.

* Passenger transportation vehicles to seat a max. of nine persons, having a total admissible weight of 3.5 t

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DASHBOARD

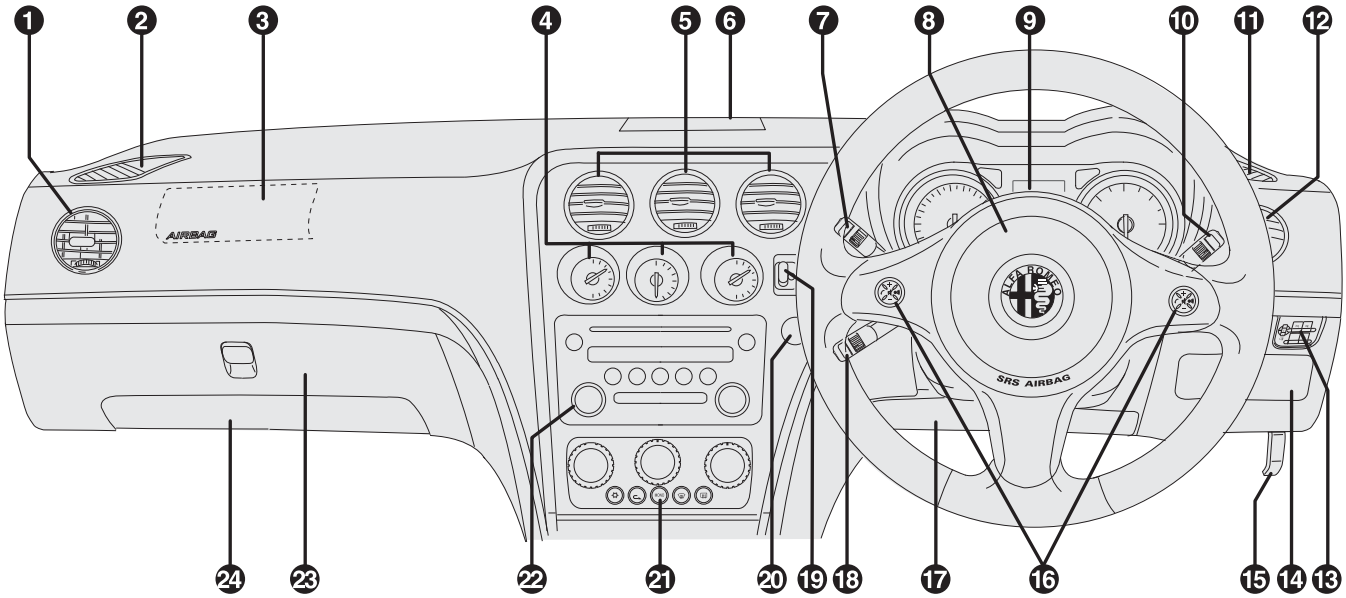


fig. 1

1. Adjustable swivel side air vents - **2.** Front side window demisting/defrosting vents - **3.** Passenger's air bag - **4.** Fuel level gauge/engine coolant temperature gauge/engine oil temperature gauge (petrol versions) or turbocharger pressure gauge (diesel versions) - **5.** Adjustable swivel centre air vents - **6.** Upper central vent - **7.** External lights control lever - **8.** Driver's air bag and horn - **9.** Instrument panel - **10.** Windscreen wiper control lever - **11.** Front side window demisting/defrosting vents - **12.** Adjustable swivel side air vents - **13.** Switches for external lights, trip meter reset and headlamp aiming device. - **14.** Dashboard fusebox lid - **15.** Bonnet opening lever - 16. Sound system controls on the steering wheel (where provided) - **17.** Driver's knees air bag - **18.** Cruise Control lever (where provided) - **19.** Ignition device - **20.** Engine START/STOP button - **21.** Heating/ventilation/climate controls - **22.** Sound system (where provided) - **23.** Glove box - **24.** Passenger's knees air bag (where provided)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INSTRUMENT PANEL

A. Speedometer (speed indicator)
B. Warning lights - **C.** Rev counter -
D. Multifunction display

Warning lights on diesel versions only

On diesel versions the rev counter end scale value is at 6000 rpm.

NOTE 1750 TURBO BENZINA versions have a rev counter with different graphic

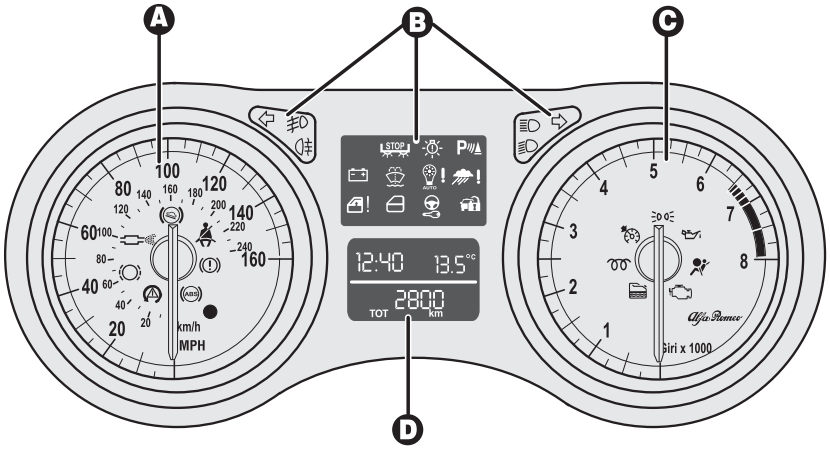


fig. 2 - Versions with multifunction display

A0E0309m

A. Speedometer (speed indicator)
B. Warning lights - **C.** Rev counter -
D. Reconfigurable multifunction display

Warning lights on diesel versions only

On diesel versions the rev counter end scale value is at 6000 rpm.

NOTE 1750 TURBO BENZINA versions have a rev counter with different graphic

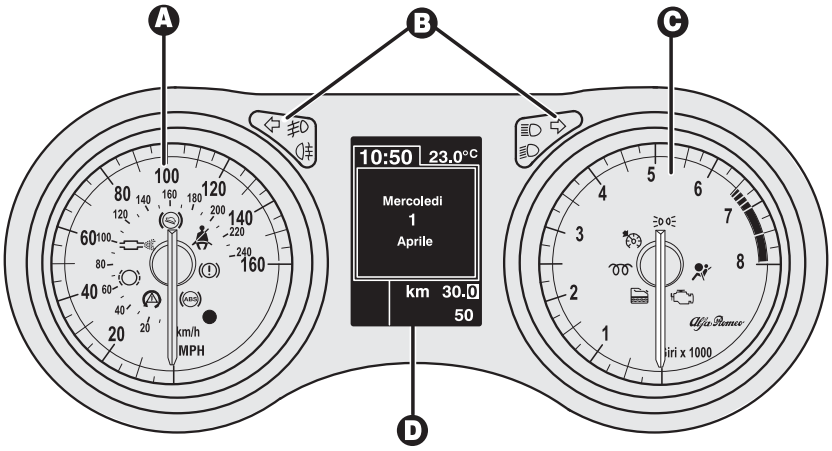


fig. 3 - Versions with reconfigurable multifunction display

A0E0310m

RIGHT HAND DRIVE VERSION

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PETRONAS SELENIA MOTOR OIL

In the heart of your engine.

Always ask your mechanic for PETRONAS SELENIA MOTOR OIL

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Oil change? The experts recommend Selenia

The engine of your car is factory filled with ***Selenia.***
This is an engine oil range which satisfies the most advanced international specifications. Its superior technical characteristics allow ***Selenia*** *to guarantee the* ***highest performance and protection of your engine.***

The Selenia range includes a number of technologically advanced products:

SELENIA SPORT
Fully synthetic lubricant capable of meeting the needs of high performance engines.
Studied to protect the engine also in high thermal stress conditions, it prevents deposits on the turbine to achieve the utmost performance in total safety.

SELENIA WR PURE ENERGY
Fully synthetic lubricant that can meet the requirements of the latest diesel engines.
Low ash content to protect the particulate filter from the residual products of combustion. High Fuel Economy System that allows considerable fuel saving.
It reduces the danger of dirtying the turbine to ensure the protection of increasingly high performance diesel engines

SELENIA StAR PURE ENERGY
Synthetic lubricant designed for petrol engines that need products with a low ash content. It maximises the characteristics of engines with high specific power, protects the parts mostly subjected to stress and helps to keep modern catalysts clean.

SELENIA RACING
This lubricant has been developed as a result of Selenia's extensive experience in track and rally competitions, it maximises engine performance in all kinds of competition use.

The range also includes K Pure Energy, Selenia Digitech, Selenia Multipower, Selenia 20K, Selenia 20K AR.
For further information on Selenia products visit the web site www.selenia.com

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

COLD TYRE INFLATION PRESSURE

		Tyres **205/55 R16 91V**		Tyres **215/55 R16 93V**		Tyres **225/50 R17 98W**		Tyres **235/45 R18 98W (▼)**		Tyres **235/40 ZR19 96Y (▼)**		Space-saver spare wheel **T125/80 R17**
		front	rear	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear	
average load	bar	2.3	2.3	2.3	2.3	2.5	2.5	2.7	2.5	2.7	2.5	4.2
full load	bar	2.6	2.6	2.5	2.5	2.9	2.7	2.9	2.7	3.0	2.8	

(▼) Unchainable tyres. When using winter tyres, use 225/50 R17 98 tyres or 235/45 R18 98. Vehicles with TI fittings should not use 16" wheel rims.
Add +0.3 bar to the prescribed inflation pressure when the tyres are warm. Recheck pressure value with cold tyres.
With snow tyres, add +0.2 bar to the inflation pressure value prescribed for standard tyres.

Inflate tyres to full load pressures if driving at continuous speed exceeding 160 km/h.

ENGINE OIL REPLEACEMENT (litres)

	1.8 140 HP	**1750 TURBO BENZINA**	**3.2 JTS**	**1.9 JTDM 8v 1.9 JTDM 16v**	**2.0 JTDM**	**2.4 JTDM**
Lubrication system engine	4.5	5.0	5.4	4.6	4.9	6.4

Do not discard used oil in the environment.

REFUELLING (litres)

	1.8 140 HP - 1750 TURBO BENZINA - 1.9 JTDM 8v - 1.9 JTDM 16v - 2.0 JTDM - 2.4 JTDM - 3.2 JTS
Fuel tank capacity	70
Reserve	10

For cars with petrol engine, only use unleaded petrol with over 95 R.O.N. (Specification EN228).
For cars with diesel engine only use Diesel fuel for motor vehicles (Specification EN590).

SERVICE

CUSTOMER SERVICES
TECHNICAL SERVICES - SERVICE ENGINEERING
Largo Senatore G. Agnelli, 5 - 10040 Volvera - Torino (Italia)
Fiat Group Automobiles S.p.A.
Publication no. 60438278 - 1 Edition - 06/2010
All rights reserved. Reproduction, even in part is prohibited without written permission from Fiat Group Automobiles S.p.A.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGLISH

Alfa Services

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine